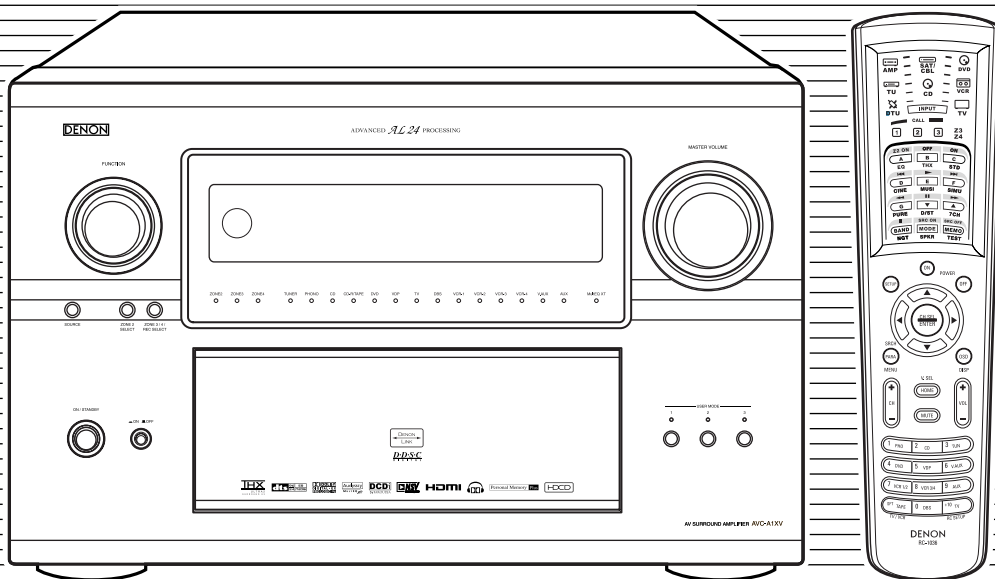


DENON

AV SURROUND AMPLIFIER

AVC-A1XVA

OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS



- We greatly appreciate your purchase of the AVC-A1XVA.
- To be sure you take maximum advantage of all the features the AVC-A1XVA has to offer, read these instructions carefully and use the set properly. Be sure to keep this manual for future reference should any questions or problems arise.

"SERIAL NO. _____

PLEASE RECORD UNIT SERIAL NUMBER ATTACHED TO THE REAR OF THE
CABINET FOR FUTURE REFERENCE"



CAUTION
RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK
DO NOT OPEN



CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT REMOVE COVER (OR BACK). NO USER-SERVICEABLE PARTS INSIDE. REFER SERVICING TO QUALIFIED SERVICE PERSONNEL.



The lightning flash with arrowhead symbol, within an equilateral triangle, is intended to alert the user to the presence of uninsulated "dangerous voltage" within the product's enclosure that may be of sufficient magnitude to constitute a risk of electric shock to persons.



The exclamation point within an equilateral triangle is intended to alert the user to the presence of important operating and maintenance (servicing) instructions in the literature accompanying the appliance.

WARNING: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS APPLIANCE TO RAIN OR MOISTURE.

• DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

We declare under our sole responsibility that this product, to which this declaration relates, is in conformity with the following standards: EN60065, EN55013, EN55020, EN61000-3-2 and EN61000-3-3.

Following the provisions of 73/23/EEC, 2004/108/EC and 93/68/EEC Directive.

• ÜBEREINSTIMMUNGSERKLÄRUNG

Wir erklären unter unserer Verantwortung, daß dieses Produkt, auf das sich diese Erklärung bezieht, den folgenden Standards entspricht: EN60065, EN55013, EN55020, EN61000-3-2 und EN61000-3-3.

Entspricht den Verordnungen der Direktive 73/23/EEC, 2004/108/EC und 93/68/EEC.

• DECLARATION DE CONFORMITE

Nous déclarons sous notre seule responsabilité que l'appareil, auquel se réfère cette déclaration, est conforme aux standards suivants:

EN60065, EN55013, EN55020, EN61000-3-2 et EN61000-3-3.

D'après les dispositions de la Directive 73/23/EEC, 2004/108/EC et 93/68/EEC.

• DICHIARAZIONE DI CONFORMITÀ

Dichiariamo con piena responsabilità che questo prodotto, al quale la nostra dichiarazione si riferisce, è conforme alle seguenti normative:

EN60065, EN55013, EN55020, EN61000-3-2 e EN61000-3-3.

In conformità con le condizioni delle direttive 73/23/EEC, 2004/108/EC e 93/68/EEC.

• DECLARACIÓN DE CONFORMIDAD

Declaramos bajo nuestra exclusiva responsabilidad que este producto al que hace referencia esta declaración, está conforme con los siguientes estándares:

EN60065, EN55013, EN55020, EN61000-3-2 y EN61000-3-3.

Siguiendo las provisiones de las Directivas 73/23/EEC, 2004/108/EC y 93/68/EEC.

• EENVORMIGHEIDSVERKLARING

Wij verklaren uitsluitend op onze verantwoordelijkheid dat dit produkt, waarop deze verklaring betrekking heeft, in overeenstemming is met de volgende normen:

EN60065, EN55013, EN55020, EN61000-3-2 en EN61000-3-3.

Volgens de bepalingen van de Richtlijnen 73/23/EEC, 2004/108/EC en 93/68/EEC.

• ÖVERENSSTÄMMELSEINTYG

Härmed intygas helt på eget ansvar att denna produkt, vilken detta intyg avser, uppfyller följande standarder:

EN60065, EN55013, EN55020, EN61000-3-2 och EN61000-3-3.

Enligt stadgarna i direktiv 73/23/EEC, 2004/108/EC och 93/68/EEC.

CAUTION:

- The ventilation should not be impeded by covering the ventilation openings with items, such as newspapers, tablecloths, curtains, etc.
- No naked flame sources, such as lighted candles, should be placed on the apparatus.
- Attention should be drawn to the environmental aspects of battery disposal.
- Do not expose the set to dripping or splashing fluids.
- No objects filled with liquids, such as vases, shall be placed on the apparatus.

ACHTUNG:

- Die Belüftung sollte auf keinen Fall durch das Abdecken der Belüftungsöffnungen durch Gegenstände wie beispielsweise Zeitungen, Tischtücher, Vorhänge o. Ä. behindert werden.
- Auf dem Gerät sollten keinerlei direkten Feuerquellen wie beispielsweise angezündete Kerzen aufgestellt werden.
- Bitte beachten Sie bei der Entsorgung der Batterien die geltenden Umweltbestimmungen.
- Das Gerät sollte keinerlei Flüssigkeit, also keinem Tropfen oder Spritzen ausgesetzt werden.
- Auf dem Gerät sollten keinerlei mit Flüssigkeit gefüllten Behälter wie beispielsweise Vasen aufgestellt werden.

ATTENTION:

- La ventilation ne doit pas être gênée en recouvrant les ouvertures de la ventilation avec des objets tels que journaux, rideaux, tissus, etc.
- Aucune flamme nue, par exemple une bougie, ne doit être placée sur l'appareil.
- Veillez à respecter l'environnement lorsque vous jetez les piles usagées.
- L'appareil ne doit pas être exposé à l'eau ou à l'humidité.
- Aucun objet contenant du liquide, par exemple un vase, ne doit être placé sur l'appareil.

PRECAUZIONI:

- Le aperture di ventilazione non devono essere ostruite coprendole con oggetti, quali giornali, tovaglie, tende e così via.
- Non posizionare sull'apparecchiatura fiamme libere, come ad esempio le candele accese.
- Prestare attenzione agli aspetti legati alla tutela dell'ambiente quando si smaltisce la batteria.
- L'apparecchiatura non deve essere esposta a gocciolii o spruzzi.
- Non posizionare sull'apparecchiatura nessun oggetto contenente liquidi, come ad esempio i vasi.

PRECAUCIÓN:

- La ventilación no debe quedar obstruida por hacerse cubierto las aperturas con objetos como periódicos, manteles, cortinas, etc.
- No debe colocarse sobre el aparato ninguna fuente inflamable sin protección, como velas encendidas.
- A la hora de deshacerse de las pilas, respete la normativa para el cuidado del medio ambiente.
- No se expondrá el aparato al goteo o salpicaduras cuando se utilice.
- No se colocarán sobre el aparato objetos llenos de líquido, como jarros.

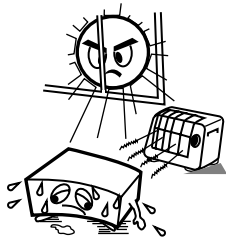
WAARSCHUWING:

- De ventilatie mag niet worden belemmerd door de ventilatieopeningen af te dekken met bijvoorbeeld kranten, een tafelkleed, gordijnen, enz.
- Plaats geen open vlammen, bijvoorbeeld een brandende kaars, op het apparaat.
- Houd u steeds aan de milieuvorschriften wanneer u gebruikte batterijen wegdoet.
- Stel het apparaat niet bloot aan druppels of spatten.
- Plaats geen voorwerpen gevuld met water, bijvoorbeeld een vaas, op het apparaat.

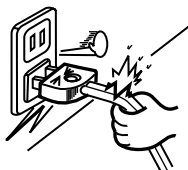
OBSERVERA:

- Ventilationen bör inte förhindras genom att täcka för ventilationsöppningarna med föremål såsom tidningar, bordsdukar, gardiner osv.
- Inga blottade brandkällor, såsom tända ljus, bör placeras på apparaten.
- Tänk på miljöaspekterna när du bortskaffar batteri.
- Apparaten får inte utsättas för vätska.
- Inga objekt med vätskor, såsom vaser, får placeras på apparaten.

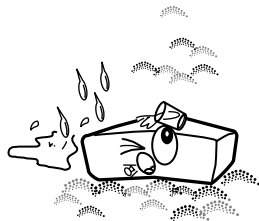
**NOTE ON USE / HINWEISE ZUM GEBRAUCH /
OBSERVATIONS RELATIVES A L'UTILISATION / NOTE SULL'USO
NOTAS SOBRE EL USO / ALVORENS TE GEBRUIKEN / OBSERVERA**



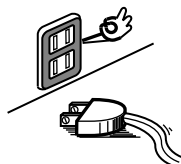
- Avoid high temperatures.
Allow for sufficient heat dispersion when installed on a rack.
- Vermeiden Sie hohe Temperaturen.
Beachten Sie, daß eine ausreichend Luftzirkulation gewährleistet wird, wenn das Gerät auf ein Regal gestellt wird.
- Éviter des températures élevées
Tenir compte d'une dispersion de chaleur suffisante lors de l'installation sur une étagère.
- Evitate di esporre l'unità a temperature alte.
Assicuratevi che ci sia un'adeguata dispersione del calore quando installate l'unità in un mobile per componenti audio.
- Evite altas temperaturas
Permite la suficiente dispersión del calor cuando está instalado en la consola.
- Vermijd hoge temperaturen.
Zorg voor een degelijk hitteafvoer indien het apparaat op een rek wordt geplaatst.
- Undvik höga temperaturer.
Se till att det finns möjlighet till god värmeavledning vid montering i ett rack.



- Handle the power cord carefully.
Hold the plug when unplugging the cord.
- Gehen Sie vorsichtig mit dem Netzkabel um.
Halten Sie das Kabel am Stecker, wenn Sie den Stecker herausziehen.
- Manipuler le cordon d'alimentation avec précaution.
Tenir la prise lors du débranchement du cordon.
- Manneggiare il filo di alimentazione con cura.
Agire per la spina quando scollegate il cavo dalla presa.
- Maneje el cordón de energía con cuidado.
Sostenga el enchufe cuando desconecte el cordón de energía.
- Hanteer het netsnoer voorzichtig.
Houd het snoer bij de stekker vast wanneer deze moet worden aan- of losgekoppeld.
- Hantera nätkabeln varsamt.
Håll i kabeln när den kopplas från el-uttaget.



- Keep the set free from moisture, water, and dust.
- Halten Sie das Gerät von Feuchtigkeit, Wasser und Staub fern.
- Protéger l'appareil contre l'humidité, l'eau et la poussière.
- Tenete l'unità lontana dall'umidità, dall'acqua e dalla polvere.
- Mantenga el equipo libre de humedad, agua y polvo.
- Laat geen vochtigheid, water of stof in het apparaat binnendringen.
- Utsätt inte apparaten för fukt, vatten och damm.

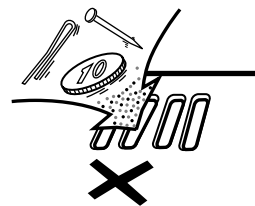


- Unplug the power cord when not using the set for long periods of time.
- Wenn das Gerät eine längere Zeit nicht verwendet werden soll, trennen Sie das Netzkabel vom Netzstecker.
- Débrancher le cordon d'alimentation lorsque l'appareil n'est pas utilisé pendant de longues périodes.
- Disinnestate il filo di alimentazione quando avete l'intenzione di non usare il filo di alimentazione per un lungo periodo di tempo.
- Desconecte el cordón de energía cuando no utilice el equipo por mucho tiempo.
- Neem altijd het netsnoer uit het stopcontact wanneer het apparaat gedurende een lange periode niet wordt gebruikt.
- Koppla ur nätkabeln om apparaten inte kommer att användas i lång tid.



* (For sets with ventilation holes)

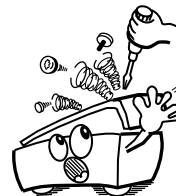
- Do not obstruct the ventilation holes.
- Die Belüftungsöffnungen dürfen nicht verdeckt werden.
- Ne pas obstruer les trous d'aération.
- Non coprite i fori di ventilazione.
- No obstruya los orificios de ventilación.
- De ventilatieopeningen mogen niet worden beblokkeerd.
- Täpp inte till ventilationsöppningarna.



- Do not let foreign objects in the set.
- Keine fremden Gegenstände in das Gerät kommen lassen.
- Ne pas laisser des objets étrangers dans l'appareil.
- E' importante che nessun oggetto è inserito all'interno dell'unità.
- No deje objetos extraños dentro del equipo.
- Laat geen vreemde voorwerpen in dit apparaat vallen.
- Se till att främmande föremål inte tränger in i apparaten.



- Do not let insecticides, benzene, and thinner come in contact with the set.
- Lassen Sie das Gerät nicht mit Insektiziden, Benzin oder Verdünnungsmitteln in Berührung kommen.
- Ne pas mettre en contact des insecticides, du benzène et un diluant avec l'appareil.
- Assicuratevi che l'unità non venga in contatto con insetticidi, benzolo o solventi.
- No permita el contacto de insecticidas, gasolina y diluyentes con el equipo.
- Laat geen insectenverdelgende middelen, benzine of verdunder met dit apparaat in contact komen.
- Se till att inte insektsmedel på spraybruk, bensen och thinner kommer i kontakt med apparatens hölje.



- Never disassemble or modify the set in any way.
- Versuchen Sie niemals das Gerät auseinander zu nehmen oder auf jegliche Art zu verändern.
- Ne jamais démonter ou modifier l'appareil d'une manière ou d'une autre.
- Non smontate mai, nè modificate l'unità in nessun modo.
- Nunca desarme o modifique el equipo de ninguna manera.
- Nooit dit apparaat demonteren of op andere wijze modificeren.
- Ta inte isär apparaten och försök inte bygga om den.

CAUTION:

To completely disconnect this product from the mains, disconnect the plug from the wall socket outlet.

The mains plug is used to completely interrupt the power supply to the unit and must be within easy access by the user.

VORSICHT:

Um dieses Gerät vollständig von der Stromversorgung abzutrennen, trennen Sie bitte den Netzstecker von der Wandsteckdose ab.

Die Hauptstecker werden verwendet, um die Stromversorgung zum Gerät völlig zu unterbrechen; er muss für den Benutzer gut und einfach zu erreichen sein.

PRECAUTION:

Pour déconnecter complètement ce produit du courant secteur, débranchez la prise de la prise murale.

La prise secteur est utilisée pour couper complètement l'alimentation de l'appareil et l'utilisateur doit pouvoir y accéder facilement.

ATTENZIONE:

Per scollegare definitivamente questo prodotto dalla rete di alimentazione elettrica, togliere la spina dalla relativa presa.

La spina di rete viene utilizzata per interrompere completamente l'alimentazione all'unità e deve essere facilmente accessibile all'utente.

PRECAUCIÓN:

Para desconectar completamente este producto de la alimentación eléctrica, desconecte el enchufe del enchufe de la pared.

El enchufe de la alimentación se utiliza para interrumpir por completo el suministro de alimentación a la unidad y debe de encontrarse en un lugar al que el usuario tenga fácil acceso.

VOORZICHTIGHEID:

Om de voeding van dit product volledig te onderbreken moet de stekker uit het stopcontact worden getrokken.

De netstekker wordt gebruikt om de stroomtoevoer naar het toestel volledig te onderbreken en moet voor de gebruiker gemakkelijk bereikbaar zijn.

FÖRSIKTIGHETSMÅTT:

Koppla loss stickproppen från eluttaget för att helt skilja produkten från nätet.

Stickproppen används för att helt bryta strömförsörjningen till apparaten, och den måste vara lättillgänglig för användaren.

A NOTE ABOUT RECYCLING:

This product's packaging materials are recyclable and can be reused. Please dispose of any materials in accordance with the local recycling regulations.

When discarding the unit, comply with local rules or regulations.

Batteries should never be thrown away or incinerated but disposed of in accordance with the local regulations concerning chemical waste.

This product and the accessories packed together constitute the applicable product according to the WEEE directive except batteries.

**HINWEIS ZUM RECYCLING:**

Das Verpackungsmaterial dieses Produktes ist für zum Recyceln geeignet und kann wieder verwendet werden. Bitte entsorgen Sie alle Materialien entsprechend der örtlichen Recycling-Vorschriften.

Beachten Sie bei der Entsorgung des Gerätes die örtlichen Vorschriften und Bestimmungen.

Die Batterien dürfen nicht in den Hausmüll geworfen oder verbrannt werden; bitte geben Sie die Batterien gemäß örtlichen Bestimmungen an den Sammelstellen oder Sondermüllplätzen ab.

Dieses Produkt zusammen mit den Zubehörteilen ist das geltende Produkt der WEEE-Direktive, davon ausgenommen sind die Batterien.

UNE REMARQUE CONCERNANT LE RECYCLAGE:

Les matériaux d'emballage de ce produit sont recyclables et peuvent être réutilisés. Veuillez disposer de tout matériau conformément aux règlements de recyclage locaux.

Lorsque vous mettez cet appareil au rebut, respectez les lois ou réglementations locales.

Les piles ne doivent jamais être jetées ou incinérées, mais mises au rebut conformément aux règlements locaux concernant les déchets chimiques.

Ce produit et les accessoires emballés ensemble sont des produits conformes à la directive DEEE sauf pour les piles.

NOTA RELATIVA AL RICICLAGGIO:

I materiali di imballaggio di questo prodotto sono riutilizzabili e riciclabili. Smaltire i materiali conformemente alle normative locali sul riciclaggio.

Per smaltire l'unità, osservare la normativa in vigore nel luogo di utilizzo.

Non gettare le batterie, né incenerirle, ma smaltirle conformemente alla normativa locale sui rifiuti chimici.

Questo prodotto e gli accessori inclusi nell'imballaggio sono applicabili alla direttiva RAEE, ad eccezione delle batterie.

ACERCA DEL RECICLAJE:

Los materiales de embalaje de este producto son reciclables y se pueden volver a utilizar. Disponga de estos materiales siguiendo los reglamentos de reciclaje de su localidad.

Cuando se deshaga de la unidad, cumpla con las reglas o reglamentos locales.

Las pilas nunca deberán tirarse ni incinerarse. Deberá disponer de ellas siguiendo los reglamentos de su localidad relacionados con los desperdicios químicos.

Este producto junto con los accesorios empaquetados es el producto aplicable a la directiva RAEE excepto pilas.

EEN AANTEKENING WAT BETREFT HET RECYCLEREN:

Het inpakmateriaal van dit product is recycleerbaar en kan opnieuw gebruikt worden. Er wordt verzocht om zich van elk afvalmateriaal te ontdoen volgens de plaatselijke voorschriften.

Volg voor het wegdoen van de speler de voorschriften voor de verwijdering van wit- en bruingoed op.

Batterijen mogen nooit worden weggegooid of verbrand, maar moeten volgens de plaatselijke voorschriften betreffende chemisch afval worden verwijderd.

Op dit product en de meegeleverde accessoires, m.u.v. de batterijen is de richtlijn voor afgedankte elektrische en elektronische apparaten (WEEE) van toepassing.

EN KOMMENTAR OM ÅTERVINNING:

Produktens emballage är återvinningsbart och kan återanvändas. Kassera det enligt lokala återvinningsbestämmelser.

När du kasserar enheten ska du göra det i överensstämmelse med lokala regler och bestämmelser.

Batterier får absolut inte kastas i soporna eller brännas. Kassera dem enligt lokala bestämmelser för kemiskt avfall.

Denna apparat och de tillbehör som levereras med den är de som uppfyller gällande WEEE-direktiv, med undantag av batterierna.

■ INTRODUCTION

Thank you for choosing the DENON AVC-A1XVA AV Surround Amplifier. This remarkable component has been engineered to provide superb surround sound listening with home theater sources such as DVD, as well as providing outstanding high fidelity reproduction of your favorite music sources.

As this product is provided with an immense array of features, we recommend that before you begin hookup and operation that you review the contents of this manual before proceeding.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

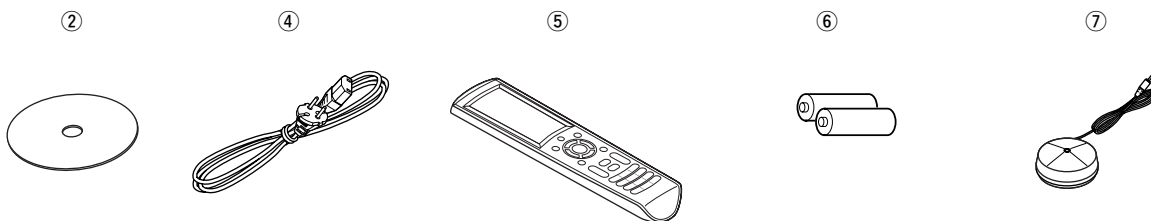
[1] Before Using	7	[3] Audio Input Setup	60
[2] Cautions on Installation	7	3-1. Setting the Digital In Assignment	60, 61
[3] Cautions on Handling	8	3-2. Setting the EXT.IN Setup.....	62, 63
[4] Features	8 ~ 10	3-3. Setting the Input Function Level	64
[5] Connections	10	3-4. Setting the Function Rename	65, 66
Connecting Audio Components.....	11	3-5. Setting the IEEE1394 Assignment	67
Connecting Video Components.....	12	3-6. Selecting the IEEE1394 Auto Function	68
Connecting video components equipped with S-Video		[4] Video Setup	69
jacks.....	13	4-1. Setting the HDMI/DVI In Assignment.....	69, 70
Connecting video components equipped with Component		4-2. Setting the Component In Assignment.....	71
Video video jacks	14	4-3. Setting the Video Convert Mode.....	72
Connecting equipment with HDMI terminals.....	15	4-4. Setting the HDMI/Component Out	73, 74
Connecting equipment with DVI terminals	16	4-5. Setting the Audio Delay.....	75
The video conversion function.....	17	4-6. Setting the On Screen Display (OSD)	76
On screen display for component video outputs and		[5] Advanced Playback	77
HDMI output.....	17	5-1. Setting the 2ch Direct/Stereo.....	78
Connecting the external input (EXT.IN) jacks	18	Setting the front B speakers when the surround	
Connecting the ZONE2 jacks.....	19	mode is set to the 2-channel Direct or Stereo.....	78
Connecting a component with video and audio jacks to		5-2. Setting the Dolby Digital Setup	79
the V.AUX input jacks	19	5-3. Setting Auto Surround Mode	80
DENON LINK connections.....	20	5-4. Setting the Manual EQ Setup	81, 82
Connecting IEEE1394 devices.....	21	Procedure for copying the "Flat" correction curve.....	83
Speaker system connections	22, 23	[6] Zone Setup (ZONE2 = 5.1/7.1ch)	84
[6] Part Names and Functions		6-1. Setting the type of speakers for ZONE2	85
Front panel.....	24, 25	6-2. Setting the low frequency distribution for ZONE2.....	86
Display	26	6-3. Setting the Delay Time for ZONE2.....	87, 88
Remote control unit.....	27	6-4. Setting the Channel Level for ZONE2.....	89, 90
[7] System Setup	28	6-5. Setting the Crossover Frequency for ZONE2.....	91
Use the following buttons to set up the system	28	6-6. Setting the Video Setup for ZONE2	
System setup items and default values.....	28 ~ 31	[1] Video Convert Mode	92, 93
Speaker system layout	32	[2] Audio Delay	93
Before setting up the system.....	33	6-7. ZONE3 and ZONE4 tone control and channel level	
Auto Setup / Room EQ.....	33	setting.....	94, 95
Measurement flow	34	Zone Setup setting when ZONE2 is set to STEREO or	
Before performing the Auto Setup procedure	35	MONO.....	95
(I) Connecting the microphone for Auto Setup	35	[7] Option Setup	96
[1] Auto Setup / Room EQ	36	7-1. Setting the Channel Setup	96
1-1. Setting the Auto Setup.....	36	Channel setup flow	96, 97
(II) Extra Setup.....	37	The number of channels that can be selected	98
(III) Preliminary measurements.....	38	The subwoofer output composition.....	98
(IV) Speaker System measurement.....	39, 40	Connecting the preouts.....	99
(V) Check of the measurement result	41, 42	7-2. Setting the Power Amplifier Assignment.....	100
About the error message	42	Power amplifier assignment flow	100, 101
1-2. Setting the Room EQ Setup.....	43, 44	Amp Assign mode.....	102
1-3. Setting the Direct Mode	44	Bi-Amp connection.....	102
1-4. Setting the MIC Input Select.....	45	Table of power amplifier assignment modes	102 ~ 104
1-5. Check the Parameter	46 ~ 48	Table of channels to which power amplifiers can	
[2] Speaker Setup	48	be assigned	104
2-1. Setting the type of speakers	49, 50	7-3. Setting the Volume Control	105, 106
2-2. Setting the low frequency distribution	50, 51	7-4. Setting the Trigger Out.....	106, 107
2-3. Setting the Delay Time	51, 52	7-5. Setting the AC Outlet Assignment.....	108
2-4. Setting the Channel Level	53, 54	7-6. Protecting the setting and memory backup	
2-5. Setting the Crossover Frequency.....	55	[1] User Memory	109, 110
Setting the crossover frequency individually		[2] Setup Lock	110, 111
for the different channels.....	56	7-7. Setting the Network Setup	
2-6. Selecting the Surround Speakers for the		[1] Setting the IP Address	111, 112
different surround modes.....	57	[2] Setting the Proxy.....	113
2-7. Setting the THX Audio Setup		[3] Setting the Network Option.....	114, 115
[1] Setting for using a THX Ultra2 compatible		After Completing system setup.....	115
subwoofer	58		
[2] Surround Back Speaker Position Settings.....	59		

8 Remote Control Unit	
Inserting the Batteries	116
Using the Remote Control Unit	116
Operating DENON audio components	117, 118
Preset memory	119
Operating a component stored in the preset memory ...	120, 121
Learning function	122
System call	123, 124
Punch Through	124
Setting the back light's lighting time	125
Setting the brightness	125
Resetting	126
9 Operation	
Operating the Remote control unit	127
Before operating	128
Playing the input source	129, 130
Playback using external input (EXT.IN) jacks	131, 132
Playing audio sources (CDs and DVDs)	132
After stating playback	
[1] Setting the Room EQ	133
[2] Listening over headphone	133
[3] Turning the sound off temporarily (MUTING)	133
[4] Combining the currently playing sound with the desired image (VIDEO SELECT)	133
[5] Checking the currently playing program source, etc. ...	134
[6] Switching the surround speakers	134
[7] Switching between HDMI and DVI monitor output	134
[8] Selection of resolution setting (SCALE)	135
Multi-source recording/playback	
[1] Playing one source while recording another (REC OUT mode)	135
[2] Recording Dolby Digital and DTS multichannel sources	136
[3] Dolby Headphone recording	136
10 Surround	
Adjustment steps that need to be performed prior to surround sound playback	
[1] Test Tone	137
[2] Channel Level	137, 138
Fader function	138
Playing modes for different sources	139
THX Surround EX / Home THX Cinema mode	
[1] Playing sources recorded in Dolby Surround in the Home THX Cinema Surround mode	140, 141
[2] To play in the THX Surround EX/Home THX Cinema Surround mode for sources recorded in Dolby Digital or DTS	142
Dolby Digital mode and DTS Surround	143 ~ 145
Night mode	145
Dolby Pro Logic IIx (Dolby Pro Logic II) mode	146, 147
DTS NEO:6 mode	148, 149
The Dolby Headphone	149, 150
Memory and call-out functions (USER MODE function)	150
11 DENON Original Surround Modes	
Surround modes and their features	151
DSP surround simulation	152, 153
Tone control setting	
[1] Adjusting the tone using the Remote control unit	153, 154
[2] Adjusting the tone from the Main unit	154, 155
12 Using the Network Audio Function	
Internet radio function	155
Music server function	155
System requirements	156, 157
Listening to Internet radio	158, 159
Presetting (registering) Internet radio stations	160
Registering Internet radio stations in your favorites	161, 162
Character search function (searching by first letter)	162
Updating the list of radio stations	163
Playing music files stored on the computer (music server)	164, 165
Operating the AVC-A1XVA using a browser	165
13 Multi Zone	
Multi-zone playback with multi-source	166
[1] ZONE2 playback	166 ~ 168
[2] ZONE3 playback	169
[3] ZONE4 playback	170
[4] Outputting a program source to amplifier, etc., in a ZONE2 room (ZONE2 SELECT mode)	171
[5] Outputting a program source to amplifier, etc., in a ZONE3 or ZONE4 room (ZONE3, ZONE4 SELECT mode)	171
Remote control unit operations during multi-source	
playback	172
System Setup for multi-zone	173
Adjustment steps that need to be performed prior to surround sound playback in ZONE2	
[1] Test Tone	173
[2] Channel Level	174
Fader function	175
ZONE2 Surround	176
Memory and call-out functions of ZONE2 (USER MODE function)	177
ZONE2 tone control setting	178, 179
14 Last Function Memory	179
15 Initialization of the Microprocessor	179
16 Troubleshooting	180
17 Additional Information	
Optimum surround sound for different sources	181
Surround back speakers	182
Speaker setting examples	
[1] For THX Surround EX systems (using surround back speakers)	183, 184
[2] When not using surround back speakers	184
Surround	
[1] Dolby Surround	185, 186
[2] DTS Digital Surround	186, 187
[3] DTS-ES™	187
[4] DTS 96/24	188
[5] Home THX Cinema Surround	188, 189
[6] THX Surround EX	189
Audyssey MultEQ XT	190
HDCD	190
DENON LINK	191
About IEEE1394	191
About HDMI	191
Advanced AL24 Processing	191
Windows Media Connect	192
vTuner	192
Windows Media DRM	192
Surround modes and parameters	193, 194
Relationship between the video input signal and monitor output (MAIN ZONE)	195, 196
Relationship between the video input signal and monitor output (ZONE2)	196
18 Specifications	197
List of preset codes	198 ~ 233

■ ACCESSORIES

Check that the following parts are included in addition to the main unit:

① Operating instructions	1	⑤ Remote control unit (RC-1036)	1
② CD-ROM (Operating instructions)	1	⑥ LR6/AA alkaline batteries	2
③ Service station list	1	⑦ Setup microphone (DM-S305)	1
④ Power supply cord	1		



1 BEFORE USING

Pay attention to the following before using this unit:

- **Moving the set**

To prevent short circuits or damaged wires in the connection cords, always unplug the power supply cord and disconnect the connection cords between all other audio components when moving the set.

- **Before turning the power switch on**

Check once again that all connections are proper and that there are not problems with the connection cords. Always set the power switch to the standby position before connecting and disconnecting connection cords.

- **Store these instructions in a safe place.**

After reading, store these instructions along with the warranty in a safe place.

- **Note that the illustrations in these instructions may differ from the actual set for explanation purposes.**

2 CAUTIONS ON INSTALLATION

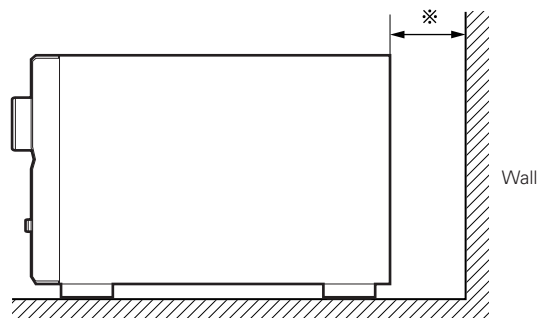
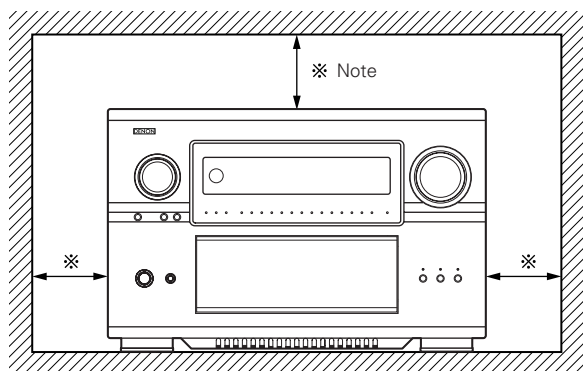
Noise or disturbance of the picture may be generated if this unit or any other electronic equipment using microprocessors is used near a tuner or TV.

If this happens, take the following steps:

- Install this unit as far as possible from the tuner or TV.
- Set the antenna wires from the tuner or TV away from this unit's power supply cord and input/output connection cords.
- Noise or disturbance tends to occur particularly when using indoor antennas or 300 Ω /ohms feeder wires. **We recommend using outdoor antennas and 75 Ω /ohms coaxial cables.**

Note:

For heat dispersal, do not install this equipment in a confined space such as a book case or similar unit.



3 CAUTIONS ON HANDLING

- **Switching the input function when input jacks are not connected**

A clicking noise may be produced if the input function is switched when nothing is connected to the input jacks. If this happens, either turn down the MASTER VOLUME control or connect components to the input jacks.

- **Muting of PRE OUT jacks and SPEAKER terminals**

The PRE OUT jacks and SPEAKER terminals include a muting circuit. Because of this, the output signals are greatly reduced for several seconds after the power switch is turned on or input function, surround mode or any other-set-up is changed. If the volume is turned up during this time, the output will be very high after the muting circuit stops functioning. Always wait until the muting circuit turns off before adjusting the volume.

4 FEATURES

1. DENON Proprietary Digital Technology

- 1) NEW D.D.S.C.-Digital (Dynamic Discrete Surround Circuit)
Powered by four high performance, high speed 32 bit floating point DSP processors, the AVC-A1XVA represents the pinnacle of precision DSP processing technology. Unlike competitive units, DENON's discrete surround technology consists of selected individual processors and ancillary elements, working in harmony via proprietary DENON inter-IC digital communication technology.
- 2) DENON Link
With select DENON DVD players that feature DENON Link digital outputs, encrypted digital multi-channel audio transfers to the AVC-A1XVA directly, eliminating unnecessary digital-to-analog and subsequent analog-to-digital conversions for the highest possible signal transfer integrity. The DENON Link function supports up to ultra high resolution 192 kHz DVD-A digital datastreams, for maximum reproduced fidelity.
- 3) Latest AL24 DSP Processing
DENON's acclaimed Advanced AL24 DSP processing improves the fidelity of high resolution stereo PCM sources such as CD and DVD (up to 192 kHz sampling frequencies), by sophisticated DSP processing algorithms that improve low level detail and enhance fidelity by upsampling and adaptive filtering techniques. Advanced AL24 provides increased dynamic range and spatial information; bring out all the nuances with optimum clarity and natural fidelity.
- 4) AL24 DSP Processing For All Channels
For the AVC-A1XVA, DENON's AL24 processing supports multi-channel DVD-Audio for all channels, including the ZONE2 multi-channel theater channels, for optimum fidelity and low level detail reproduction in both the MAIN ZONE as well as the second multi-channel ZONE2 system.

2. Latest Surround Decoding Technology

- 1) Dolby Digital
Using advanced digital audio compression and decoding technologies, Dolby Digital provides up to 5.1 channels of wide bandwidth, wide dynamic range multi-channel high fidelity surround sound. Dolby Digital is the default digital multi-channel audio delivery system for DVD and USA/Canada high definition television systems.
- 2) Dolby Pro Logic IIx
Dolby Pro Logic IIx adds the ability to provide up to 7.1 channel reproduction from conventional stereo (2 channel) sources and 5.1 channel sources, including surround back reproduction with a 6.1 or 7.1 surround sound system. Pro Logic IIx has three modes: one for movie-based soundtracks; one for stereo music sources, and a game mode for game consoles with stereo (2 channel) audio outputs.

- **Whenever the power switch is in the STANDBY state, the apparatus is still connected on AC line voltage. Please be sure to turn off the power switch or unplug the cord when you leave home for, say, a vacation.**

- 3) Dolby Headphone
Developed jointly by Dolby Laboratories and Lake Technology Ltd. of Australia, Dolby Headphone decoding provides thrilling surround sound effects of your favorite movie and music sources when using conventional stereo headphones.
- 4) DTS (Digital Theater Systems)
DTS provides up to 5.1 channels of wide-range, high fidelity surround sound from sources such as DTS-encoded CDs, DVDs with DTS soundtracks, and DVD-Audio discs that provide DTS soundtracks.
- 5) DTS-ES and DTS Neo:6
The AVC-A1XVA also supports the DTS-ES 6.1 matrix and discrete encoded surround formats, and also features DTS Neo:6 stereo-to-surround decoding with both Music and Movie modes for superb surround sound from conventional stereo sources.
- 6) DTS 96/24 Decoding
Digital Theater Systems 96/24 provides ultra high resolution 24 bit, 96 kHz sampling for optimum wide bandwidth fidelity and superb dynamic range. The AVC-A1XVA is equipped to faithfully decode DTS 96/24 discs.
- 7) HDCD High Definition Compatible Digital
Using sophisticated encoding and decoding technologies, the HDCD format provides improved fidelity and dynamic range from encoded Compact Discs (which number in the thousands of titles). The AVC-A1XVA, via a standard digital audio connection from a CD player or DVD player, internally recognizes and decodes HDCD discs for optimum fidelity and widest dynamic range.
- 8) Home THX Ultra2 Certified
Home THX is the unique collaboration between THX Ltd. and audio/video equipment manufacturers. THX Ultra2 certification is the highest performance level, and provides a rigorous set of performance standards along with proprietary surround sound post-processing technologies, all designed to maximize the surround soundtrack playback experience in the home theater. In addition, the AVC-A1XVA is fully compatible with THX Surround EX, which provides extended surround sound via additional surround back channel reproduction, first employed on Star Wars Episode 1 – The Phantom Menace, and featured on many major motion pictures since. As well, the AVC-A1XVA's power amplifier section fully complies with the latest THX Ultra2 standards, and two new addition surround modes are also provided – THX Ultra2 Cinema mode and THX Music mode. In addition, the AVC-A1XVA also incorporates THX's new THX Games mode, for thrilling surround sound effects from two channel game box audio sources.

3. Movie & Music Surround For The Whole House

The AVC-A1XVA's versatile Multi Source functions let you select different audio and video sources for each room in your home. Different audio and video multi-channel sources can be enjoyed in the home theater (Main room), as well as a multi-channel audio and video source directed to a second room. Additional zones (3 and 4) can also receive video and stereo audio as well. The AVC-A1XVA features Freely Assignable Ten Power Amp Channels, so that you can decide which power amp channels can be dedicated to the MAIN ZONE, the secondary zone (ZONE2) as well as to two additional zones (ZONE3 and ZONE4), as well as providing line level outputs to external power amplifiers.

1) ZONE2 Theater Capability

With up to 9.1 system in the main home theater room, the AVC-A1XVA provides for a second, fully 5.1 capable system in ZONE2, with component video and five amplifier channels as well, with video up-conversion if desired.

2) ZONE3 Independent Audio & Video

The AVC-A1XVA provides the ability for a third independent zone, with selectable audio and video sources.

3) ZONE4 Independent Audio

ZONE4 is ideal for a room where you can enjoy a different stereo source, for background music listening.

4. Ten High Power Assignable Power Amplifiers

- 1) Featuring high current, THX-certified high power amplifier channels, the AVC-A1XVA is equipped to drive high performance loudspeakers with unprecedented dynamic range and low impedance drive capability, with each of the ten amplifier channels rated at 170 W into 8 Ω /ohms. Each channel can be freely assigned to the main home theater room, as well as assigned to additional zones for multi-channel or stereo or even monophonic distributed audio/video and audio-only functions. For example, you might choose to have seven amplifier channels dedicated to a full THX Surround EX & DTS Surround EX 7.1 channel system in the main room, while still allowing a powered stereo function in the second zone, and a third monophonic background music function in another room. Or, you could have a principal 5.1 channel setup in the main home theater room, while having a secondary powered 5.1 system in the second zone. You could even have (with compatible bi-amplified-capable speakers) a true 5.1 bi-amped system in the main room, along with additional line-level-powered systems in up to three additional rooms.

5. Audiophile Audio Quality Throughout

- 1) Separated Pure Audio & Video Chassis Construction
For optimum audio and video quality, the AVC-A1XVA features dedicated and physically separated low and high level audio and video circuits to prevent degrading mutual interference.
- 2) Optimum Chassis Stability
As the AVC-A1XVA is equipped with a massive toroidal main power supply and additional secondary power supplies, centrally located within the chassis, a fifth chassis foot helps reduce the physical vibration that can cause mechanically-induced vibration-related distortions.
- 3) Multiple Separate Power Supply Topologies
No less than six individual power transformers (one very large toroidal unit, and five additional lower voltage power transformer units) are provided, ensuring that each critical sub-section draws power from its own dedicated supply, eliminating minute fluctuations that occur with single transformer-equipped competitive units.
- 4) Multiple Toroidal Sub-Windings
The massive main toroidal power transformer (which powers the ten amplifier channels block) features dedicated sub-windings and high current, ultra stable DC rectifiers and high rated smoothing/storage capacitors, with a tremendous 132,000 μ F total storage capacity.

5) Pure Direct Mode

According to the selected input source, the Pure Direct Mode provides the optimum decoding by switching off any and all unnecessary processing (video disable, tone bypass, and other unnecessary circuits).

6) Dual Surround Speaker Mode

DENON was the first to introduce Dual Surround Mode Speaker Switching, where two different types (and positions) of surround speakers could be chosen according to the source material – diffuse surround speakers located at the sides of the listening position for movie surround sound, and directional surround speakers located at the room's rear corners for music surround sound. The AVC-A1XVA also adds the ability to have both powered (AVC-A1XVA amplified) music and surround sound speaker systems, according to each individual home theater's setup circumstances.

7) Highest Quality Input & Output Terminals

The AVC-A1XVA audio and video input terminals are gold-plated, as are the ten speaker terminal pairs.

6. High Resolution Video Section

1) Component Video Switching

In addition to composite and S-Video switching, the AVC-A1XVA provides no less than five sets of component video inputs via RCA-type coaxial connectors, as well as an additional sixth set of component video inputs via BNC connectors, as well as two sets of component video outputs (one for RCA-type coaxial, one for BNC connectors), with additional capability for component video output to ZONE2. These component video circuits are fully HD-compatible, with a flat response to 100 MHz, far above the 38 MHz requirement for true HD reproduction, ensuring crisp and clear HDTV picture quality.

2) Video Up And Down Conversion Function

To eliminate video signal incompatibility, the AVC-A1XVA is equipped with video up-conversion and down-conversion. Composite and S-Video signals are internally up-converted to component video for the MAIN ZONE, and down-converted for 480i component video signals. ZONE2 features down-conversion from S-Video to composite video.

3) Progressive Scanning & Scaling Function

Via high quality Faroudja DCDi™ (*1) processing, the AVC-A1XVA converts standard definition interlaced video to higher resolution progressive scanning format – 480i interlace to 480p progressive. For non-copy-protected video signals, further up-conversion to HD 1080i video is also provided, for highest visual quality with compatible HD video displays.

4) High Resolution 12 bit/216 MHz Video D/A Conversion

Featuring Analog Devices ADV-7310 Noise Shaped Video (*2) digital-to-analog converters, the AVC-A1XVA provides superior high resolution video output free from video noise and conversion artifacts.

5) Superior S-Video Processing

A 3-dimensional Y-C separation circuit provides artifact-free composite video to S-Video up-conversion, and Time Base Correction for optimum color sharpness with composite video inputs (MAIN ZONE).

7. Latest Digital A/V Input/Output Capability With Future Upgrade Ability

1) HDMI/DVI Switching

High-Definition Multimedia Interface provides digital audio and video signal transfer between source components, the AVC-A1XVA, and compatible video displays with HDMI digital interface. Digital Visual Interface provides similar digital input/output capability for digital video signals. The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with three HDMI inputs and one DVI input, and one each HDMI and DVI outputs to compatible video displays. Each HDMI/DVI input feeds both HDMI and DVI outputs, for optimum compatibility with today's HDMI- and DVI-equipped video displays.

2) IEEE 1394 Compatibility

Two IEEE 1394 digital interface inputs are provided, allowing SACD DSD and DVD-Audio digital audio signal input capability with select DENON DVD players that feature IEEE 1394 digital output function, and feature DENON's D.A.S.S. (DENON Audio Synchronized System) function, which reduces data jitter for superior high resolution DSD and PCM reproduction.

3) Ethernet Function

For full compatibility with external control systems, such as AMX and Crestron, the AVC-A1XVA features Ethernet connectivity.

4) Network Audio

Connecting the AVC-A1XVA to a computer using an Ethernet cable allows you to enjoy Internet radio stations and music servers and to make settings on the computer.

5) RS-232C Serial Input/Output Function

For full compatibility with external control systems, such as AMX and Crestron, the AVC-A1XVA features a RS-232C serial I/O port. A second RS-232C serial I/O port is provided on the front panel, for future software and system upgrade capability.

6) Future Surround Format Inputs & Outputs

For possible future surround sound formats, the AVC-A1XVA features up to ten channel audio inputs (nine main channels plus an additional low frequency effects channel), with high resolution A/D conversion on each input. A second set of 5.1 analog inputs is also provided, for connection to surround sources such as SACD and/or DVD-Audio players.

8. Easy-To-Use Functions

1) Automatic Setup With Room Equalization

Featuring the newest Audyssey MultEQ XT technology, the AVC-A1XVA provides automatic room equalization with multiple measurement points for optimum response throughout the listening room. A high quality measuring microphone (DENON DMS-305) is provided.

2) Three User-Definable Easy Modes

Three User Modes are provided, allowing you to store and recall your favorite Surround modes with individual level memories at the touch of a button.

3) Digital Audio Delay Function

For optimum picture and sound synchronization, the AVC-A1XVA features an adjustable digital audio delay function, variable from 0 ~ 200 milli-seconds.

4) Adjustable Crossover Frequencies

For the widest compatibility with various main speaker and subwoofer combinations, the AVC-A1XVA is equipped with a choice of ten different crossover frequencies (40, 60, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 150, 200 and 250 Hz crossover points), individually adjustable for each of the main speaker systems.

5) The AVC-A1XVA provides dual subwoofer outputs, along with an additional subwoofer output dedicated for the Low Frequency Effects channel (MAIN ZONE).

6) Auto Surround Mode

For each input source, a separate memory stores your preferred surround sound mode and other settings, eliminating the need to re-configure the Surround mode parameters whenever you switch between input sources.

7) Assignable High Current Trigger Outputs

Four different 12 Volt trigger outputs allow the automatic activation of externally controlled devices, such as motorized drop-down screens, motorized drapery, motorized screen masking systems and other trigger-activated systems. Each port supports 12V/250mA trigger-activated functions, assignable by zone (MAIN ZONE, ZONE2, ZONE3, or ZONE4).

8) Assignable AC Outlet

Assignable AC convenience outlet is provided, and it can be activated by choice of input source or surround sound mode by each zone, to activate specific external components as necessary.

9) Front Panel Convenience Inputs

A set of front panel A/V inputs allows quick connection of A/V sources, such as a video camcorder or a game console.

10) Operating the remote control unit

The RC-1036 remote control has a backlit EL display whose contents change according to the mode or function selected, with the appropriate remote commands for that mode or function.

11) Large Fluorescent Display

For easy setup and system monitoring, the AVC-A1XVA features a clearly readable FL display that provides extensive system status and setup monitoring.

12) AC Input

Detachable power supply cord.

13) Other Useful Functions

Digital Audio Input to Analog Recording Output conversion

Input Source Re-naming Function

Audio Level Memories for each input

Personal Memory Plus function stores surround mode, level memories, analog or digital input selection for each input

Volume Level Limiter provides a user-definable pre-set volume level for multi-zone audio operation

Power On Volume Level Memory provides a user-definable volume level that is activated every time the AVC-A1XVA is powered up

Setup Lock Function prevents mis-operation at start-up

Personal Default Memory function

*1: "DCDi™" is trademark of Faroudja, a division of Genesis Microchip Inc.

*2: "NSV" is a trademark of Analog Devices, Inc.

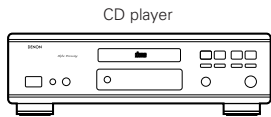
5 CONNECTIONS

- Do not plug in the power supply cord until all connections have been completed.
- Be sure to connect the left and right channels properly (left with left, right with right).
- Insert the plugs securely. Incomplete connections will result in the generation of noise.
- **Use the AC OUTLET for audio equipment only. Do not use them for hair driers, etc.**

- Note that binding pin plug cords together with power supply cords or placing them near a power transformer will result in generating hum or other noise.
- Noise or humming may be generated if a connected audio equipment is used independently without turning the power of this unit on. If this happens, turn on the power of the this unit.

Connecting Audio Components

- When making connections, also refer to the operating instructions of the other components.



Connecting a CD player

Connect the CD player's analog output jacks (ANALOG OUTPUT) to this unit's CD jacks using pin plug cords.

Connecting a turntable

Connect the turntable's output cord to the AVC-A1XVA's PHONO jacks, the L (left) plug to the L jack, the R (right) plug to the right jack.

NOTE:

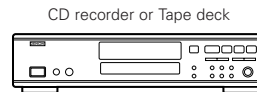
This unit cannot be used with MC cartridges directly. Use a separate head amplifier or step-up transformer.

If humming or other noise is generated when the ground wire is connected, disconnect the ground wire.



Turntable (MM cartridge)

Ground wire



Connecting a tape deck

Connections for recording:

Connect the tape deck's recording input jacks (LINE IN or REC) to this unit's tape recording (OUT) jacks using pin plug cords.

Connections for playback:

Connect the tape deck's playback output jacks (LINE OUT or PB) to this unit's tape playback (IN) jacks using pin plug cords.

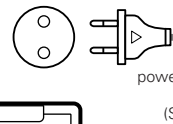
Connecting the pre-out jacks

Use these jacks if you wish to connect external power amplifier(s) to increase the power of the front, center, surround and surround back sound channels, or for connection to powered loudspeakers.

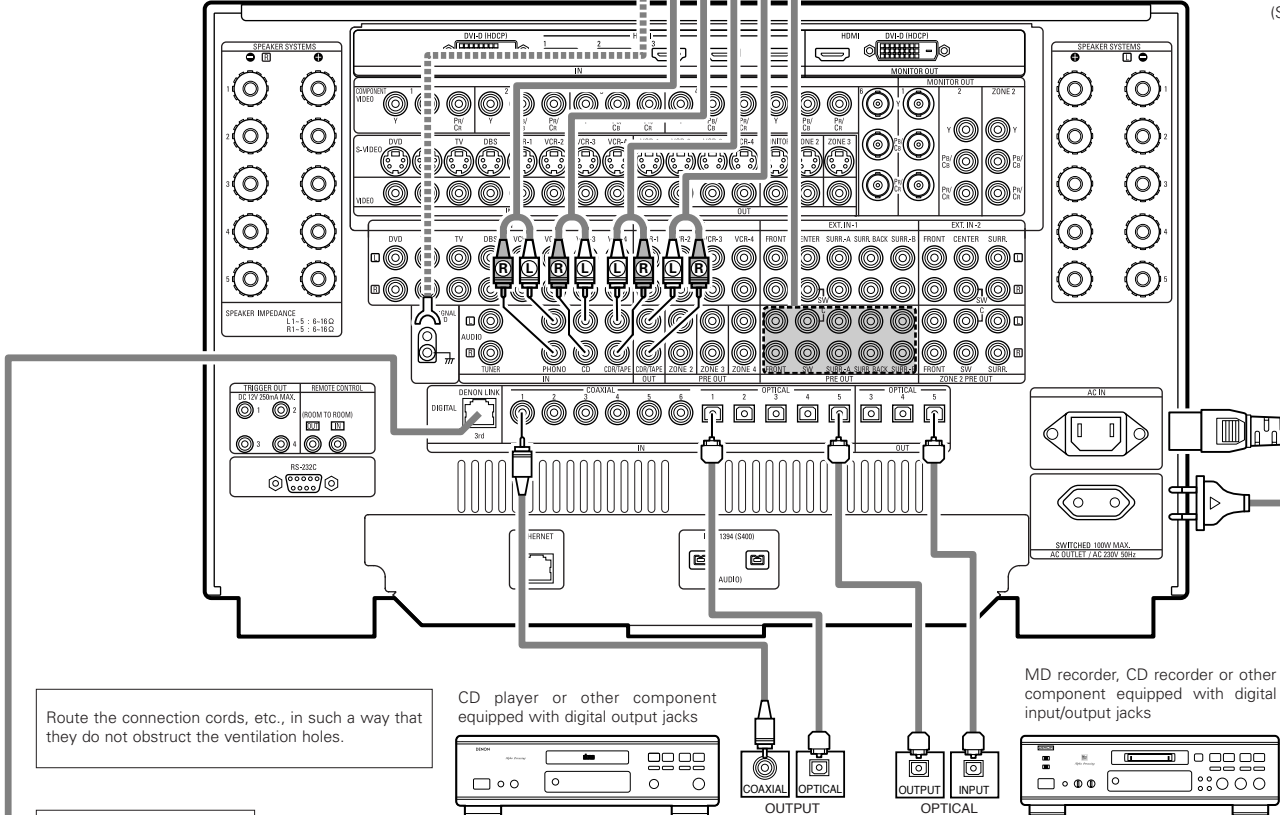
When using only one surround back speaker, connect it to left channel.

AC outlets (wall)

AC 230V, 50Hz



power supply cord (Supplied)



Route the connection cords, etc., in such a way that they do not obstruct the ventilation holes.

DENON Link terminal

Use this terminal to connect a DENON DVD player for high quality digital multichannel sound. (See page 20)

CD player or other component equipped with digital output jacks

Connecting the DIGITAL jacks

Use these for connections to audio equipment with digital output. Only one type of connector needs to be used, you can decide which based on availability of coaxial and optical inputs. Refer to pages 60, 61 for instructions on setting this terminal.

MD recorder, CD recorder or other component equipped with digital input/output jacks

NOTES:

- Use 75 Ω /ohms cable pin cords for coaxial connections.
- Use optical cables for optical connections, removing the cap before connecting.

Connecting the AC OUTLET

AC OUTLET

- SWITCHED (total capacity – 100 W)

The power to the outlet is turned on and off in conjunction with the POWER switch on the main unit, and when the power is switched between on and standby from the remote control unit.

No power is supplied from this outlet when this unit's power is at standby. Never connect equipment whose total capacity is above 100 W.

NOTES:

- Only use the AC OUTLET for audio equipment. Never use them for hair driers, TVs or other electrical appliances.
- The AC outlet can be set to turn on and off for the different functions. For details, see "Setting the AC Outlet Assignment". (See page 108)

Connecting Video Components

- To connect the video signal, connect using a 75 Ω /ohms video signal cord. Using an improper cable can result in a drop in picture quality.
 - When making connections, also refer to the operating instructions of the other components.
 - The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with a function for up and down converting video signals. (See page 17)
- The signal connected to the video signal terminal is output to the S-Video and component video monitor out terminals. But the REC OUT terminals have no conversion function, so when recording connect the appropriate video terminals.

DVD player or video disc player (VDP), etc.

Connecting a DVD player or a video disc player (VDP)

DVD

- Connect the video disc player's video output jack (VIDEO OUTPUT) to the **VIDEO** (yellow) DVD IN jack using a 75 Ω /ohms video coaxial pin plug cord.
- Connect the video disc player's analog audio output jacks (ANALOG AUDIO OUTPUT) to the **AUDIO** DVD IN jacks using pin plug cords.
- VDP can be connected to the VDP jacks in the same way.

Connecting a TV tuner

TV

- Connect the TV's tuner's video output jack (VIDEO OUTPUT) to the **VIDEO** (yellow) TV IN jack using a 75 Ω /ohms video coaxial pin plug cord.
- Connect the TV's tuner's audio output jacks (AUDIO OUTPUT) to the **AUDIO** TV IN jacks using pin plug cords.

Connecting a DBS tuner

DBS

- Connect the DBS tuner's video output jack (VIDEO OUTPUT) to the **VIDEO** (yellow) DBS IN jack using a 75 Ω /ohms video coaxial pin plug cord.
- Connect the DBS tuner's audio output jacks (AUDIO OUTPUT) to the **AUDIO** DBS IN jacks using pin plug cords.

Monitor

Connecting a monitor

MONITOR OUT

- Connect the TV's video input jack (VIDEO INPUT) to the **VIDEO** MONITOR OUT jack using a 75 Ω /ohms video coaxial pin plug cord.

Note on connecting the digital input jacks

- Only audio signals are input to the digital input jacks. For details, see page 11.

NOTE:

• Connecting a LD (laser disc) player with a Dolby Digital RF Output.

The AVC-A1XVA does not have a DD RF demodulator function. Therefore, you need to use a commercially available outboard DD RF demodulator and connect its digital output to one of the AVC-A1XVA available digital inputs. Refer to the demodulator's owner's manual for further information.

Connecting the video recorders

- There are four sets of video deck (VCR) jacks, so four video decks can be connected for simultaneous recording or video copying.

Video input/output connections:

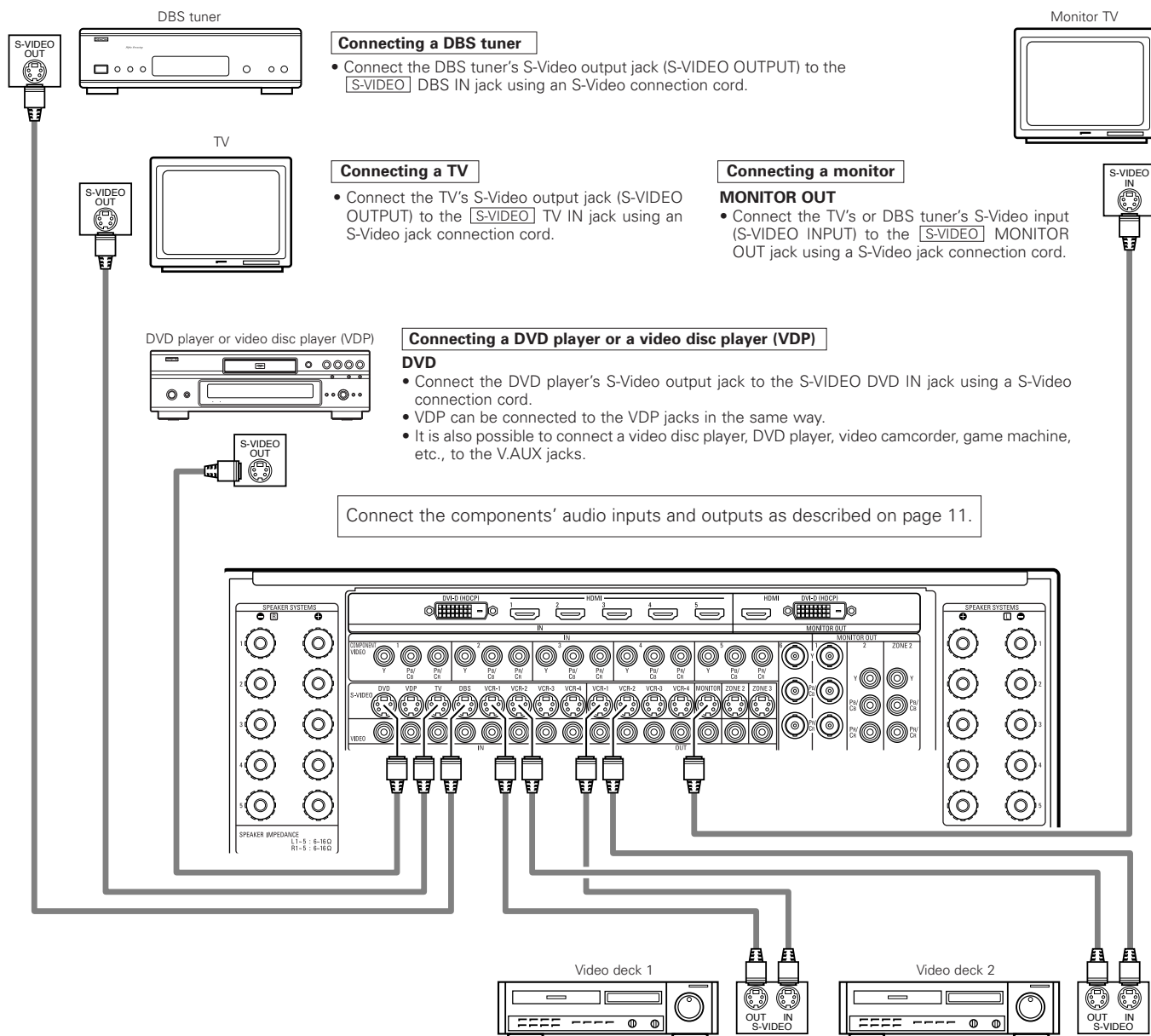
- Connect the video deck's video output jack (VIDEO OUT) to the **VIDEO** (yellow) VCR-1 IN jack, and the video deck's video input jack (VIDEO IN) to the **VIDEO** (yellow) VCR-1 OUT jack using 75 Ω /ohms video coaxial pin plug cords.

Connecting the audio output jacks

- Connect the video deck's audio output jacks (AUDIO OUT) to the **AUDIO** VCR-1 IN jacks, and the video deck's audio input jacks (AUDIO IN) to the **AUDIO** VCR-1 OUT jacks using pin plug cords.
- ※ Connect other video decks to the VCR-2, VCR-3 or VCR-4 jacks in the same way.

Connecting video components equipped with S-Video jacks

- When making connections, also refer to the operating instructions of the other components.
- A note on the S-Video input jacks**
The input selectors for the S-Video inputs and Video inputs work in conjunction with each other.
- The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with a function for converting video signals. (See page 17)
The signal connected to the S-Video signal terminal is output to the composite video and component video monitor out terminals. But the REC OUT terminals have no conversion function, so when recording connect the S-Video terminals.



NOTES:

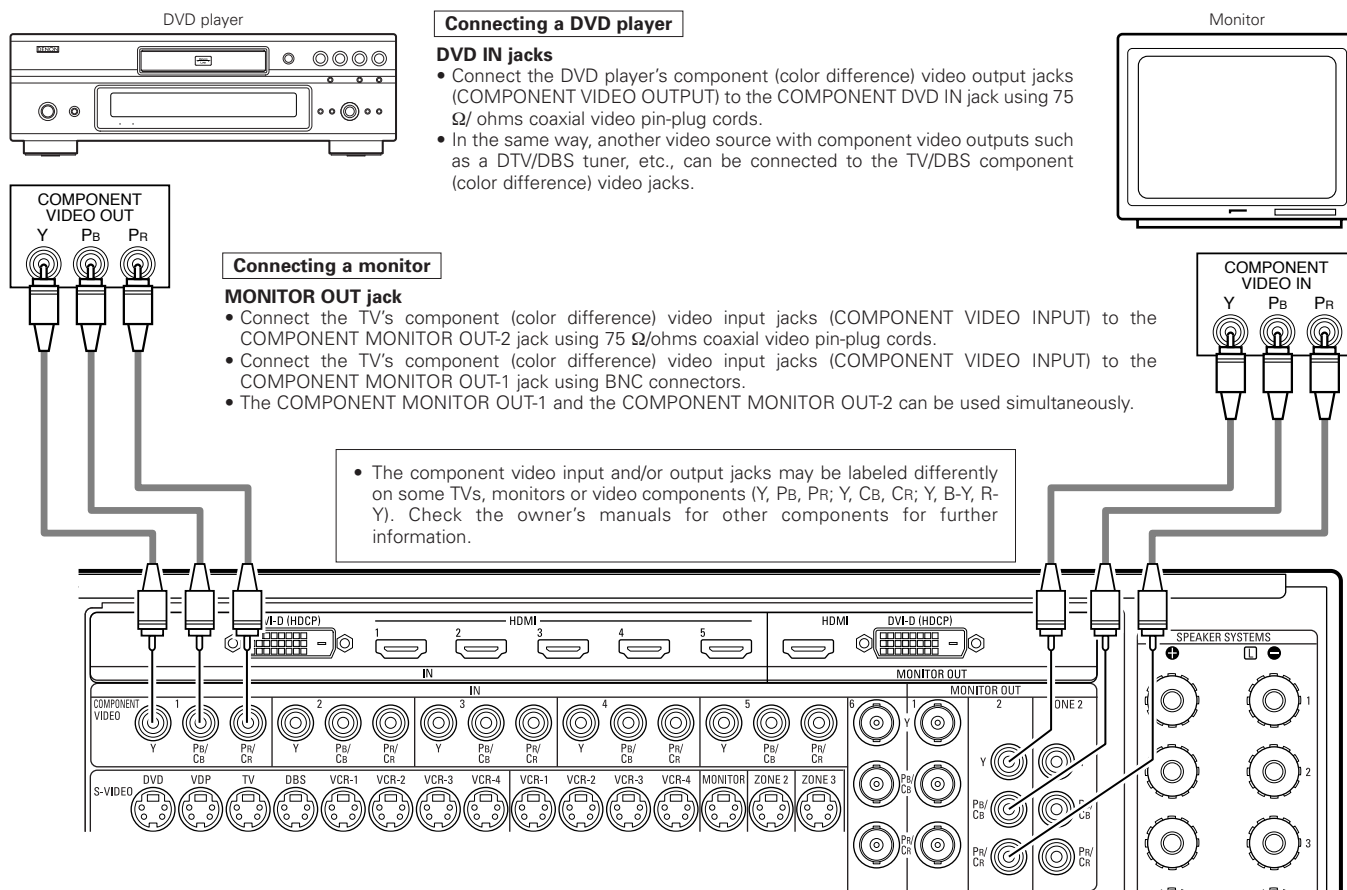
- The video signal ZONE2 MONITOR OUT (yellow), S-Video signal ZONE2 MONITOR OUT jack or component signal ZONE2 MONITOR OUT output switches together with the input function selected with the ZONE2 SELECT (See page 171). To use as the monitor output, set "SOURCE" as the ZONE2 input function. The on screen display signals are output from the ZONE2 MONITOR OUT (See page 171).
- The video signal ZONE3 MONITOR OUT (yellow) or S-Video signal ZONE3 MONITOR OUT output switches together with the input function selected with the ZONE3/REC SELECT (See pages 166 ~168). To use as the monitor output, set "SOURCE" as the ZONE3/REC SELECT input function. At this time, the on screen display signals are not output from the ZONE3 MONITOR OUT (See page 169).

Connecting the video decks

- Connect the video deck's S-Video output jack (S-OUT) to the **S-VIDEO** VCR-1 IN jack and the video deck's S-Video input jack (S-IN) to the **S-VIDEO** VCR-1 OUT jack using S-Video jack connection cords.
 - Connect the video deck's S-Video output jack (S-OUT) to the **S-VIDEO** VCR-2 IN jack and the video deck's S-Video input jack (S-IN) to the **S-VIDEO** VCR-2 OUT jack using S-Video jack connection cords.
- ※ Connect the third and fourth video deck to the VCR-3 and VCR-4 jacks in the same way.

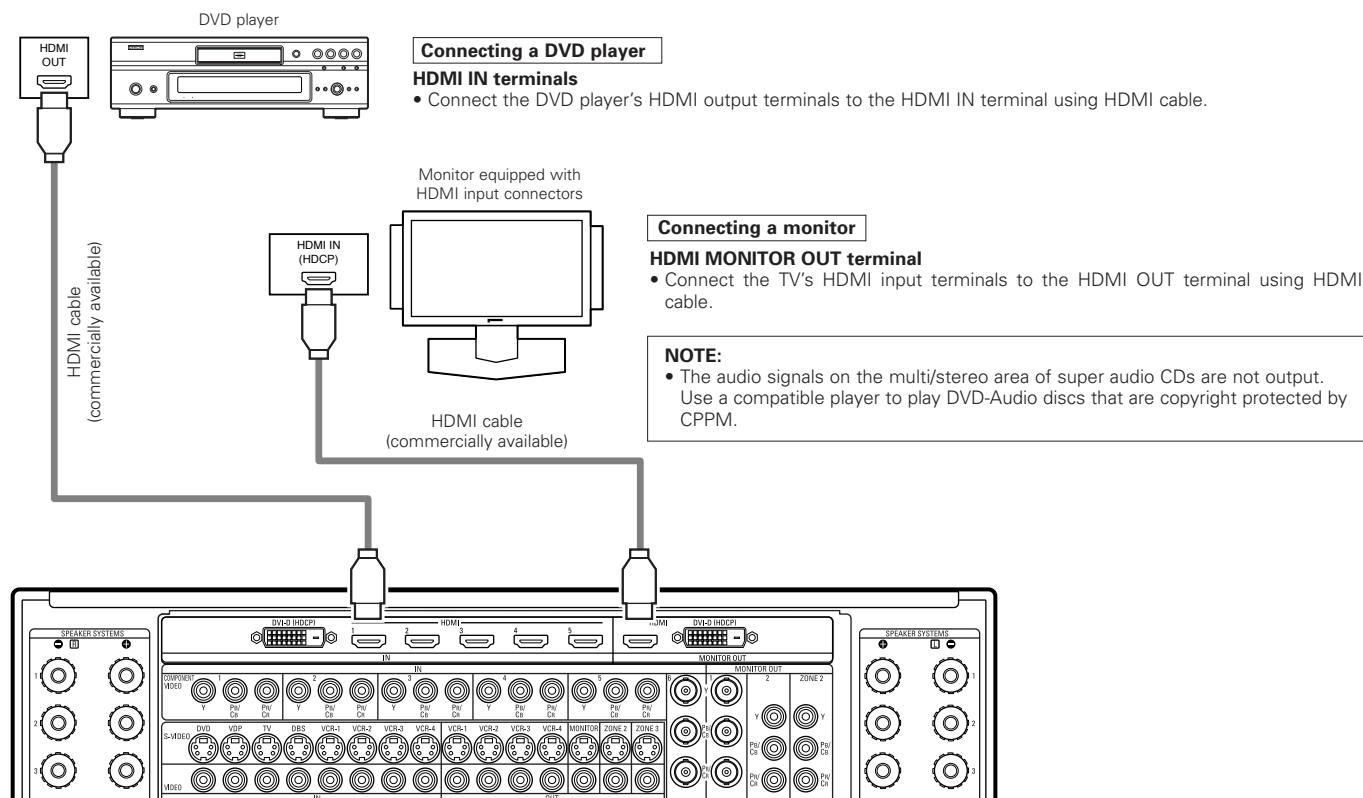
Connecting video components equipped with Component Video (color difference) video jacks (Component - Y, P_B, P_R ; Y, C_B, C_R)

- When making connections, also refer to the operating instructions of the other components.
- The signals input to the component (color difference) video jacks are not output from the VIDEO output jack (yellow) or the S-Video output jack.
- Some video sources with component video outputs are labeled Y, P_B, P_R, or Y, C_B, C_R, or Y, B-Y, R-Y. These terms all refer to component video color difference output.
- The function assigned to the component video input can be changed at the system setup. For details, see "Setting the Component In Assignment". (See page 71)



Connecting equipment with HDMI (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) terminals

- A simple 1-cable connection (using a commercially available cable) with a device having an HDMI (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) connector allows digital transfer of the digital images of DVD-Video and other sources, and the multi-channel sound of DVD-Audio and DVD-Video.
- The HDMI and DVI-D monitor output connectors on the AVC-A1XVA can only be used one at a time, not simultaneously.
- To provide audio output from AVC-A1XVA's audio output connector, select "Amp" at the System Setup.
- To provide audio output from the TV, select "TV" at the System Setup. For details, see "Setting the HDMI/DVI In Assignment". (See pages 69, 70)



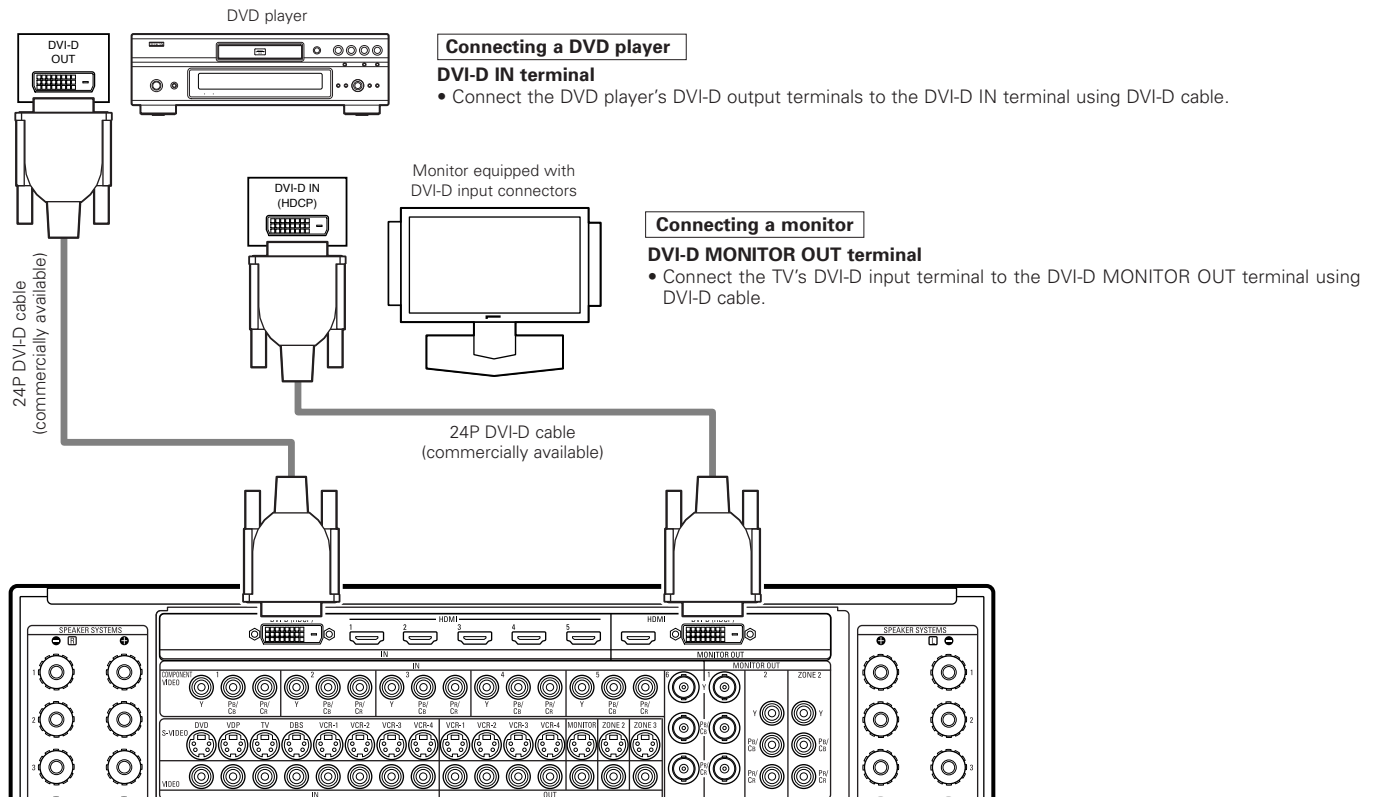
- Among the devices that support HDMI, some devices can control other devices via the HDMI connector; however, the AVC-A1XVA cannot be controlled by another device via the HDMI connector.
- The audio signals from the HDMI connector (including the sampling frequency and bit length) may be limited by the equipment that is connected.
- The on screen display signals are not output from the HDMI MONITOR OUT.
- Use a cable including the HDMI logo (HDMI certified product) for connection of the HDMI terminal. Normal playback may not be possible if a cable that does not include the HDMI logo (non-HDMI-certified product) is used.

Copyright Protection System

To play back the digital video and audio of DVD-Video and DVD-Audio through an HDMI/DVI-D connection, both the connected player and monitor are required to support a copyright protection system called HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection System). HDCP is copy protection technology that comprises data encryption and authentication of the partner equipment. The AVC-A1XVA supports HDCP. Please see the user's manual of your video display for more information about this.

Connecting equipment with DVI (Digital Visual Interface) terminals

- Connection with equipment that has a DVI (Digital Visual Interface)-D connector permits the transfer of digital images. Make an audio connection also.
- Commercially-available DVI cables are available in 24-pin and 29-pin types. The AVC-A1XVA supports the 24-pin DVI-D cable.
- The HDMI and DVI-D monitor output connectors on the AVC-A1XVA can only be used one at a time, not simultaneously.
- The on screen display signals are not outputted from the DVI-D MONITOR OUT.



Note on connecting a HDMI/DVI

- The table below indicates the compatibility of connections between the HDMI/DVI-D output connector of the AVC-A1XVA and monitors that support HDMI/DVI-D.

	Monitor with HDMI	Monitor with DVI-D (HDCP compatible)	Monitor with DVI-D (HDCP incompatible)
HDMI output terminal	○ (Video / Audio)	○ (Only Video)	×
DVI-D output terminal	○ (Only Video)	○ (Only Video)	×

Copyright Protection System

To play back the digital video and audio of DVD-Video and DVD-Audio through an HDMI/DVI-D connection, both the connected player and monitor are required to support a copyright protection system called HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection System). HDCP is copy protection technology that comprises data encryption and authentication of the partner equipment. The AVC-A1XVA supports HDCP. Please see the user's manual of your video display for more information about this.

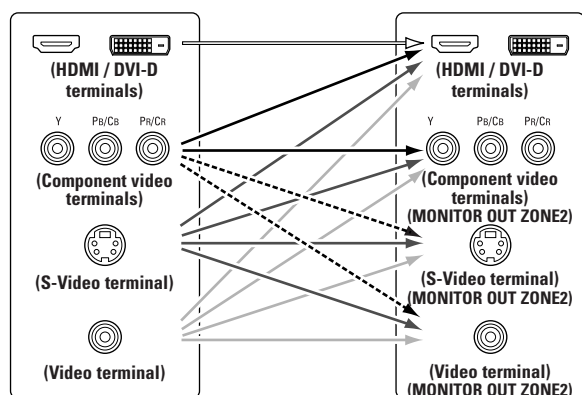
The video conversion function

The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with a function for up and down converting video signals.

Because of this, the AVC-A1XVA's MONITOR OUT terminal can be connected to the monitor (TV) with a set of cables offering a higher quality connection, regardless of how the player and the AVC-A1XVA's video input terminals are connected.

Generally speaking, analog video connections using the component video terminals offer the highest quality playback, followed by connections using the S-Video terminals, then connections using the regular video terminals (yellow).

The flow of the video signals.



This unit's input terminals

This unit's output terminals

----- : only MAIN ZONE 480i/576i

Cautions on the ZONE2 video conversion function:

There is no TBC (Time Base Collector) for ZONE2.

When the component video terminals are used to connect the AVC-A1XVA with a TV (or monitor, projector, etc.) and the video (yellow) or S-Video terminals are used to connect the AVC-A1XVA with a VCR, depending on the combination of the TV and VCR the picture may flicker in the horizontal direction, be distorted, be out of sync or not display at all when playing video tapes.

If this happens, connect a commercially available video stabilizer, etc., with a TBC (time base corrector) function between the AVC-A1XVA and the VCR, or if your VCR has a TBC function, turn it on.

NOTES:

- It is not possible to down-convert from HDMI and DVI-D input signals to the component, S-Video or composite video monitor output terminals.
- Video down conversion to the MAIN ZONE's monitor output is only possible when the component video input resolution is 480i (interlaced standard definition video – NTSC format, for North America) or 576i (interlaced standard definition video – PAL format, for Europe and other countries).
- To set the video conversion function for the MAIN ZONE to "OFF" (See page 72).
- Set the resolution of the video output to one that is compatible with the resolution of your monitor.
- When "Component" is set at "Scaler" under "HDMI/Component Out", the signals are output to the HDMI/DVI-D monitor output terminal with their original resolution. Use a monitor compatible with a resolution of 480i/576i.

The analog video to HDMI conversion function

- The AVC-A1XVA's video up-conversion function lets you output analog video input signals (component – 480i/576i, 480p/576p, 1080i or 720p; S-Video and composite video – 480i/576i) to the HDMI monitor output terminal.
- With the AVC-A1XVA, the resolution of the signal output to the HDMI MONITOR OUT terminal can be selected (See page 69, 70). The resolutions with which the monitor is compatible can be checked using the STATUS button on the main unit or the ON SCREEN button on the remote control unit.
- The resolution of the signal output to the component monitor output terminal can be set on the AVC-A1XVA.

NOTE:

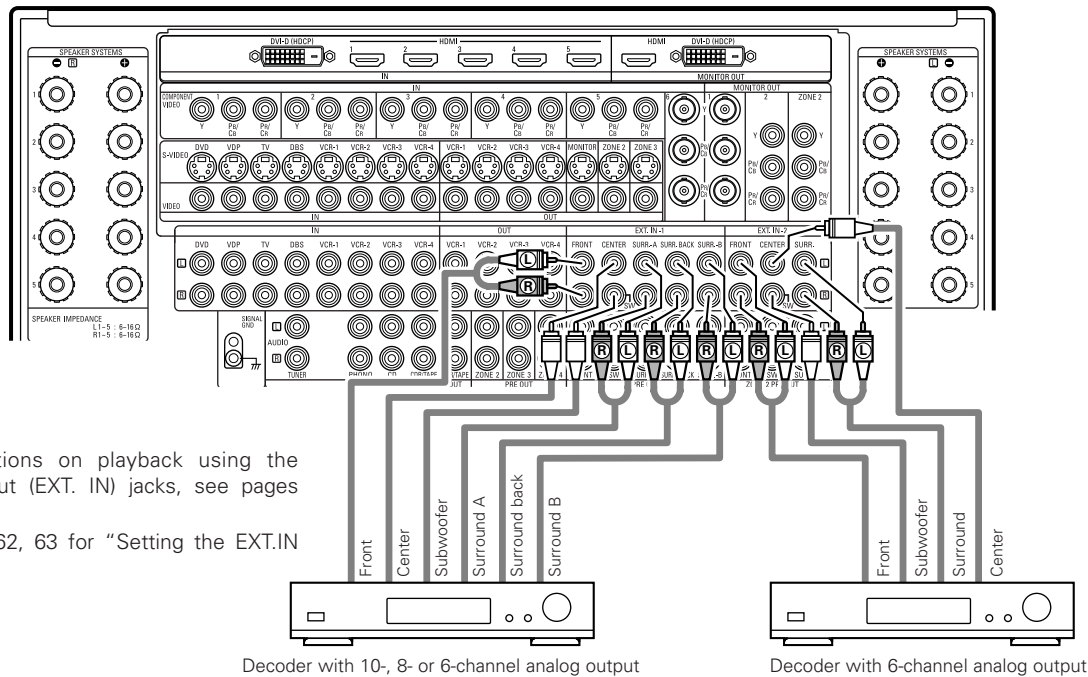
- If you do not want to use the function for converting analog video signals to HDMI signals, select "OFF" for "Analog to HDMI Convert" at "Setting the HDMI/Component out" (See pages 73, 74). In this case, the function for video up conversion to the component video terminal operates.

On screen display for component video outputs and HDMI output

- When viewing component video signals or HDMI signals via the AVC-A1XVA, the on screen display is displayed on the monitor when the "System Setup" operations are performed and when the remote control unit's ON SCREEN button is operated.
- To view the on screen display using an HDMI monitor, set "Analog to HDMI Convert" at "HDMI Out Setup" to "ON" (default).
- When only component video signals are input to the AVC-A1XVA, the characters of the on screen display are not displayed over the picture.

Connecting the external input (EXT. IN) jacks

- AVC-A1XVA is equipped with two analog external input terminals for 9.1 channels and 5.1 channels.
- These jacks are for inputting multi-channel audio signals from an outboard decoder, or a component with a different type of multi-channel decoder, such as a DVD-Audio player, or a multi-channel Super Audio CD player, or other future multi-channel sound format decoder.
- When making connections, also refer to the operating instructions of the other components.

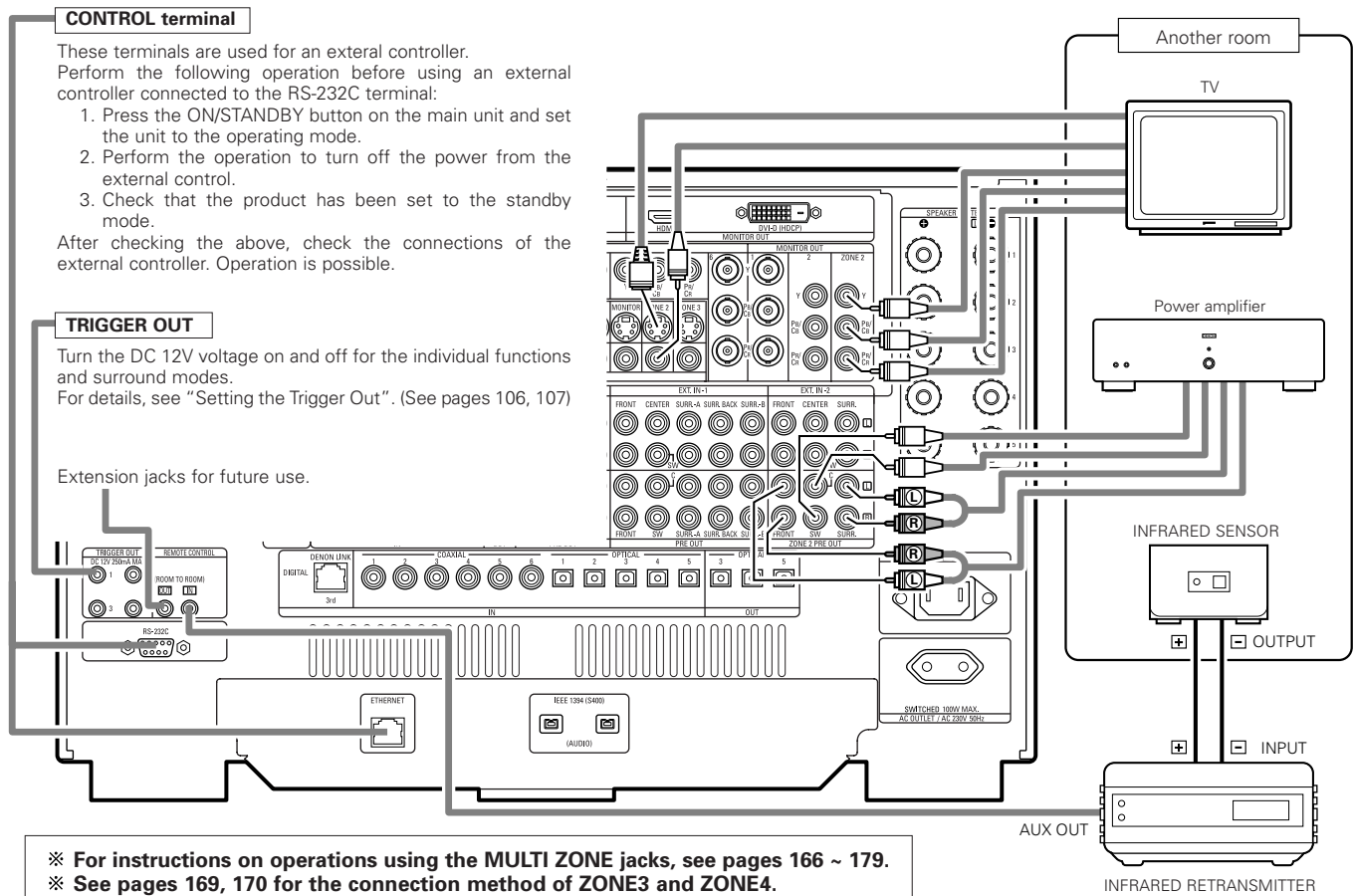


- ※ For instructions on playback using the external input (EXT. IN) jacks, see pages 131, 132.
- ※ See pages 62, 63 for "Setting the EXT.IN Setup".

Connecting the ZONE2 jacks

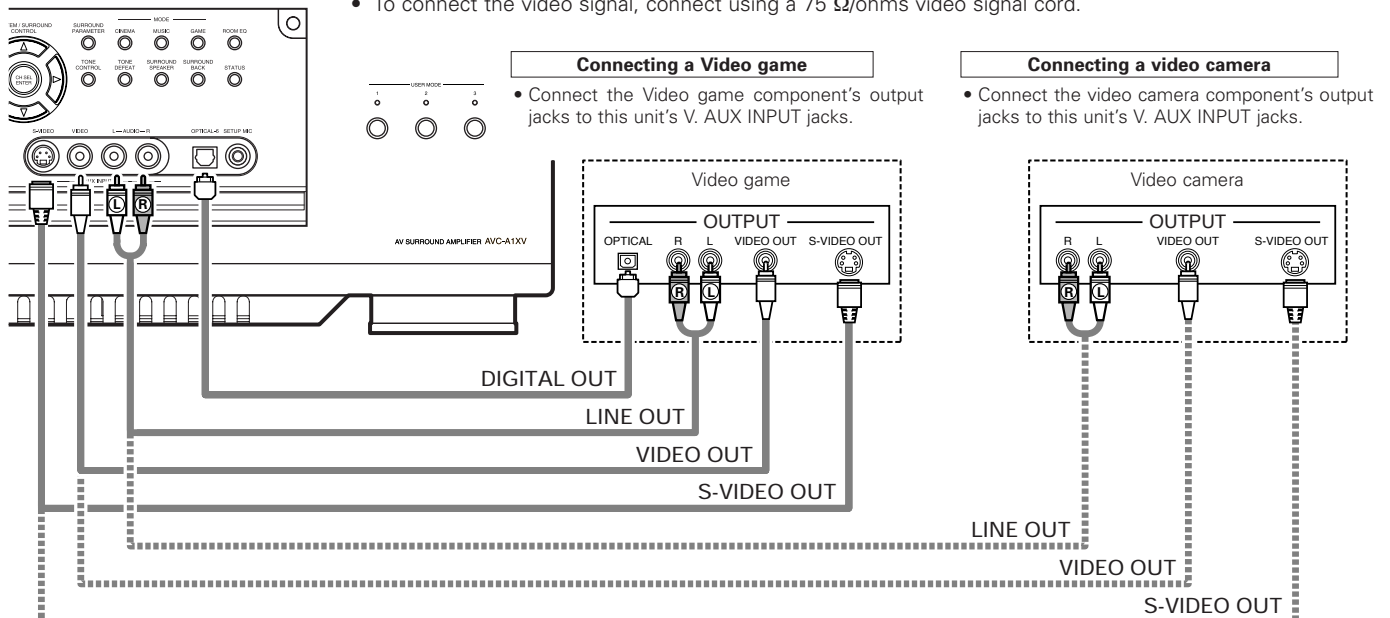
■ ZONE2 preout CONNECTIONS

- If another power amplifier is connected, the ZONE2 preout (variable level) jacks can be used to play a different program source in ZONE2 the same time. (See page 166)
- The ZONE2 video out is only use for the ZONE2.
- The connection diagram below is an example of multi-channel playback in ZONE2. Please see page 168 when you would like to have 2-channel playback in ZONE2.



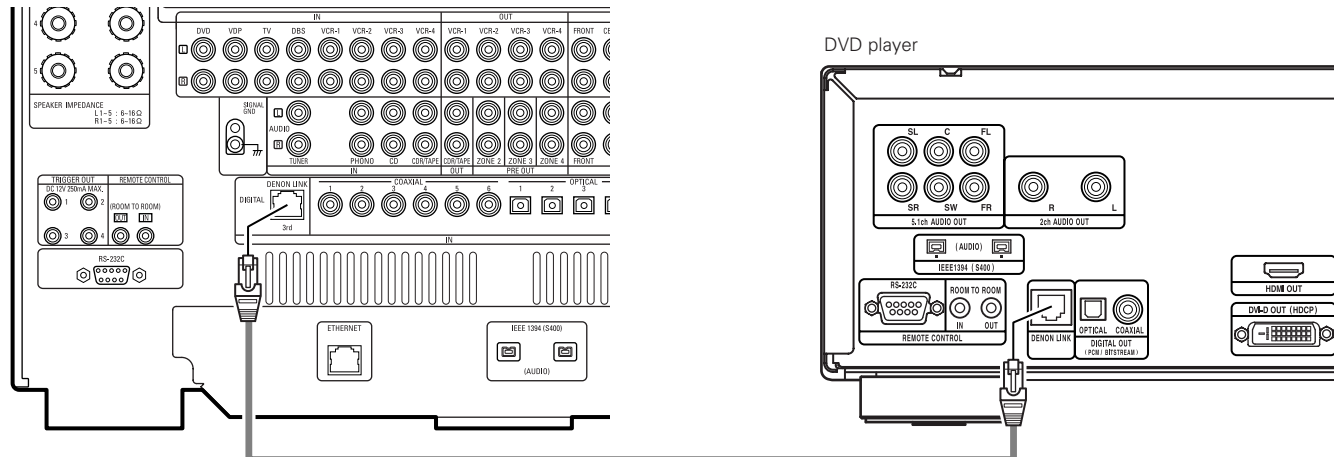
Connecting a component with video and audio jacks to the V.AUX input jacks

- To connect the video signal, connect using a 75 Ω /ohms video signal cord.



DENON LINK connection

- High quality digital sound with reduced digital signal transfer loss can be enjoyed by connecting a separately sold DENON LINK compatible DVD Player.



■ Playback using the DENON LINK connector

Digital transfer and multi-channel playback of DVD-Audio discs and other multi-channel sources is possible by connecting the AVC-A1XVA to a DENON DVD player equipped with a DENON LINK connector using the connection cable included with the DVD player.

■ DENON LINK Setting

When a DENON DVD player and the DENON LINK have been connected, be sure to make a setting to "DENON LINK" with the System Setup Digital In Assignment. (See pages 60, 61)

- When the input mode is AUTO and the signals are not able to transferred by DENON LINK, the unit automatically changes over the input to the selected signals (ANALOG, EXT. IN or IEEE1394).

1

Assign DENON LINK to the input source.

① Select the input source.

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

② Select "DLINK".

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

3-1. Digital In Assign	
CD : COAX1	Tape : OPT5
DVD : DLINK	V.Aux : OPT6
VDP : COAX3	Tuner : OFF
TV : COAX4	
DBS : COAX5	DLINK
VCR-1 : OPT1	No Signal
VCR-2 : OPT2	◀EXT-1▶
VCR-3 : OPT3	
VCR-4 : OPT4	Default Yes

*Digital In
DVD : **DLINK**

2

Select the input for the playback of signals that cannot be transferred by DENON LINK.

① Select "DLINK" setting.

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

② Select input signal (ANALOG, EXT.IN or IEEE1394).

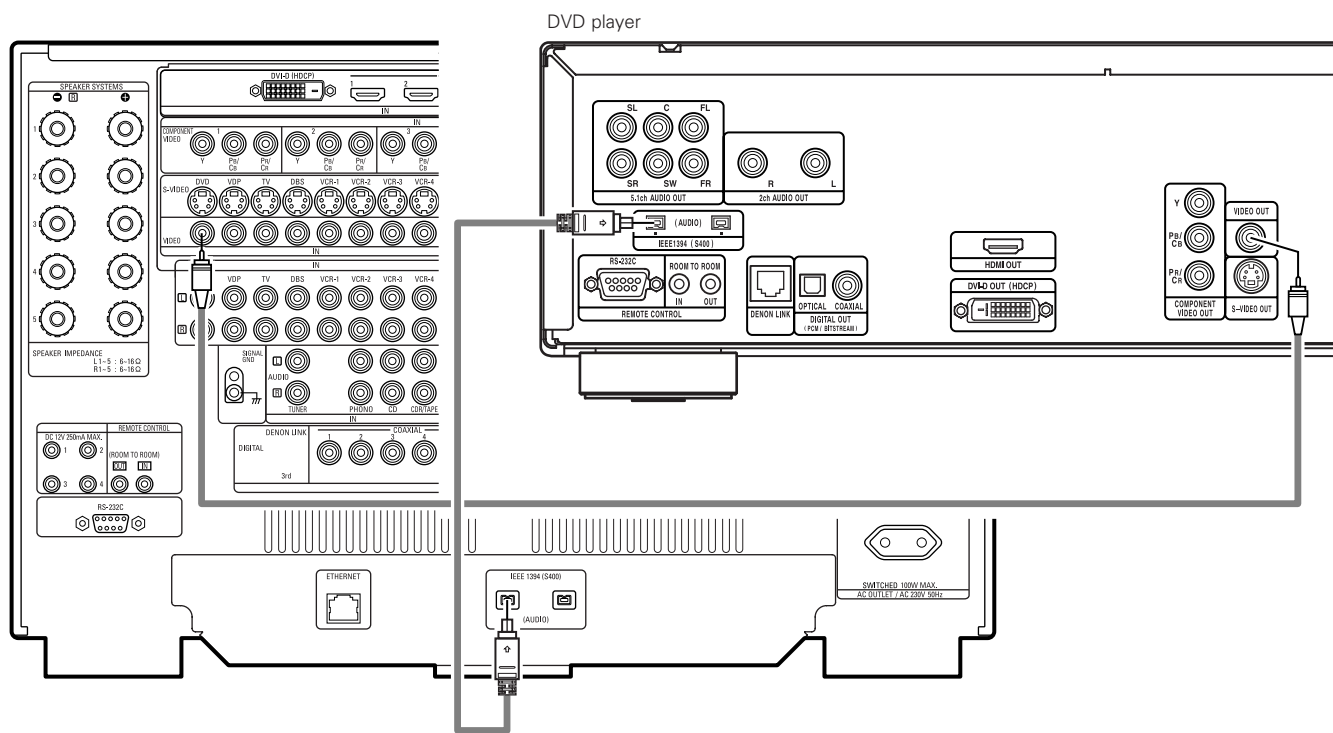
(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

3-1. Digital In Assign	
CD : COAX1	Tape : OPT5
DVD : DLINK	V.Aux : OPT6
VDP : COAX3	Tuner : OFF
TV : COAX4	
DBS : COAX5	DLINK
VCR-1 : OPT1	No Signal
VCR-2 : OPT2	◀ANALOG▶
VCR-3 : OPT3	
VCR-4 : OPT4	Default Yes

*Digital In
NoSig. : **ANALOG**

Connecting IEEE1394 devices

- Use an S400-compatible 4-pin IEEE1394 cable to connect.
- Video signals are not transferred with the AVC-A1XVA's IEEE1394 interface, so when connecting a video device connect the video signals as well.
- Assign the IEEE1394 input the input source. (See page 67)



IEEE1394 network

- ① Up to 17 devices can be connected using daisy chain type connections.
- ② Up to 63 devices can be connected using tree type connections.
Do not loop the connections.
- ③ Select IEEE 1394 input. "LINK CHECK" will be displayed while the IEEE 1394 connection is being checked.
- ④ If the connection is looped, "LOOP CONNECT" is displayed. Check the connections and undo the loop.

NOTES:

- Do not use an IEEE1394 cable to connect the AVC-A1XVA with a computer.
- The AVC-A1XVA will not operate when connected to equipment other than that conforming to "IEEE1394 AUDIO (A&M protocol)" standards or when connected to computer peripherals.
- Also please note that operation is not guaranteed even when connected to IEEE1394-compatible equipment. Whether or not data and control signals can be sent and received between interconnected IEEE1394-compatible equipment depends on the functions of the different equipment. Please read the operating instructions of the equipment to be connected.

Speaker system connections

- Connect the speaker terminals with the speakers making sure that like polarities are matched (\oplus with \oplus , \ominus with \ominus). Mismatching of polarities will result in weak central sound, unclear orientation of the various instruments, and the sense of direction of the stereo being impaired.

NOTES:

- NEVER touch the speaker terminals when the power is on. Doing so could result in electric shocks.**
- When making connections, take care that none of the individual conductors of the speaker cord come in contact with adjacent terminals, with other speaker cord conductors, or with the rear panel and screws.

Speaker Impedance

- Speakers with an impedance from 6 to 16 Ω /ohms can be connected.
- The protector circuit may be activated if the set is played for long periods of time at high volumes when speakers with an impedance lower than the specified impedance are connected.

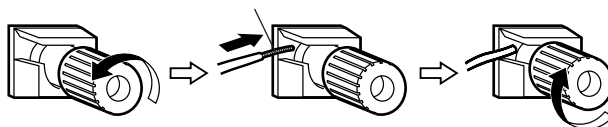
Connecting the speaker cords

1. Loosen by turning counterclockwise.

2. Insert the cord.

3. Tighten by turning clockwise.

Either tightly twist or terminate the core wires.



Protector circuit

- This unit is equipped with a high-speed protection circuit. The purpose of this circuit is to protect the speakers under circumstances such as when the output of the power amplifier is inadvertently short-circuited and a large current flows, when the temperature surrounding the unit becomes unusually high, or when the unit is used at high output over a long period which results in an extreme temperature rise.

When the protection circuit is activated, the speaker output is cut off and the power supply indicator LED flashes. Should this occur, please follow these steps: be sure to switch off the power of this unit, check whether there are any faults with the wiring of the speaker cables or input cables, and wait for the unit to cool down if it is very hot. Improve the ventilation condition around the unit and switch the power back on.

If the protection circuit is activated again even though there are no problems with the wiring or the ventilation around the unit, switch off the power and contact a DENON service center.

Note on speaker impedance

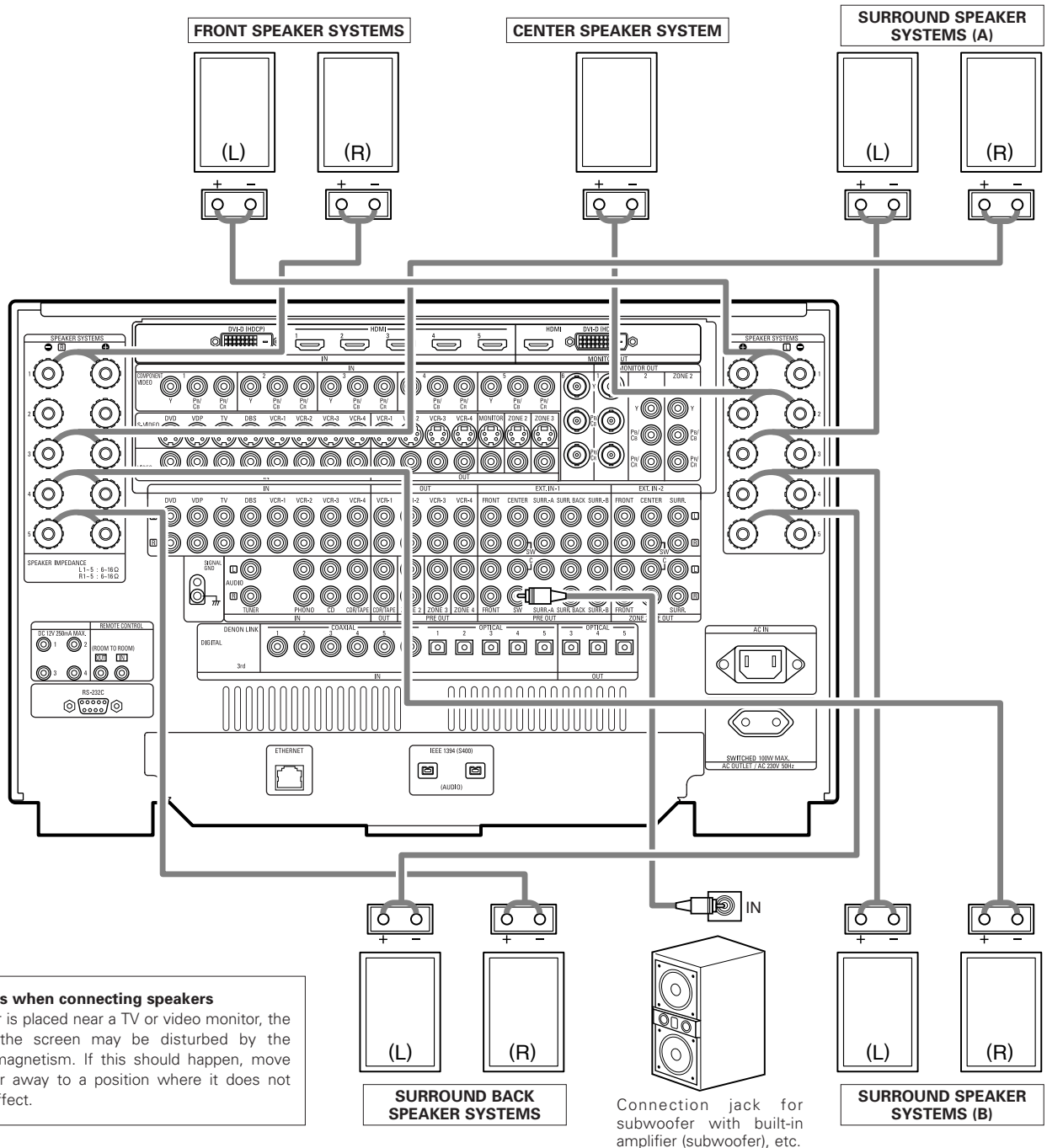
- The protector circuit may be activated if the set is played for long periods of time at high volumes when speakers with an impedance lower than the specified impedance (for example speakers with an impedance of lower than 4 Ω /ohms) are connected. If the protector circuit is activated, the speaker output is cut off. Turn off the set's power, wait for the set to cool down, improve the ventilation around the set, then turn the power back on.

Cooling fan

- The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with a cooling fan to prevent the temperature inside the set from rising. The fan is activated under certain usage conditions. It is temperature sensitive, to minimize or prevent audible fan noise.

Connections

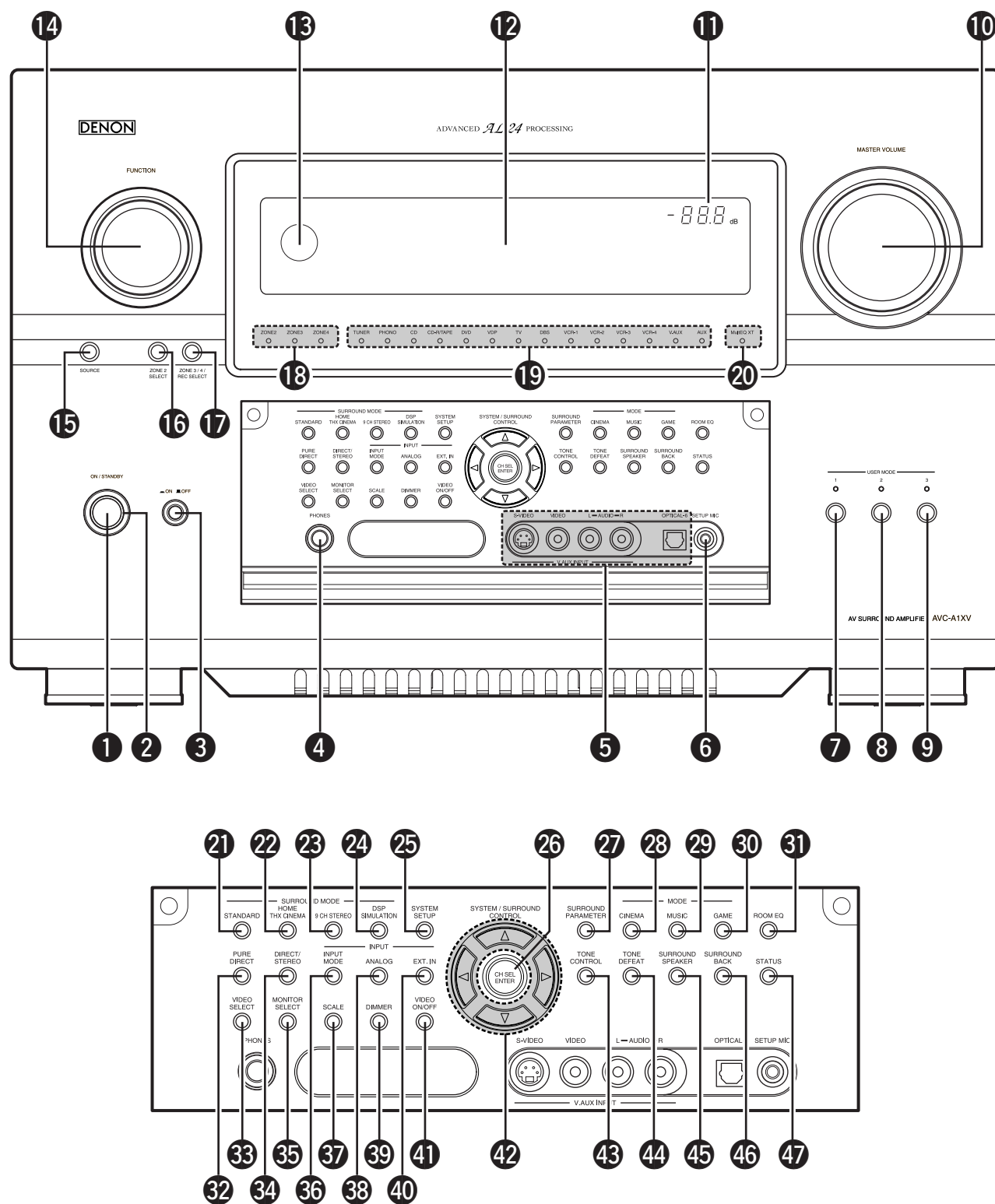
- By default, the speaker system setting is set to 9.1 channels.
- The output of each power amplifier can be assigned to any desired channel to best suit the application.
For details, refer to “Setting the Channel Setup” and “Setting the Power Amplifier Assignment”. (See pages 100 ~ 104)
- When making connections, also refer to the operating instructions of the other components.



6 PART NAMES AND FUNCTIONS

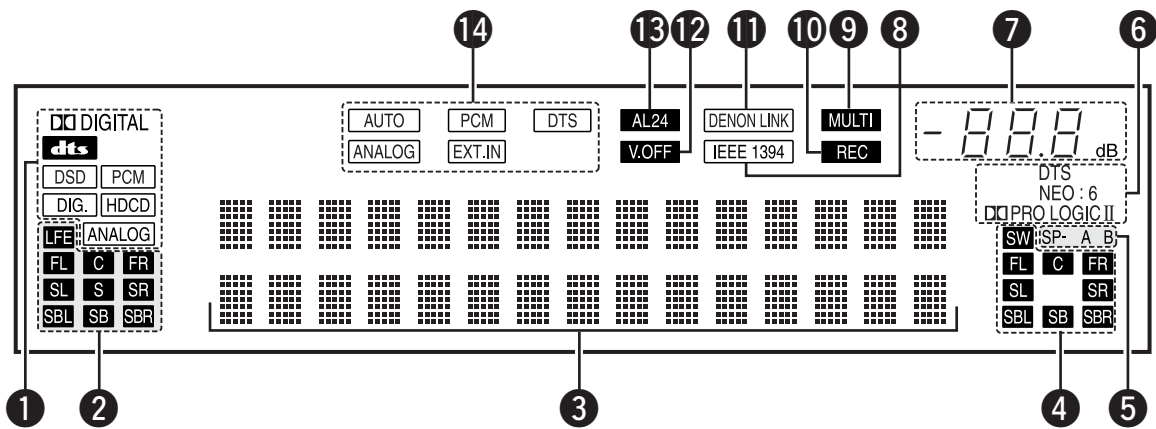
Front Panel

- For details on the functions of these parts, refer to the pages given in parentheses ().



❶	Power ON/STANDBY button	(127)	❷❹	SYSTEM SETUP button	(28)
❷	Power indicator	(127)	❷❶	CH SELECT/ENTER button	(28, 137)
❸	Power switch	(127, 179)	❷❷	SURROUND PARAMETER button	(140)
❹	Headphones jack (PHONES)	(133)	❷❸	CINEMA button	(146, 148)
❺	V.AUX INPUT jacks	(19)	❷❹	MUSIC button	(146, 148)
❻	SETUP MIC jack	(35)	❷❺	GAME button	(146)
❼	USER MODE 1 button	(150)	❷❻	ROOM EQ button	(133)
❽	USER MODE 2 button	(150)	❷❼	PURE DIRECT button	(132)
❾	USER MODE 3 button	(150)	❷❽	VIDEO SELECT button	(133)
❿	MASTER VOLUME control knob	(130)	❷❽	DIRECT/STEREO button	(132)
❾❶	Master volume indicator	(130)	❷❽	MONITOR SELECT button	(134)
❾❷	Display	(26)	❷❽	INPUT MODE button	(129)
❾❸	Remote control sensor	(116)	❷❽	SCALE button	(135)
❾❹	FUNCTION knob	(128)	❷❽	ANALOG button	(129)
❾❺	SOURCE button	(128)	❷❽	DIMMER button	(134)
❾❻	ZONE2 SELECT button	(171)	❷❽	EXT.IN button	(130, 131)
❾❼	ZONE3/4/REC SELECT button	(135, 171)	❷❽	VIDEO ON/OFF button	(132)
❾❽	Multi Zone power indicators	(172)	❷❽	CURSOR button	(28)
❾❽	Input source indicators	(129)	❷❽	TONE CONTROL button	(154)
❾❽	MultEQ XT indicator	(133)	❷❽	TONE DEFEAT button	(154)
❾❽	STANDARD button	(143)	❷❽	SURROUND SPEAKER button	(134)
❾❽	HOME THX CINEMA button	(140)	❷❽	SURROUND BACK button	(142)
❾❽	9CH STEREO button	(152)	❷❽	STATUS button	(134)
❾❽	DSP SIMULATION button	(152)			

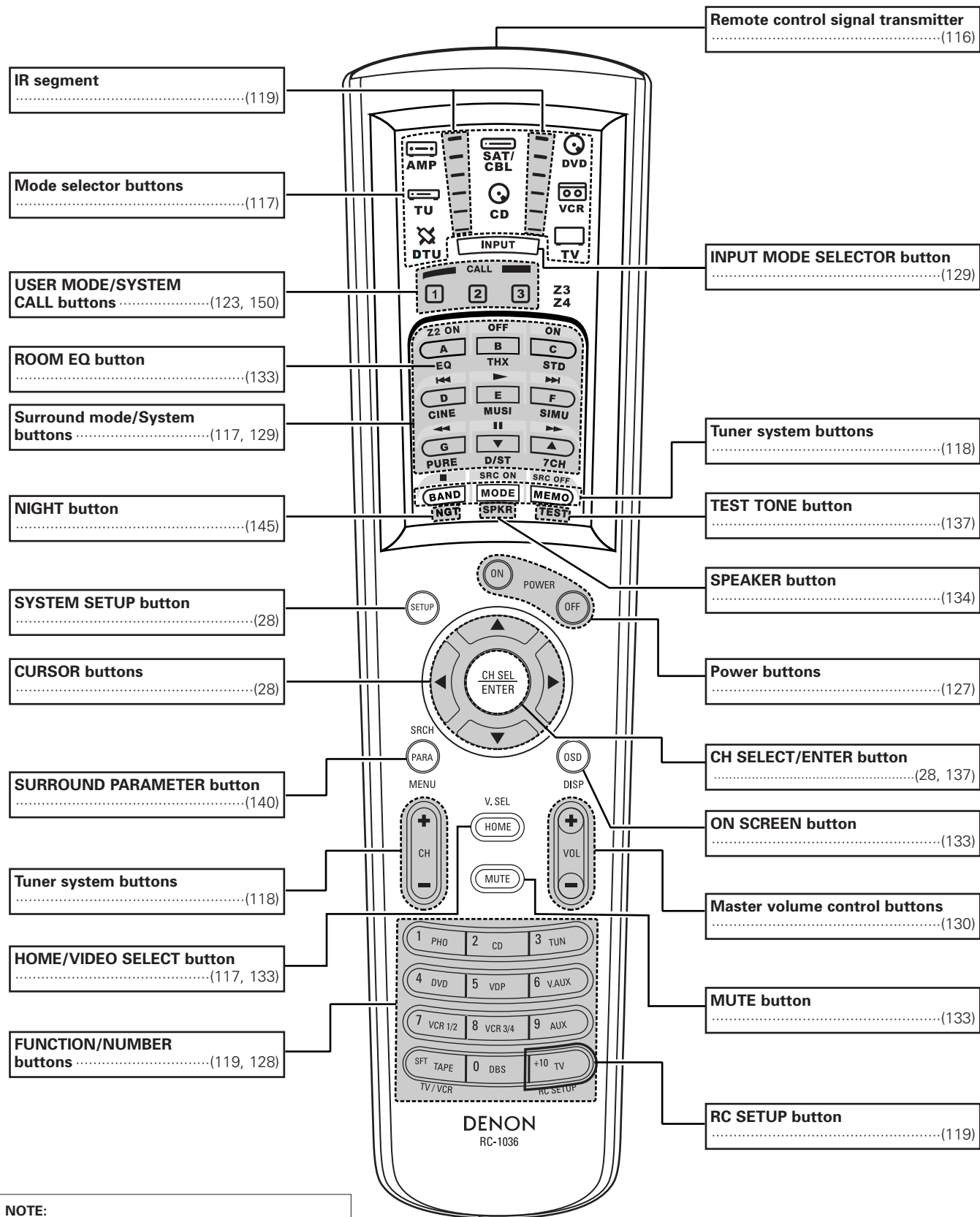
Display



- 1** INPUT SIGNAL indicator
The respective indicator will light corresponding to the input signal.
- 2** INPUT SIGNAL CHANNEL indicator
The channels included in the input source will light.
This lights when the digital signal is inputted.
- 3** Information display
This displays the surround mode, function name or setting value, etc.
- 4** OUTPUT SIGNAL CHANNEL indicator
The audio channels that can be output light.
- 5** SPEAKER indicator
This lights corresponding to the settings of the surround speakers of the various surround modes.
- 6** Decoder indicator
This lights when each decoder is operating.
- 7** MASTER VOLUME indicator
This displays the volume level.
The Setup item number is displayed in System Setup.
- 8** IEEE1394 indicator
This lights during playback in a IEEE1394 connection.
- 9** MULTI (ZONE) indicator
ZONE3 mode is selected in ZONE3/REC SELECT.
- 10** REC OUT SOURCE indicator.
REC OUT mode is selected in ZONE3/REC SELECT.
- 11** DENON LINK indicator
This lights during playback in a DENON LINK connection.
- 12** V.OFF indicator
This lights when the operation of the video circuit has been turned off.
- 13** AL24 indicator
The AL24 indicator lights when the PURE DIRECT, DIRECT, STEREO, MULTI CH PURE DIRECT , MULTI CH DIRECT, MULTI CH IN mode is selected in the PCM input signal.
- 14** INPUT MODE indicator
This lights corresponding to the setting of the INPUT mode.

Remote control unit

- For details on the functions of these parts, refer to the pages given in parentheses ().

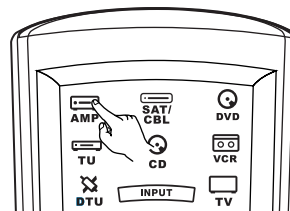


7 SYSTEM SETUP

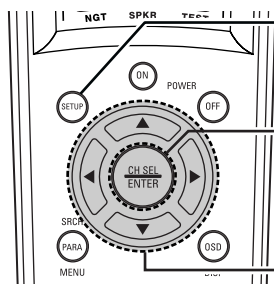
- Once all connections with other AV components have been completed as described in “CONNECTIONS” (see pages 10 ~ 23), make the various settings described below on the monitor screen using the AVC-A1XVA's on screen display function. These settings are required to set up the listening room's AV system centered around the AVC-A1XVA.

■ Use the following buttons to set up the system

- 1 Check that the remote control unit set to AMP mode.



2



SYSTEM SETUP button

Press this to display the system setup menu.

ENTER button

Press this to switch the display.
Also use this button to complete the setting.

CURSOR buttons

Use these to move the cursors the left, right, up and down on the screen.

NOTES:

- The AVC-A1XVA's on screen display function is designed for use with high resolution monitors, so it may be difficult to read small characters on TVs with small screens or low resolutions.
- The setup menu is not displayed when headphones are being used.

■ System setup items and default values (set upon shipment from the factory)

1. Auto Setup/Room EQ

Auto Setup / Room EQ			Default settings	Page
1	Auto Setup	This unit performs an analysis of the speaker system and measures the acoustic characteristics of your room to permit an appropriate automatic setting.	–	36 ~ 42
2	Room EQ Setup	Set the Room EQ setting with All or Assign for each surround mode.	All, Room EQ = OFF	43, 44
3	Direct Mode Setup	Set the ON/OFF setting of Room EQ, in the case of the surround mode is in Direct or Pure Direct.	OFF	44
4	Mic Input Select	Set this to switch the Mic Input jack for use for Mic or V.AUX L-channel input jack.	Mic	45

2. Speaker Setup

Speaker Setup				Default settings								Page		
1	Speaker Configuration	Input the combination of speakers in your system and their corresponding sizes (SMALL for regular speakers, LARGE for full-size, full-range) to automatically set the composition of the signals output from the speakers and the frequency response.		Front Sp.	Center Sp.	Subwoofer	Surround Sp. A / B	Surround Back Sp.	49, 50					
				Small	Small	Yes	Small	Small / 2spkrs						
2	Subwoofer Setup	This selects the subwoofer for playing deep bass signals.		LFE —THX—								50, 51		
3	Delay Time	This parameter is for optimizing the timing with which the audio signals are produced from the speakers and subwoofer according to the listening position.		Front L & R	Center	Subwoofer	Surround L & R (A)	Surround L & R (B)	Surround Back	51, 52				
				3.6 m (12 ft)	3.6 m (12 ft)	3.6 m (12 ft)	3.0 m (10 ft)	3.0 m (10 ft)	3.0 m (10 ft)					
4	Channel Level	This adjusts the volume of the signals output from the speakers and subwoofer for the different channels in order to obtain optimum effects.		Front L	Front R	Center	Surround L (A)	Surround R (A)	Surround L (B)	Surround R (B)	Surround Back L	Surround Back R	Subwoofer	53, 54
				0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	
5	Crossover Frequency	Set the frequency (Hz) below which the bass sound of the various speakers is to be output from the subwoofer.		FIXED —THX—								55, 56		
6	Surround Speaker Setup	Use this function when using multiple surround speaker combinations for more ideal surround sound. Once the combinations of surround speakers to be used for the different surround modes are preset, the surround speakers are selected automatically according to the surround mode.		Surround mode	THX/DOLBY/DTS CINEMA	THX/DOLBY/DTS MUSIC	THX/DOLBY GAME	WIDE SCREEN	9 CH STEREO	DSP SIMULATION	MULTI CH MODE	57		
				Surround speaker	A	A	A	A+B	A+B	A+B	A			
7	THX Audio Setup	Boundary Gain Compensation	When using a THX Ultra2 compatible subwoofer, set the subwoofer's frequency response.	THX Ultra2 Subwoofer = NO								58		
		Surround Back Speaker Position	When using two surround back speakers, set the distance of the two speakers.	The Distance Between SBL/SBR = 0 m to 0.3 m								59		

3. Audio Input Setup

Audio Input Setup				Default settings												Page		
1	Digital In Assign	This assigns the digital input jacks for the different input sources.	Input source	CD	DVD	VDP	TV	DBS	VCR-1	VCR-2	VCR-3	VCR-4	CDR/TAPE	VAUX	TUNER	60, 61		
			Digital Inputs	COAX 1	COAX 2	COAX 3	COAX 4	COAX 5	OPT 1	OPT 2	OPT 3	OPT 4	OPT 5	OPT 6	OFF			
2	EXT.IN Setup	Set the EXT.IN terminal playback method.	EXT.IN-1 Setup	Mode = DSP, Surr.B = NOT USED, S.Back = NOT USED, SW Level = +15 dB, Input ATT. = OFF												62, 63		
			EXT.IN-2 Setup	Mode = DSP, SW Level = +15 dB, Input ATT. = OFF														
3	Input Function Lev.	The playback level is corrected individually for the different input sources.		TUNER	PHONO	CD	CDR/TAPE	DVD	VDP	TV	DBS	VCR-1	VCR-2	VCR-3	VCR-4	VAUX	Aux	64
				0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB		
4	Function Rename	The names of the different input source can be changed as desired and displayed on the display.		TUNER	PHONO	CD	CDR/TAPE	DVD	VDP	TV	DBS	VCR-1	VCR-2	VCR-3	VCR-4	VAUX	Net Audio	65, 66
5	IEEE1394 Assign	The connected IEEE1394 device can be automatically identified to assign the input source.		—														
6	IEEE1394 Auto Func.	Set the function for associating playback of the connected IEEE1394 device on or off.		Auto Function = OFF														68

4. Video Setup

Video Setup			Default settings									Page
1	HDMI/DVI In Assign	The HDMI or DVI input terminals are assigned for the different input sources. Select HDMI or DVI for the monitor output terminal. Select the HDMI audio signal playback method.	DVD	VDP	TV	DBS	VCR-1	VCR-2	VCR-3	VCR-4	V.AUX	69, 70
			NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	
2	Component In Assign	This assigns the color difference (component) video input jacks for the different input sources.	DVD	VDP	TV	DBS	VCR-1	VCR-2	VCR-3	VCR-4	V.AUX	71
			1-RCA	2-RCA	3-RCA	4-RCA	5-RCA	6-BNC	NONE	NONE	NONE	
3	Video Convert Mode	This sets whether or not to use the video conversion function.			ON							72
4	HDMI/Component Out	Set the format of the signal up-converted to the HDMI monitor output or component output terminal.			Convert = ON, Scaler = HDMI, Aspect = Full, Resolution = 480p/576p Color Space = Y Cb Cr, RGB Mode = Normal							73, 74
5	Audio Delay	Set the audio delay timing to synchronize the sound and video.			0 ms							75
6	On Screen Display	This sets whether or not to display the on screen display that appears on the monitor screen when the controls on the remote control unit or main unit are operated.			Function/Mode = ON, Master Volume = ON, Mode = Mode 1							76

5. Advanced Playback

Advanced Playback			Default settings	Page
1	2ch Direct/Stereo	The speaker settings can be changed specifically for playing in the 2-channel direct or stereo mode.	Basic	78
2	Dolby Digital Setup	Turn the audio compression on or off when down-mixing Dolby Digital signals.	OFF	79
3	Auto Surround Mode	Set the Auto surround mode function.	Auto Surround Mode = ON	80
4	Manual EQ Setup	This parameter is for optimizing the Room EQ with which the audio signals are produced from the speakers.	All Channels and Frequency=0dB	81 ~ 83

6. Zone Setup

Zone Setup				Default settings						Page	
1	Speaker Configuration	The components of the signals output from the various speakers and the frequency response can be set automatically inside the set by inputting the existence/absence of combinations of speakers and their size (corresponding to their low frequency playback capability) for the speakers used in ZONE2 during surround playback in ZONE2.		Front Sp.	Center Sp.		Subwoofer		Surround Sp.		85
				Small	Small		Yes		Small		
2	Subwoofer Mode	This selects the subwoofer used in ZONE2 for playing the low base sound.		LFE						86	
3	Delay Time	This parameter is for optimizing the timing of the sound produced from the various speakers and subwoofer according to the listening position in ZONE2.		Front L & R	Center		Subwoofer		Surround L & R		87, 88
				3.6 m (12 ft)	3.6 m (12 ft)		3.6 m (12 ft)		3.0 m (10 ft)		
4	Channel Level	This adjusts the volume of the signal output from the various speakers and subwoofer used in ZONE2.		Front L	Front R	Center	Surround L	Surround R	Subwoofer		89, 90
				0.0 dB	0.0 dB	0.0 dB	0.0 dB	0.0 dB	0.0 dB		
5	Crossover Frequency	Set the frequency (in Hz) below which deep bass appearing in the main channels will be routed to the ZONE2 subwoofer.		80 Hz						91	
6	Video Setup	Video Convert Mode	This sets whether or not to use the video conversion function.	ON						92, 93	
		Audio Delay		Set the delay time the sound is synchronized with the picture which are outputted in ZONE2.	0 ms						93
7	Zone3/4 Tone/Ch.Lev.	Adjust the tone and channel level of the sound output from ZONE3 and ZONE4.		Zone3	Bass = 0 dB, Treble = 0 dB, HPF = OFF, L/R = 0 dB						94, 95
				Zone4	Bass = 0 dB, Treble = 0 dB, HPF = OFF, L/R = 0 dB						

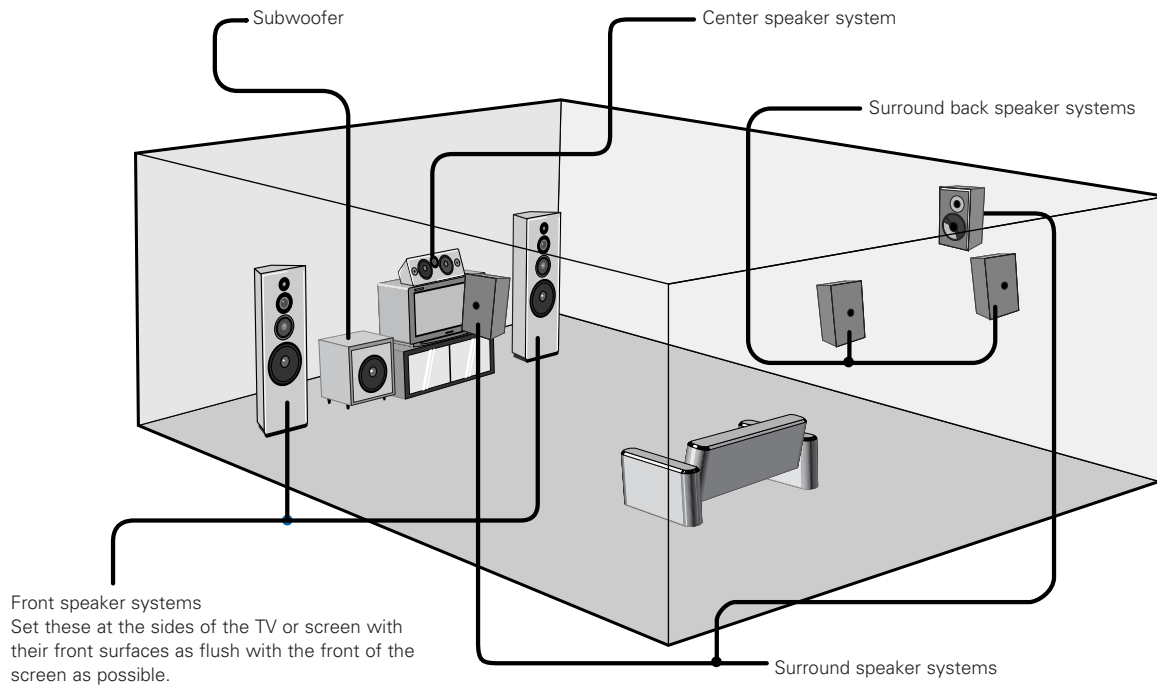
7. Option Setup

Option Setup					Default settings												Page		
1	Channel Setup	The number of channels that you wish to play back in each zone are assigned to each zone accordingly.			Main Zone	Zone2		Zone3		Zone4				96 ~ 99					
					9.1 CH		5.1 CH		Stereo		Stereo								
2	Power Amp Assign	Power Amplifiers can be assigned to the various channels according to your system's requirements.			Normal										100 ~ 104				
					L1	L2	L3	L4	L5	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5					
					FL	C	SLA	SLB	SBL	FR	–	SRA	SRB	SBR					
3	Volume Control	This sets the volume level of each zone output. Volume Limit: This sets the upper limit for the master volume.		Main	Vol.Limit = OFF, P. On Lev. = LAST, Mute Lev. = FULL										105				
		Power On Level: This sets the volume level upon switching on the power of each zone.		Zone2	Vol.Lev. = VAR, Vol.Limit = OFF, P. On Lev. = LAST, Mute Lev. = FULL														
		Mute Level: This sets the amount of attenuation of the audio output when each zone is muted.		Zone3	Vol.Lev. = VAR, Vol.Limit = OFF, P. On Lev. = LAST, Mute Lev. = FULL														
		Volume Level: This sets whether the output level of ZONE2 to 4 is fixed or variable.		Zone4	Vol.Lev. = VAR, Vol.Limit = OFF, P. On Lev. = LAST, Mute Lev. = FULL														
4	Trigger Out Setup	This sets the Trigger Out output for the different input sources. If "Zone=Main" is selected, settings can be made for the individual surround modes.		Trigger Out 1	ZONE = MAIN, All Surround Modes = ON														106, 107
					TUNER	PHONO	CD	CDR/TAPE	DVD	VDP	TV	DBS	VCR-1	VCR-2	VCR-3	VCR-4	VAUX	Aux	
					OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	
				Trigger Out 2	ZONE = 2														
					TUNER	PHONO	CD	CDR/TAPE	DVD	VDP	TV	DBS	VCR-1	VCR-2	VCR-3	VCR-4	VAUX	Aux	
					ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	
				Trigger Out 3	ZONE = 3														
					TUNER	PHONO	CD	CDR/TAPE	DVD	VDP	TV	DBS	VCR-1	VCR-2	VCR-3	VCR-4	VAUX		
					ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	
				Trigger Out 4	ZONE = 4														
					TUNER	PHONO	CD	CDR/TAPE	DVD	VDP	TV	DBS	VCR-1	VCR-2	VCR-3	VCR-4	VAUX		
					ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	
5	AC Outlet Assign	This sets the AC outlet to on or off for the different input sources.			ZONE = MAIN														108
					TUNER	PHONO	CD	CDR/TAPE	DVD	VDP	TV	DBS	VCR-1	VCR-2	VCR-3	VCR-4	VAUX	Aux	
					ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	
6	Setup Memory/Lock	User Memory	This stores the current user settings in the memory.		–										109, 110				
		Setup Lock	This sets whether or not to lock the system setup settings so that they cannot be changed.		Setup Lock = OFF										110, 111				
7	Network Setup	IP Address	The IP address-related settings are made here.		ON										111, 112				
		Proxy	The proxy-related settings can be changed here.		OFF										113				
		Network Option	Power saving	Set whether or not to accept control from the network in the standby mode.		ON										114			
			PC Language	Select the language of the computer's OS.		eng										114			

■ Speaker system layout

Basic system layout (For a THX Ultra2 system)

- The following is an example of the basic layout for a system consisting of eight speaker systems and a television monitor:



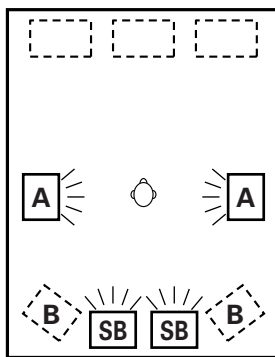
Two surround back speakers are required to use the THX Ultra2 Cinema, THX Music mode and THX Games mode.

Set the surround back speakers so that the distance to the listening position is the same for both the left and right speakers. It is also recommended that the deviations of the distance from the listening position to L and R channel speakers (front left (FL) and front right (FR), surround left (SL) and surround right (SR), surround back left (SBL) and surround back right (SBR)) is less than 60 cm (2 ft).

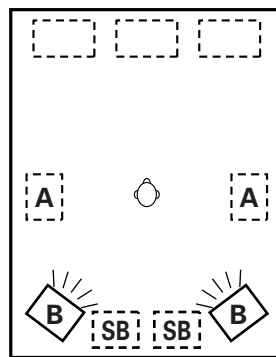
With the AVC-A1XVA it is also possible to use the surround speaker selector function to choose the best layout for a variety of sources and surround modes.

• Surround speaker selector function

This function makes it possible to achieve the optimum sound fields for different sources by switching between two systems of surround speakers (A and B). The settings of the different speakers (A only, B only or A+B) are stored in the memory for the different surround modes, so they are set automatically when the surround mode is selected.



Using A only
(Multi surround speaker system)

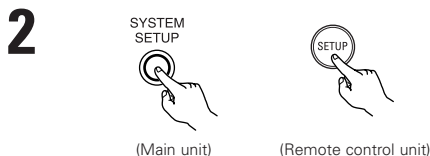


Using B only
(Single surround speaker system)

(SB: Surround Back Speakers)

Before setting up the system

- 1 Check that all the connections are correct, then turn on the main unit's power.
Setup will not be possible when the unit is set to Pure Direct ON, the Video Off mode, or when the headphones are plugged in. Therefore, please cancel the mode or reverse the condition.



Display the System Setup Menu.

```

/
*System Setup
Auto Set/RoomEQ
  
```

System Setup Menu

1. Auto Setup/Room EQ
2. Speaker Setup
3. Audio Input Setup
4. Video Setup
5. Advanced Playback
6. Zone Setup
7. Option Setup
- Exit

NOTES:

- The System Setup menu composition is of a layered design that includes the related items below the large table title as contained in the tables of pages 28 ~ 31.
- Wherever your position in System Setup, one more press of the System Setup button permits a move to one level higher.

Auto Setup / Room EQ

The Auto Setup and Room EQ function of this unit performs an analysis of the speaker system and measures the acoustic characteristics of your room to permit an appropriate automatic setting.

The AVC-A1XVA's Audyssey MultEQ XT function has the feature that it provides the optimum listening environment at all listening positions in the home theater, where there are often multiple listeners viewing programs together. To achieve this, it is first necessary to use a microphone to measure test tones generated from the different speakers at the various listening positions. All this measured data is analyzed with a unique method to comprehensively improve acoustic characteristics in the listening area. For optimum effectiveness, measurements should be performed **at six or more points**. Move the microphone successively within the listening area surrounded by the speakers as shown on the diagram below to measure the test tones. When listening to music or viewing movies with the whole family, move the microphone successively to the different positions in which the members of the family sit ("■" on the diagram indicates the points of installation) and measure repeatedly (Example ①). Even if the number of people using the home theater is small, taking multiple measurements at or near the listening positions makes it possible to correct the sound more effectively (Example ②).

The AVC-A1XVA's Room EQ function offers three correction curves: "Audyssey", "Front" and "Flat". These can be selected after performing the auto setup procedure. Details of the different correction curves are described below.

Audyssey : This adjusts the frequency response of all speakers to correct the effects of room acoustics.

Front : This adjusts the characteristics of each speaker to the characteristics of the front speakers.

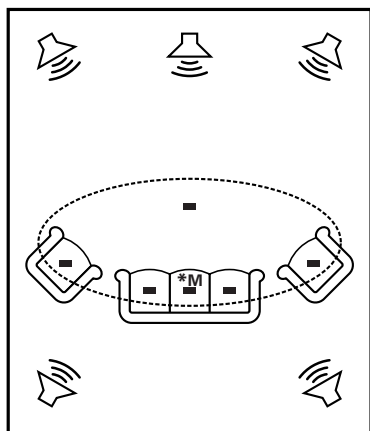
Flat : This the frequency response of all speakers flat.

This is suitable for multi-channel music reproduction, from discrete music sources such as Dolby Digital 5.1, DTS, DVD-Audio and Super Audio CD.

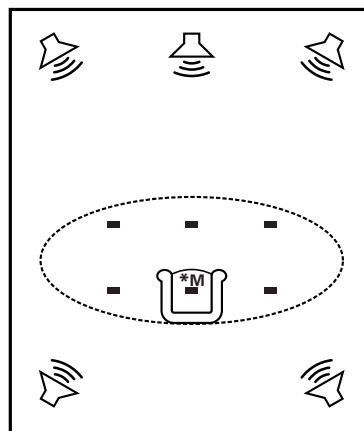
About the main listening position (*M)

The main listening position is the point where a listener sits most often or the listening position when only one person is listening. Measurements on the AVC-A1XVA start from this point. Correction for the speaker distance ("Delay Time") is set based on this point.

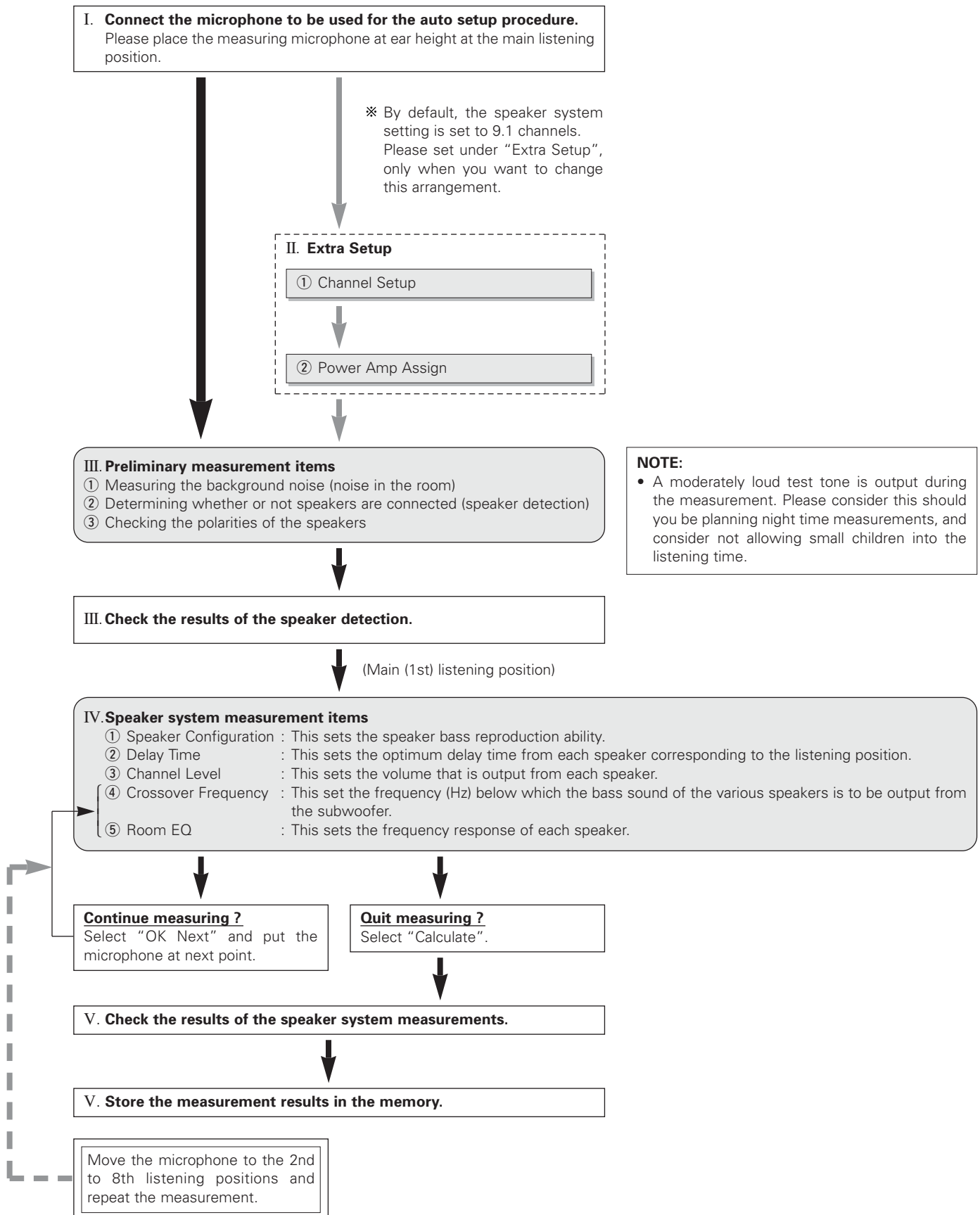
Example ①:



Example ②:



■ Measurement flow

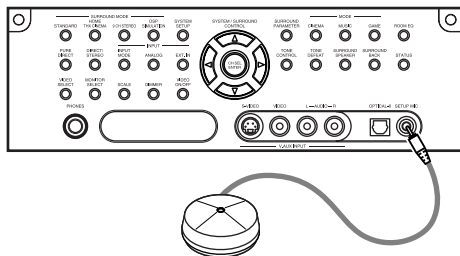


Before performing the Auto Setup procedure

- 1 Check again that the speakers are securely connected to the AVC-A1XVA.
- 2 Set the volume to halfway and set the crossover frequency to the maximum or Low pass filter off if your subwoofer can adjust the output volume and the crossover frequency. Some subwoofers have a standby mode. Be sure to turn this function off before performing the Auto Setup procedure.
- 3 The auto setup procedure uses the OSD (on screen display) function, so connect the AVC-A1XVA to a TV, projector, or other monitor.

I. Connecting the microphone for Auto Setup

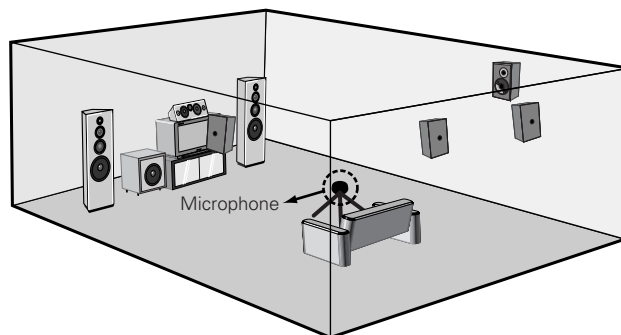
- 1 Connect the microphone for Auto Setup to the Setup Mic jack on the front panel of the unit.



- 2 Mount the auto setup microphone onto a camera tripod, etc., and place it at ear height at the main listening position (*) in the listening room with the sound receptor facing the ceiling. When placing the microphone, adjust the height so that the microphone's sound receptor is at the height of the ears of the listener. Be sure that at the beginning, the measurement is started with the microphone set up at the main listening position.

NOTE:

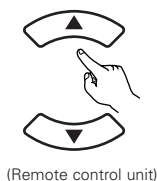
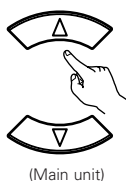
- Do not disconnect the microphone until the settings are completed.



1

Setting the Auto Setup / Room EQ

1



Select "Auto Setup / Room EQ" at the System Setup Menu.

```
*System Setup
Auto Set/RoomeQ
```

System Setup Menu

- 1. Auto Setup/Room EQ
- 2. Speaker Setup
- 3. Audio Input Setup
- 4. Video Setup
- 5. Advanced Playback
- 6. Zone Setup
- 7. Option Setup
- Exit

2



Display the Auto Setup / Room EQ menu screen.

```
*AutoSet/RoomeQ
Auto Setup
```

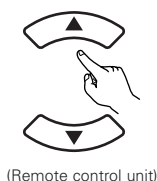
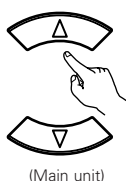
1. Auto Setup/Room EQ

- 1. Auto Setup
- 2. Room EQ Setup
- 3. Direct Mode Setup
- 4. Mic Input Select

Exit

1-1. Setting the Auto Setup

1



Select "Auto Setup" at the Auto Setup / Room EQ menu.

```
*AutoSet/RoomeQ
Auto Setup
```

1. Auto Setup/Room EQ

- 1. Auto Setup
- 2. Room EQ Setup
- 3. Direct Mode Setup
- 4. Mic Input Select

Exit

2



Display the Auto Setup screen.

```
*Auto Setup
Start
```

1-1. Auto Setup

Please place microphone at ear height at main listening position.

Extra Setup
Channel: 9.1CH
Start
Cancel

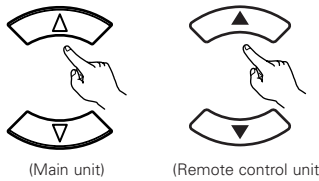
※ The message "Connect Microphone" is displayed if no microphone is connected. If so, connect the auto setup microphone.

II. Extra Setup

- By default, the speaker system setting is set to 9.1 channels.

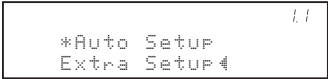
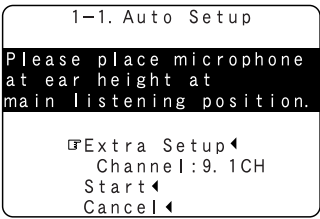
Perform this setting if you want to change the channel setup to match the speaker system you are using or to conduct the power amplifier assignment procedure. If you do not want to perform this "Extra Setup" procedure, proceed to the "Preliminary measurements" on page 38.

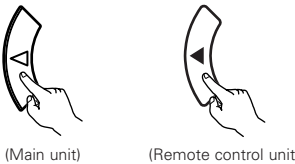
- 1**



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

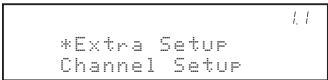
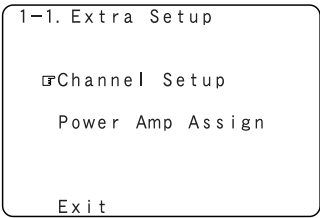
Select "Extra Setup".

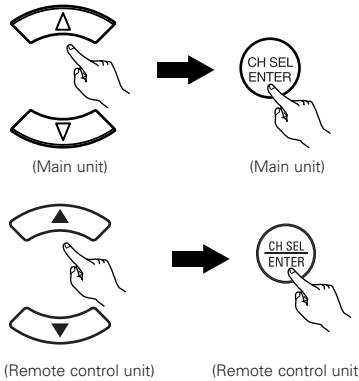


- 2**



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Press the cursor left button.
Switch to the Extra Setup screen.



- 3**



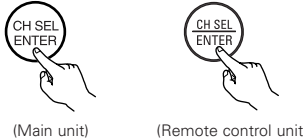
(Main unit) (Main unit)

(Remote control unit) (Remote control unit)

Choose the setting you want to change then press the ENTER button to switch to the setting screen.

 - For instructions on making the "Channel Setup" settings, see pages 96 ~ 99.
 - For instructions on making the "Power Amp Assign" settings, see pages 100 ~ 104.

※ The speakers measured with this Auto Setup procedure are based on the setting of these "Channel Setup" and "Power Amp Assign" functions.
- 4**



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

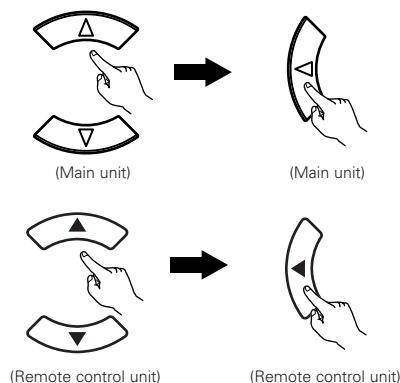
Once the settings are completed, press the ENTER button at the each setting screen.
The Extra Setup menu re-appears.
- 5**

Select "Exit" and press the ENTER button to return to the Auto Setup screen.

III. Preliminary measurements

- This procedure is used to automatically determine the background noise, whether or not speakers are connected, and the polarities of the connected speakers.

1



Select the "Start" and press the cursor left button.
Start the preliminary measurements.

```
*Auto Setup
Start
```

```
1-1. Auto Setup
Please place microphone
at ear height at
main listening position.

Extra Setup
Channel: 9. 1CH
Start
Cancel
```



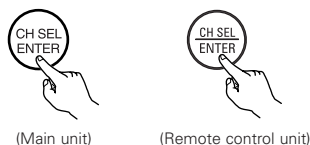
```
1-1. Auto Setup
Measuring
Speaker Detect

Cancel
```

Cautions when making the measurements:

- It is not possible to measure properly if there are any obstacles between the speakers and microphone. Check that there are no obstacles.
- Please do not stand between or near the speakers and the microphone during the measurements.
- To avoid affecting the measurements, turn off the air-conditioner or any other device that makes noise and take the measurements with the room as quiet as possible.
- Measurement is canceled when MASTER VOLUME is operated while the Auto Setup is performed.

2



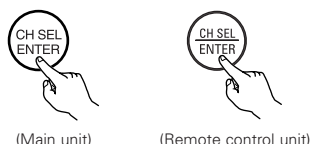
The screen shown at the right appears once the preliminary measurements are completed.
Press the ENTER button to switch the Speaker Detect Check screen.

```
Sp Detect Check
```

```
1-1. Auto Setup
Please place microphone
at ear height at
main listening position.
Speaker Detect Check

OK Start
Retry
Cancel
```

3



Check the results of the speaker detection.
Press the ENTER button to switch to the second screen.
If the check ends, press the ENTER button again.

```
Speaker Detect Check

Front Sp.
Yes No
Center Sp.
Yes No
Subwoofer
Yes No
```

[First screen]

```
Speaker Detect Check

Surround
Sp. A
Yes No
Sp. B
Yes No
Sp. Back
Yes No
2spkrs 1spkr
```

[Second screen]

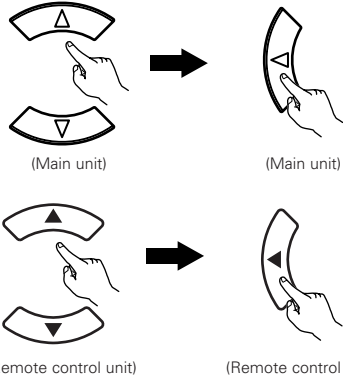
NOTE:

- Subsequent measurements will be made based on this data, so be sure to check the results of these measurements. If the results are not as expected or if an error message is displayed, select "Retry" and perform the measurements again. (For details on the error messages, see page 42.) If the results of remeasurement are still not as expected or if an error message is displayed, turn off the power switch and check the speaker connections. Then start the measurements again from the beginning.

IV. Speaker system measurement

- With these measurements, the "Speaker Configuration", "Delay Time", "Channel Level", "Crossover Frequency" and "Room EQ" are analyzed automatically. The main listening position is measured first, so leave the microphone where it is.

1



(Main unit) (Main unit)

(Remote control unit) (Remote control unit)

Select the "OK Start" and press the cursor left button.
Measurements for the first point start.

Main Position
OK Start

1-1. Auto Setup
Please place microphone
at ear height at
main listening position.
Speaker Detect Check
OK Start
Retry
Cancel

↓

1-1. Auto Setup
Measuring
Main Position
Cancel

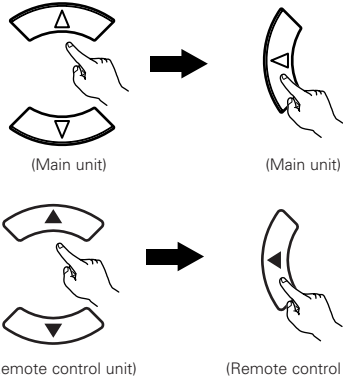
NOTE:

- With these measurements, test tones are not output from channels to which speakers have been judged not to be connected in the preliminary measurements. Do not change the connection of speakers or the subwoofer's volume after performing the preparation measurements and before performing these measurements.

2

① The screen shown at the right appears once the measurements for the main listening position are completed.
Next the measurements for the second point will be taken. Place the microphone at the second listening position. For instructions on the position in which the microphone should be placed, see page 36. (When making the measurements, be sure to position the microphone at the approximate ear height of the seated listener(s).)

② Select the "OK Next" and press the cursor left button.
Measurements for the second point start.



(Main unit) (Main unit)

(Remote control unit) (Remote control unit)

2nd Position
OK Next

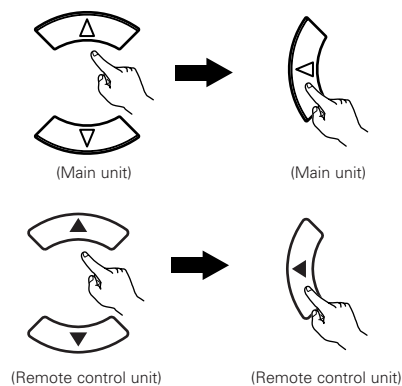
1-1. Auto Setup
Please place microphone
at ear height at
2nd listening position.
Calculate
OK Next
Retry
Cancel

↓

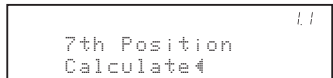
1-1. Auto Setup
Measuring
2nd Position
Cancel

- 3** Perform step 2 repeatedly.
The more measurement points, the better the resulting room correction effect. We recommend a minimum of 6 measurement points – 8 measurement points provides the best room correction effect.

4

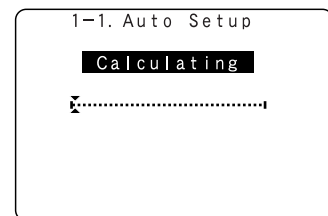
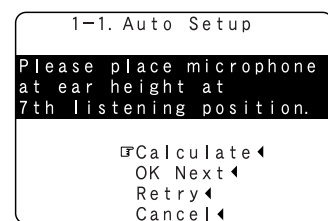


After measuring at the number of points according to your listening environment, select "Calculate" and press the cursor left button. The speaker system is analyzed.



※ The amount of time required for the analysis depends on the number of speakers and the number of measuring points. The greater the number of speakers and measuring points, the longer the time required. For example, for 9.1-channel systems and 6 measuring points, the calculations require approximately 5 minutes.

※ Measurements can be ended when there are 5 or more measurement locations; however, to obtain better results, measurements at **6 or more locations** is recommended.



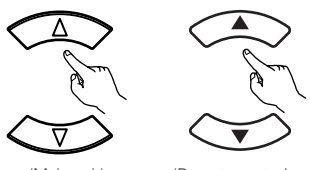
5

Once the calculations are completed, a screen for confirming the results of the measurements appears.

V. Check of the measurement result

- The results of the measured items can be checked.
For instructions on checking the equalizer parameters, see pages 46 ~ 48.

1



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select the items.
The measurement results of each item can be checked here.

!!

*Auto Setup
Sp Config. Check

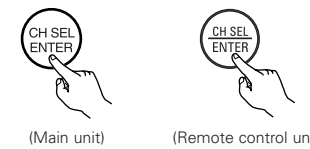
1-1. Auto Setup

Speaker Config. Check
Delay Time Check
Channel Level Check
Crossover Freq. Check

Store ◀

Cancel ◀

2



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Press the ENTER button and display the verification screen.
Press the ENTER button to switch to the second screen.

NOTE:

- When measurements have been made using the measurement microphone, speakers with a built-in filter such as subwoofers might be set with a value that differs from the physical distance because of the internal electrical delay.

[Speaker Config. Check]

Speaker Config. Check

Front Sp. Large Small

Center Sp. Small None

Subwoofer Yes No

[Delay Time Check]

Delay Time Check

FL 3.60m
FR 3.60m
C 3.60m
SW 3.60m

[Channel Level Check]

Channel Level Check

FL 0.0dB
FR 0.0dB
Center 0.0dB
Subwoofer 0.0dB

[Crossover Freq. Check]

Crossover Freq. Check

Front Small 80Hz
Center Small 80Hz
Surround A Small 80Hz
Surround B Small 80Hz
S. Back Small 80Hz

Speaker Config. Check

Surround Sp. A Small None

Sp. B Small None

Sp. Back Small None

2spkr 1spkr

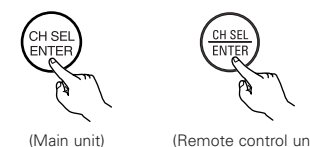
Delay Time Check

SL A 3.00m
SR A 3.00m
SL B 3.00m
SR B 3.00m
SBL 3.00m
SBR 3.00m

Channel Level Check

SL A 0.0dB
SR A 0.0dB
SL B 0.0dB
SR B 0.0dB
SBL 0.0dB
SBR 0.0dB

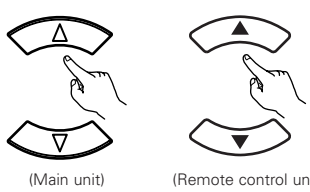
3



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

If the check ends, press the ENTER button again.

4



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select whether or not to save the data you have checked.
Select the following items based on the measurement results.

Store : Set with the checked measurement value.
Cancel : If you do not want to set the contents you have checked, cancel the auto setup settings.

!!

*Auto Setup
Store ◀

1-1. Auto Setup

Speaker Config. Check
Delay Time Check
Channel Level Check
Crossover Freq. Check

Store ◀

Cancel ◀

!!

*Auto Setup
Store ◀



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

When "Store" is selected, all parameters are stored up.
After the data is stored, the "Auto Setup / Room EQ" menu screen appears automatically.

NOTE:

- Do not turn off the power while the data is being stored. If the power is turned off while the data is being stored, the Room EQ parameters stored in the memory will be cleared, and it will not be possible to select the "Audyssey", "Front" or "Flat" equalizer settings.

1-1. Auto Setup

Parameter Storing

- Sometimes due to the electrical complexities of subwoofers and the interaction with the room, you may notice different results from physical measurement. If this happens, THX recommends setting the level and the distance of the subwoofer manually.
- Sometimes due to interaction with the room, you may notice irregular results when setting the level and/or distance of the main speakers. If this happens, THX recommends setting them manually.
- Please note that any THX main speakers should be set to Small (80 Hz). If you set up your speakers using Auto Setup, please make sure manually that any THX speakers are set to Small with 80 Hz crossover.

About the error message

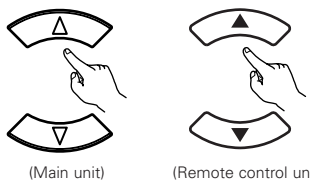
- These error messages will be displayed when performing the measurements of Auto Setup and the automatic measurements can not be completed because of the speaker arrangement, measurement environment, or other factors. Please check the following matters, reset the pertinent items, and measure again. Be sure to turn off the AVC-A1XVA's power before checking the speaker connections.

Screen example	Cause	Measures
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The speakers required for producing suitable reproduction have not been detected. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The front L and front R speakers were not properly detected. Only one channel of the surround (A) and surround (B) speakers was detected. Sound was output from the R channel when only one surround back speaker was connected. The surround back or the surround (B) speaker was detected, but the surround (A) speaker was not detected. If multiple errors occur, use the cursor left and right buttons to check the contents. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check that the pertinent speakers are properly connected.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The speaker polarity is connected in reverse. If multiple errors occur, use the cursor left and right buttons to check the contents. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the polarity of the pertinent speakers. For some speakers, the screen below may be displayed even though the speakers are properly connected. If so, select "Skip"◀.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> There is too much ambient noise in the room and the measurements cannot be made accurately. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Either turn off the power of the device that generated the noise during the measurements or move the device away. Try again at a time when it is quieter.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The measurement microphone is not connected, or all of speakers have not been detected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connect the measurement microphone to the microphone connector. Check the speaker connection.

1-2. Setting the Room EQ Setup

- Select the setting of an Equalizer that has been set with Auto Setup or Manual EQ.

1



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Room EQ Setup" at the Auto Setup / Room EQ menu.

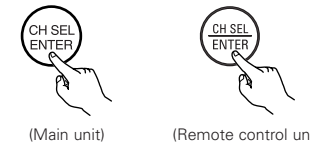
1.2
 *AutoSet/RoomEQ
 Room EQ Setup

1. Auto Setup/Room EQ

1. Auto Setup
 2. Room EQ Setup
 3. Direct Mode Setup
 4. Mic Input Select
 5. Parameter Check

Exit

2



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Room EQ Setup screen.

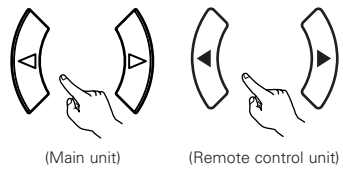
1.2
 *Room EQ Setup
 SurMode: ALL ▶

1-2. Room EQ Setup

Relation To
The Surround Mode

ALL ◀ ▶ Assign

3

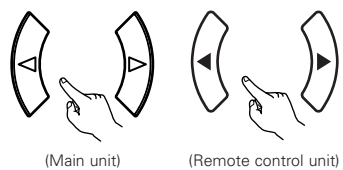


(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select ALL or Assign.

ALL : Sets the Equalizer for all surround modes.
Assign : Sets the Equalizer individually for each surround mode.

4



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

① When the "ALL" is selected and press the ENTER button, display the Select the EQ Curve screen. Select the Equalizer setting.

OFF : The Equalizer is not used.
Audyssey : Adjusts the frequency response of all speakers to correct the effects of room acoustics.
Front : Adjusts the frequency response of the surround speakers to match the characteristics of the front channel speakers.
Flat : Adjusts the frequency response of all speakers to the flattest response. This mode is suitable for multi-channel music surround sound sources.
Manual : Selects the setting value that was set in the Manual EQ setup.
 ※ For details of the "5-4. Manual EQ Setup", see pages 81 ~ 83.

② If "Assign" is selected, select the desired equalizer setting using the ROOM EQ buttons on the Main unit or Remote control unit. Equalizer settings for the individual surround modes can be stored in the memory.

※ Whenever the ROOM EQ button on Main unit or Remote control unit is pressed, the display switches as shown below.

1-2. Room EQ Setup
 Select The EQ Curve
 Room EQ ◀ Audyssey ▶

1.2
 *Room EQ Setup
 EQ : ◀ Audyssey ▶

OFF → Audyssey → Front
 ← Manual ← Flat ←

NOTES:

- The Equalizer setting of "Audyssey", "Flat" and "Front" can be selected after performing the Auto Setup.
- When the speaker set as "None" with the Auto Setup is changed to on manually, the equalizer of "Audyssey", "Front" and "Flat" cannot be used.
- The Equalizer setting can be selected directly by ROOM EQ button on the Main unit or Remote control unit.
- When headphones are connected, the Room EQ cannot be used.

5



(Main unit)



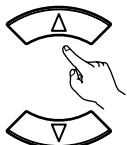
(Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.
The Auto Setup / Room EQ menu reappears.

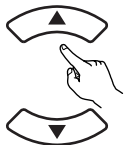
1-3. Setting the Direct Mode

- Perform the ON/OFF setting of Room EQ when the surround mode is Direct or Pure Direct.

1



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select "Direct Mode Setup" at the Auto Setup / Room EQ menu.

13
*AutoSet/RoomEQ
Direct Mode

1. Auto Setup/Room EQ

1. Auto Setup
2. Room EQ Setup
3. Direct Mode Setup
4. Mic Input Select
5. Parameter Check

Exit

2



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Display the Direct Mode Setup screen.

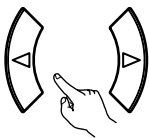
13
*Direct Mode
Room EQ: 1 OFF

1-3. Direct Mode Setup

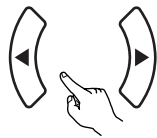
DIRECT/PURE DIRECT

Room EQ ☐ ON ☒ OFF

3



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select ON or OFF.

4



(Main unit)



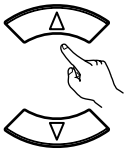
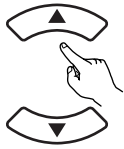
(Remote control unit)

Enter the setting .
The Auto Setup / Room EQ menu reappears.

1-4. Setting the MIC Input Select

- Sets whether the setup microphone is connected to the PIN JACK (V.AUX L channel) connector or the MINI JACK (SETUP MIC) connector.
 - Use this setting when using a microphone other than the included one for measurements when performing the auto setup procedure.
 - The microphone included with the AVC-A1XVA is a measurement microphone designed specifically for use during the auto setup procedure. Select "Mic" and connect the included microphone to the "SETUP MIC" mini-jack. When conducting the auto setup procedure using a separate high performance condenser microphone for measurements, select "V.AUX L" and connect the microphone to the "V.AUX Lch" pin jack.
- ※ Please ask the DENON Authorized Service Center about the usable microphone other than the included one.

1

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Mic Input Select" at the Auto Setup / Room EQ menu.

*AutoSet/RoomEQ 14

Mic In Select

1. Auto Setup/Room EQ

1. Auto Setup

2. Room EQ Setup



3. Direct Mode Setup

4. Mic Input Select

5. Parameter Check

Exit

2

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Mic Input Select screen.

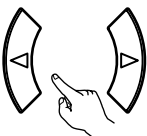
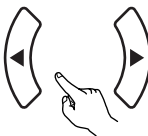
*Mic In Select 14

Mic ▶

1-4. Mic Input Select

Mic ◀ : ▶ V.Aux L



3

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select the "Mic" or "V.Aux L".

4


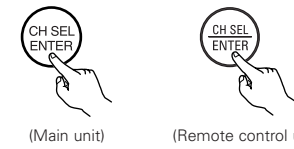

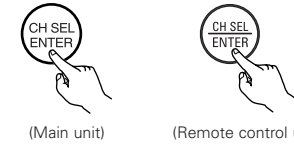
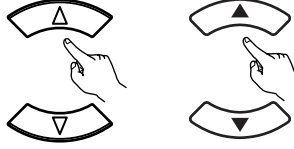

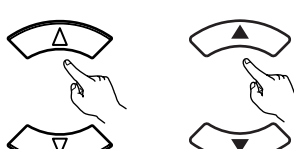
(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.

The Auto Setup / Room EQ menu reappears.

1-5. Check the Parameter

- The results of the measured items can be checked.
- The EQ parameters that were set in Auto Setup can be checked.
- This item is automatically displayed, after the measurement result of the "Auto Setup / Room EQ" is decided.

1  <p>(Main unit) (Remote control unit)</p>	<p>Select "Parameter Check" at the Auto Setup / Room EQ menu.</p> <div> *AutoSet/RoomEQ Parameter Check </div>	<div>1. Auto Setup/Room EQ</div> <div> 1. Auto Setup 2. Room EQ Setup 3. Direct Mode Setup 4. Mic Input Select 5. Parameter Check </div> <div>Exit</div>
2  <p>(Main unit) (Remote control unit)</p>	<p>Display the Parameter Check screen.</p> <div> *ParameterCheck SP Config.Check </div>	<div>1-5. Parameter Check</div> <div> Speaker Config. Check Delay Time Check Channel Level Check Crossover Freq. Check EQ Parameter Check </div> <div> Restore <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes Exit </div>
3  <p>(Main unit) (Remote control unit)</p>	<p>Select the items.</p>	
4  <p>(Main unit) (Remote control unit)</p>	<p>Press the ENTER button and display the verification screen. For instructions on checking the results of each item, see pages 41, 42.</p>	
5  <p>(Main unit) (Remote control unit)</p>	<p>EQ parameters can be checked here. Select "EQ Parameter Check" at the Parameter Check screen.</p> <div> *ParameterCheck EQ Check </div>	<div>1-5. Parameter Check</div> <div> Speaker Config. Check Delay Time Check Channel Level Check Crossover Freq. Check EQ Parameter Check </div> <div> Restore <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes Exit </div>
6  <p>(Main unit) (Remote control unit)</p>	<p>Display the EQ Parameter Check screen.</p> <div> *EQ Check Audyssey </div>	<div>1-5. EQ Parameter Check</div> <div> Audyssey Front Flat </div> <div>Exit</div>
7  <p>(Main unit) (Remote control unit)</p>	<p>Select the Equalizer curve.</p>	

8



(Main unit)

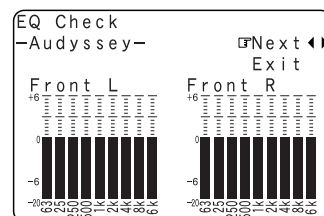


(Remote control unit)

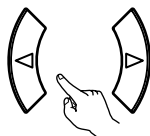
Display the parameter screen.

The display is only an approximate picture of the response and that correction is happening at all frequencies.

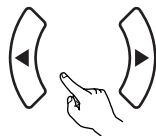
EQ Chk Audyssey
FL/FR :Next▶



9



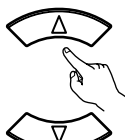
(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select the speaker channel.

10



(Main unit)

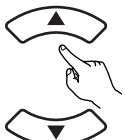
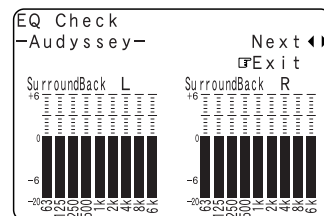


(Main unit)

If the check ends, select "Exit" and press the ENTER button.

The EQ Parameter Check screen reappears.

EQ Chk Audyssey
Exit

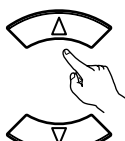


(Remote control unit)



(Remote control unit)

11



(Main unit)



(Main unit)

Select "Exit" and press the ENTER button at the EQ Parameter Check screen.

The Parameter Check screen reappears.

*EQ Check
Exit

1-5. EQ Parameter Check

Audyssey
Front
Flat

Exit



(Remote control unit)



(Remote control unit)

12



(Main unit)



(Main unit)

The results of the "Auto Setup" procedure can be reset even if the settings have been changed after performing the "Auto Setup" procedure. Select "Restore Yes ◀" then press the cursor left button.

*ParameterCheck
Restore◀

1-5. Parameter Check

Speaker Config. Check
Delay Time Check
Channel Level Check
Crossover Freq. Check
EQ Parameter Check

Restore Yes◀
Exit

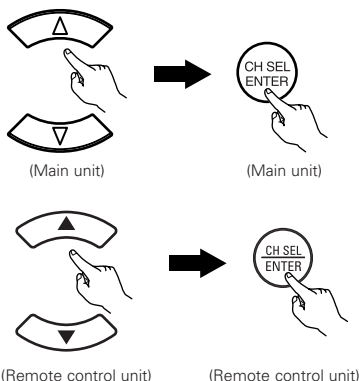


(Remote control unit)



(Remote control unit)

13



Select "Exit" and press the ENTER button at the Parameter Check screen.
The Auto Setup / Room EQ menu reappears.

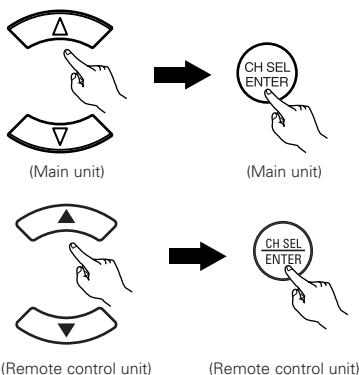
```
*ParameterCheck 15
Exit
```

1-5. Parameter Check

Speaker Config. Check
Delay Time Check
Channel Level Check
Crossover Freq. Check
EQ Parameter Check

Restore ☒ Yes
☐ Exit

14



Select "Exit" and press the ENTER button at the Auto Setup / Room EQ menu screen.
The System Setup Menu reappears.

```
*AutoSet/RoomEQ 10
Exit
```

1. Auto Setup/Room EQ

1. Auto Setup
2. Room EQ Setup
3. Direct Mode Setup
4. Mic Input Select
5. Parameter Check

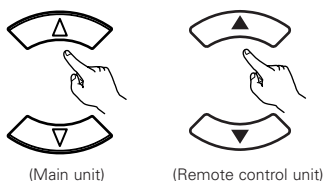
☒ Exit

2

Setting the Speaker Setup

- If the "Auto Setup" procedure has already been performed, there is no need to make this setting.
- Perform this setting if you wish to make the settings for your speaker systems manually.

1



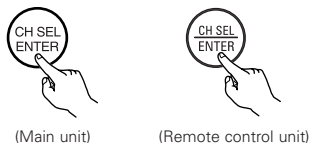
Select "Speaker Setup" at the System Setup Menu.

```
*System Setup 2
Speaker Setup
```

System Setup Menu

1. Auto Setup/Room EQ
☒ 2. Speaker Setup
3. Audio Input Setup
4. Video Setup
5. Advanced Playback
6. Zone Setup
7. Option Setup
Exit

2



Display the Speaker Setup menu screen.

```
*Speaker Setup 2.1
Speaker Config.
```

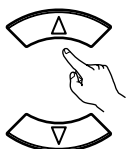

2. Speaker Setup

☒ 1. Speaker Config.
2. Subwoofer Setup
3. Delay Time
4. Channel Level
5. Crossover Frequency
6. Surround Sp Setup
7. THX Audio Setup
Exit

2-1. Setting the type of speakers

- The composition of the signals output to each channels and the frequency response are adjusted automatically according to the combination of speakers actually being used.

1

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Speaker Config." at the Speaker Setup menu.



2.1

*Speaker Setup
Speaker Config.

2. Speaker Setup

1. Speaker Config.
2. Subwoofer Setup
3. Delay Time
4. Channel Level
5. Crossover Frequency
6. Surround Sp Setup
7. THX Audio Setup
Exit

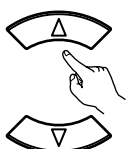
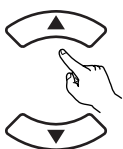
2

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Speaker Config. screen.

3

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Set whether speakers are connected or not and, if so, their size parameters.

① Select the speaker.

2-1. Speaker Config.

Front Sp. Large Small

Center Sp. Small None

Subwoofer Yes No

2-1. Speaker Config.

Surround

Sp. A Small None

Sp. B Small None

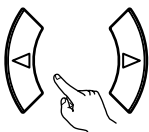
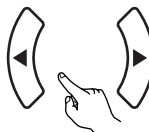
Sp. Back Small None

2spkrs 1spkr

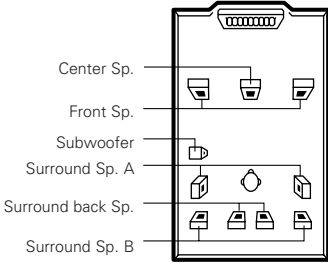
2.1

*Speaker Config
Front : 4Small



② Select the parameter.

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)



4

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.
The Speaker Setup menu reappears.

NOTE:

- Select "Large" or "Small" not according to the actual size of the speaker but according to the speaker's capacity for playing low frequency (bass sound below the frequency set for the Crossover Frequency) signals. If you do not know, try comparing the sound at both settings (setting the volume to a level low enough so as not to damage the speakers) to determine the proper setting.

Parameters

Large.....Select this when using speakers that can fully reproduce deep bass well below 80 Hz.

Small.....Select this when using speakers that are not capable of handling deep bass well below 80 Hz. Most home theater main and surround speakers perform best when configured as SMALL. Deep bass content in any channel with a SMALL speaker is routed to the subwoofer(s).

None.....Select this when no speakers are installed.

Yes/No.....Select "Yes" when a subwoofer is installed, "No" when a subwoofer is not installed.

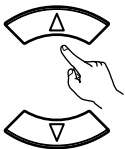

2 spkrs/1 spkr.....Select the number of speakers to be used for the surround back channel.

- ※ A subwoofer with sufficient low frequency playback capability can better handle deep bass than most main and surround speakers, and the system's overall performance will be greatly enhanced when SMALL is set for the main (front) and surround speakers.
- ※ To take full advantage of the performance of the Home THX certified speaker systems, set the front, center and surround speaker size parameters to "Small" and the subwoofer to "Yes".
- ※ For the majority of speaker system configurations, using the SMALL setting for all main and surround speakers and connected subwoofer(s) set to ON will yield the best results.
- ※ When "Front" is set to "Small", "Subwoofer" is automatically set to "Yes", and when "Subwoofer" is set to "No", "Front" is automatically set to "Large".

2-2. Setting the low frequency distribution

- Set the subwoofer mode according to the speaker system being used.
- Select the play mode that provides bass reproduction with body.

1

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Subwoofer Setup" at the Speaker Setup menu.



*Speaker Setup 2.2

Subwoofer Setup

2. Speaker Setup

1. Speaker Config.
2. Subwoofer Setup
3. Delay Time
4. Channel Level
5. Crossover Frequency
6. Surround Sp Setup
7. THX Audio Setup
- Exit

2

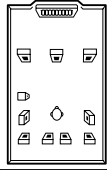
(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Subwoofer Setup screen.

*Subwoofer Setup 2.2

Mode: LFE-THX-▶

2-2. Subwoofer Setup

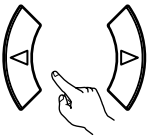
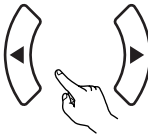


Subwoofer Mode

LFE ◀ ▶ LFE+Main

THX

3



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select the setting.

LFE-THX- : For any channel(s) that are set to LARGE, low frequencies in that channel's corresponding source are directed to that loudspeaker only. Low frequencies that are directed to the subwoofer(s) are from the program source LFE channel, and from other channels where the speakers are set to SMALL. THX recommends this mode so that bass interference is less likely to occur in the room.

LFE+Main : Low frequencies from speaker channels that have been set to LARGE are reproduced from those speakers as well as from the subwoofer(s). Depending upon the characteristics of the LARGE main speakers, this mode may provide a more even low frequency response throughout the listening room.

4

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.

The Speaker Setup menu reappears.

NOTES:

— Assignment of low frequency signal range (2-1) —

- The only signals produced from the subwoofer channel are LFE signals (during playback of Dolby Digital or DTS signals) and the low frequency signal range of channels set to “Small” in the setup menu. The low frequency signal range of channels set to “Large” are produced from those channels.

— Subwoofer Setup (2-2) —

- The subwoofer mode setting is only valid when and “Yes” is set for the subwoofer in the “2-1. Speaker Configuration” settings (see pages 49, 50).
- When the input signal is analog or a PCM signal not including LFE signals, if “LFE-THX-” is selected, the low frequency component is not output from the subwoofer. To output the subwoofer channel, select “LFE+Main”.

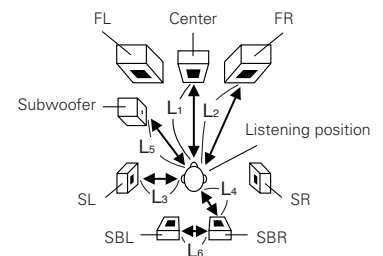
2-3. Setting the Delay Time

- Input the distance between the listening position and the different speakers to set the delay time for the surround mode.
- Two surround back speakers are required to use the THX Ultra2 Cinema, THX Music modes and THX Games mode.
Set the surround back speakers so that the distance to the listening position is the same for both the left and right speakers.
It is also recommended that the deviations of the distance from the listening position to L and R channel speakers (front left (FL) and front right (FR)), surround left (SL) and surround right (SR), surround back left (SBL) and surround back right (SBR)) is less than 60 cm (2 ft).

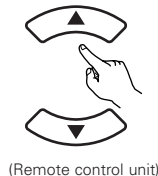
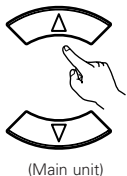
Preparations:

Measure the distances between the listening position and the speakers (L1 to L6 on the diagram at the right).

- L1: Distance between center speaker and listening position
- L2: Distance between front speakers and listening position
- L3: Distance between surround speakers and listening position
- L4: Distance between surround back speakers and listening position
- L5: Distance between subwoofer and listening position
- L6: Distance between surround back L and surround back R



1



Select “Delay Time” at the Speaker Setup menu.

*Speaker Setup 23
Delay Time

2. Speaker Setup

1. Speaker Config.
2. Subwoofer Setup
3. Delay Time
4. Channel Level
5. Crossover Frequency
6. Surround Sp Setup
7. THX Audio Setup
- Exit

2



Display the Delay Time screen.

*Delay Time 23
Meters ◀ : ▶ Feet

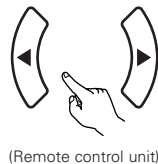
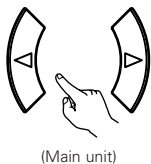
2-3. Delay Time

Set The Distance To Each Speakers

Do You Prefer In Meters? / In Feet?

☐ Meters ◀ : ▶ Feet

3



Select the desired unit, “Meters” or “Feet”.

2-3. Delay Time

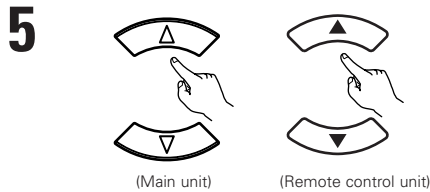
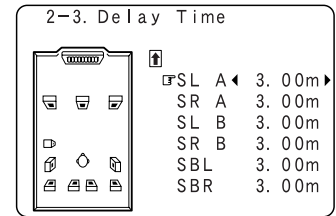
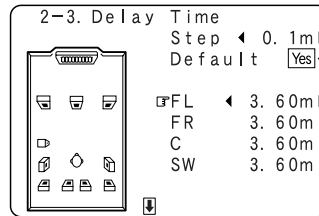
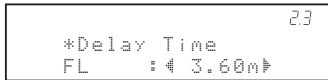
Set The Distance To Each Speakers

Do You Prefer In Meters? / In Feet?

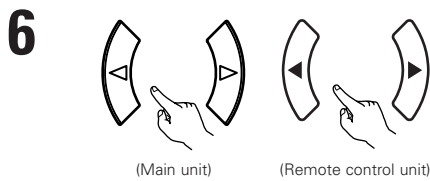
☑ Meters ◀ : ▶ Feet

Example: When “Meters” is selected

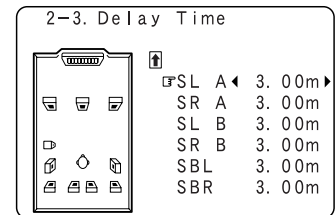
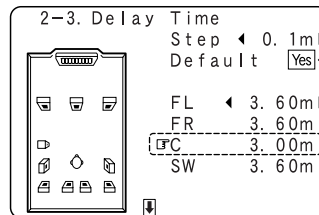
4 Once “Meters” or “Feet” is selected in step 3, the Delay Time screen appears automatically.



Select the speaker to be set.
The picture of the speaker selected blinks.



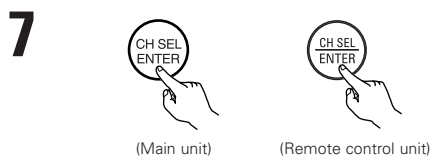
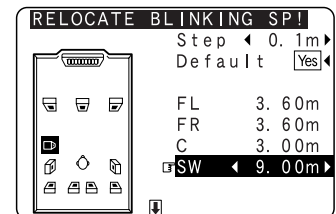
Set the distance between the center speaker and listening position.
The distance changes in units of 0.1 meters (1 foot) or 0.01 meters (0.1 foot) each time the button is pressed. Select the value closest to the measured distance.



Example: When the distance is set to 3.0 m
for the center speaker

- ※ When “Step” is selected, you can select the unit of “0.1 m (1 ft)” or “0.01 m (0.1 ft)”.
- ※ When “Yes” is selected for “Default”, then press the cursor left button to reset to the default values.

Please note that the difference of distance for every speaker should be 6.0 m (20 ft) or less. If you set an invalid distance, a CAUTION notice, such as screen right will appear. In this case, please relocate the blinking speaker(s) so that its distance is no larger than the value shown in highlighted line.

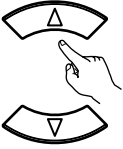


Enter the setting.
The Speaker Setup menu reappears.
The AVC-A1XVA automatically sets the optimum surround delay time for the listening room.


2-4. Setting the Channel Level

- Use this setting to adjust so that the playback level between the different channels is equal.
- From the listening position, listen to the test tones produced from the speakers to adjust the level.
- The level can also be adjusted directly from the Remote control unit. (For details, see pages 137, 138.)
- The level of each channel should be adjusted to 75 dB (C-weighted, slow meter mode) on a sound level meter at the listening position.
If a sound level meter is not available adjust the channels by ear so the sound levels are the same. Because adjusting the subwoofer level test tone by ear is difficult, use a well known music selection and adjust for natural balance.

1



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select "Channel Level" at the Speaker Setup menu.

24

*Speaker Setup
Channel Level

2. Speaker Setup

1. Speaker Config.

2. Subwoofer Setup

3. Delay Time

4. Channel Level


5. Crossover Frequency

6. Surround Sp Setup


7. THX Audio Setup

Exit

2



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Display the Channel Level screen.

24

*Channel Level
T.Tone: Auto ▶

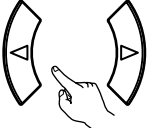
2-4. Channel Level

Test Tone Auto ◀ ▶ Manual

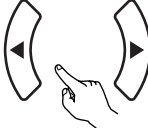
Test Tone Start Yes ◀

Level Clear Yes ◀

3



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select the mode.
Select "Auto" or "Manual".

24

*Channel Level
T.Tone: Auto ▶

2-4. Channel Level

Test Tone Auto ◀ ▶ Manual

Test Tone Start Yes ◀

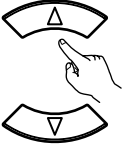
Level Clear Yes ◀

Auto :
Adjust the level while listening to the test tones produced automatically from each speaker.


Manual :
Select the speaker from which you want to produce the test tone to adjust the level.

Example: When the "Auto" mode is selected

4



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select "Test Tone Start".

24

*Channel Level
Tone Start: Yes ◀


2-4. Channel Level

Test Tone Auto ◀ ▶ Manual


Test Tone Start Yes ◀

Level Clear Yes ◀

5



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select "Yes".

2-4. Channel Level

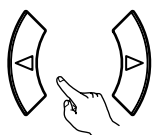
Test Tone Auto ◀ ▶ Manual

Test Tone Start Yes ◀

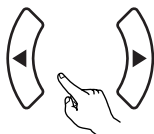
Level Clear Yes ◀

53

6



(Main unit)

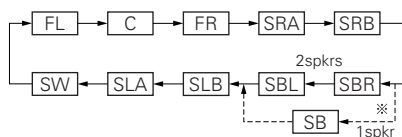


(Remote control unit)

a. When "Auto" mode is selected:

Test tones are automatically emitted from each speaker.

The test tones are emitted from each speaker in the following order, at 4-second intervals the first time and second time around, 2-second intervals the third time around and on:



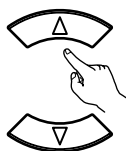
※ When the surround back speaker setting is set to "1spkr" for "2-1. Speaker Configuration", this is set to "SB".

Use the cursor left and right buttons to adjust all the speakers to the same volume.

The volume can be adjusted between -12 dB and +12 dB in units of 0.5 dB.

b. When "Manual" mode is selected:

① Select the speaker.

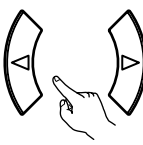


(Main unit)

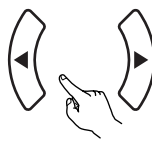


(Remote control unit)

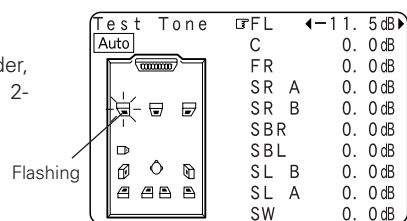
② Adjust all the speakers to the same volume.



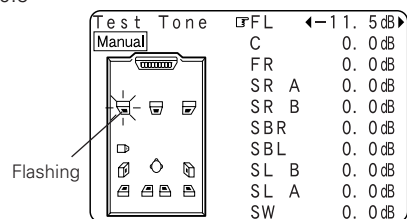
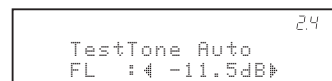
(Main unit)



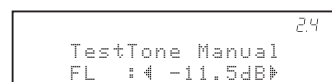
(Remote control unit)



Example: When the volume is set to -11.5 dB while the test tone is being produced from the Front Lch speaker



Example: "Manual" mode is selected.



7



(Main unit)

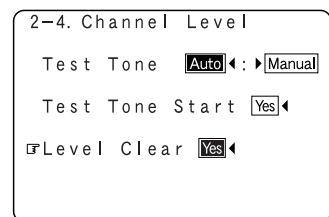


(Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.

The Channel Level screen reappears.

※ To cancel the settings, press the cursor left button to select "Level Clear" and "Yes" on the Channel Level screen, then make the settings again.



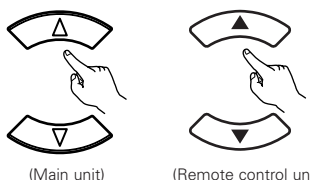
NOTES:

- When adjusting the level of an active subwoofer system, you may also need to adjust the subwoofer's own volume control.
- When you adjust the channel levels while in the SYSTEM SETUP CHANNEL LEVEL mode, the channel level adjustments made will affect all surround modes. Consider this mode a Master Channel Level adjustment mode.
- After you have completed the SYSTEM SETUP CHANNEL LEVEL adjustments, you can then activate the individual surround modes and adjust channel levels that will be remembered for each of those modes. Then, whenever you activate a particular surround sound mode, your preferred channel level adjustments for just that mode will be recalled. Check the instructions for adjusting channel levels within each surround mode. (See pages 137, 138)
- You can adjust the channel levels for each of the following surround modes: PURE DIRECT/DIRECT, STEREO, DOLBY/DTS SURROUND, HOME THX CINEMA, 9CH STEREO, WIDE SCREEN, SUPER STADIUM, ROCK ARENA, JAZZ CLUB, CLASSIC CONCERT, MONO MOVIE, VIDEO GAME and MATRIX.
- When using either surround speakers A or B, or when using surround speakers A and B at the same time, be sure to adjust the balance of playback levels between each channel for the various selections of "A or B" and "A and B".

2-5. Setting the Crossover Frequency

- Set the crossover frequency according to the low frequency response characteristics of the various (front, center, surround and surround back) speaker systems.
- If a connected main or surround loudspeaker has a specified -3 dB low frequency response rolloff, adjust the crossover frequency for that speaker to match the specified low frequency response limit – e.g. 80 Hz.
- When a speaker is set to SMALL, low frequencies in that channel that are below the crossover frequency are directed to the system's subwoofer(s), or to speakers that are set to LARGE, for systems with no connected subwoofer(s).

1



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select the "Crossover Frequency" at the Speaker Setup menu.

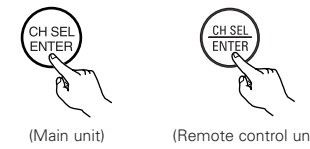
25

*Speaker Setup
Crossover Freq.

2. Speaker Setup

1. Speaker Config.
2. Subwoofer Setup
3. Delay Time
4. Channel Level
5. Crossover Frequency
6. Surround Sp Setup
7. THX Audio Setup
- Exit

2



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Crossover Frequency screen.

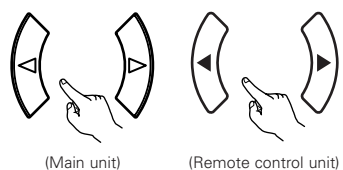
25

*Crossover Freq
Fixed -THX-

2-5. Crossover Frequency

Fixed
-THX-

3



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

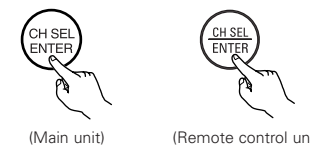
Select the frequency.

Fixed -THX- :
Set to the THX rated 80 Hz crossover frequency.

Variable 40, 60, 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 150, 200, 250 Hz :
Set as desired according to your speakers' bass playback ability.

Advanced :
The crossover frequency can be set individually for the different speakers. (See page 56)

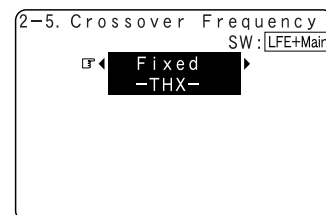
4



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.
The Speaker Setup menu reappears.

※ If "LFE+Main" is set at "2-2. Subwoofer Setup", "SW:LFE+Main" (see pages 50, 51) is displayed at the top right of the screen.

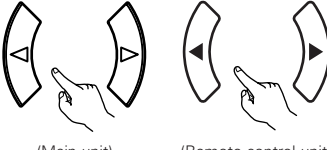


NOTES:

- Please set all THX Certified speakers to small and the crossover to 80 Hz.
- We recommend using with the crossover frequency set to "Fixed -THX-", but depending on the speaker, setting it to a different frequency may improve frequency response near the crossover frequency.
- The crossover frequency mode is valid only when subwoofer is set to ON, and when one or more speakers are set to SMALL, as described in section "2-1. Speaker Configuration" settings.

■ Setting the crossover frequency individually for the different channels

1



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Advanced" at the Crossover Frequency screen.

25

*Crossover Freq

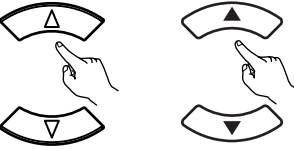
◀ Advanced ▶

2-5. Crossover Frequency

◀ Advanced ▶

Front	Small	: 80Hz ▶
Center	Small	: 80Hz ▶
Surround A	Small	: 80Hz ▶
Surround B	Small	: 80Hz ▶
S. Back	Small	: 80Hz ▶
LFE		80Hz ▶

2



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select the speaker to be set.

25

*Crossover Freq


Front : 80Hz ▶

2-5. Crossover Frequency

◀ Advanced ▶

Front	Small	: 80Hz ▶
Center	Small	: 80Hz ▶
Surround A	Small	: 80Hz ▶
Surround B	Small	: 80Hz ▶
S. Back	Small	: 80Hz ▶
LFE		80Hz ▶

3



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select the frequency.

25

*Crossover Freq

Front : 100Hz ▶

2-5. Crossover Frequency

◀ Advanced ▶

Front	Small	: 100Hz ▶
Center	Small	: 80Hz ▶
Surround A	Small	: 80Hz ▶
Surround B	Small	: 80Hz ▶
S. Back	Small	: 80Hz ▶
LFE		80Hz ▶

NOTES:

- If "LFE-THX-" is selected at "2-2. Subwoofer Setup", the frequencies can only be selected for speakers set to "Small" at "2-1. Speaker Configuration".

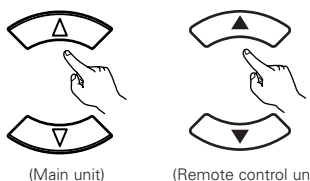
- If "LFE+Main" is set at "2-2. Subwoofer Setup", the frequencies can be selected regardless of the speaker size setting.

2-5. Crossover Frequency		
◀ Advanced ▶		
Front	Large	:
Center	Small	: 40Hz ▶
Surround A	Small	: 80Hz ▶
Surround B	None	:
S. Back	Small	: 120Hz ▶
LFE		80Hz ▶

2-6. Selecting the Surround Speakers for the different surround modes

- This menu is displayed when both surround speakers A and B are used.
- At this screen preset the surround speakers to be used in each surround modes.

1



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Surround Sp Setup" at the Speaker Setup menu.

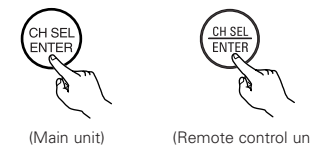
*Speaker Setup 26

Surr Sp Setup

2. Speaker Setup

1. Speaker Config.
2. Subwoofer Setup
3. Delay Time
4. Channel Level
5. Crossover Frequency
6. Surround Sp Setup
7. THX Audio Setup
- Exit

2



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Surround Sp Setup screen.

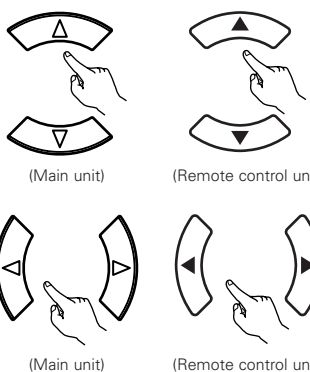
*Surr Sp Setup 26

CINEMA : A

2-6. Surround Sp Setup

Mode	A	B	A+B
THX/DOLBY/DTS	A	B	A+B
CINEMA	A	B	A+B
MUSIC	A	B	A+B
GAME	A	B	A+B
WIDE SCREEN	A	B	A+B
9CH STEREO	A	B	A+B
DSP SIMULATION	A	B	A+B
MULTI CH MODE	A	B	A+B

3



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

① To select the surround mode

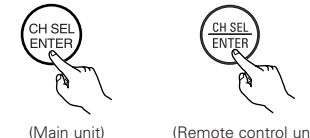
② To select the surround speaker

A : When surround speakers A is used.

B : When surround speakers B is used.

A+B : When both surround speakers A and B are used.

4



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.

The Speaker Setup menu reappears.

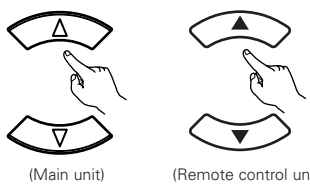
- ※ For the "WIDE SCREEN" and "9CH STEREO" DSP simulation modes, the surround speakers can be set separately.
- ※ See pages 62, 63 for setting the surround speaker when the "Analog" mode is selected at "3-2. EXT.IN Setup".

2-7. Setting the THX Audio Setup

[1] Settings for using a THX Ultra2 compatible subwoofer

- Make these settings when "Yes" is selected for the subwoofer in the "2-1. Speaker Configuration" settings.
This option is not available when "No" is selected. (See pages 49, 50)

1



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "THX Audio Setup" at the Speaker Setup menu.

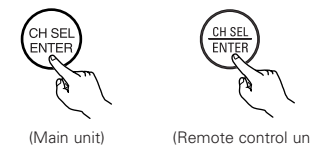
2.7

*Speaker Setup
THX Audio Setup

2. Speaker Setup

1. Speaker Config.
2. Subwoofer Setup
3. Delay Time
4. Channel Level
5. Crossover Frequency
6. Surround Sp Setup
7. THX Audio Setup
- Exit

2



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the THX Audio Setup screen.

2.7

*THX AudioSetup
Boundary Gain

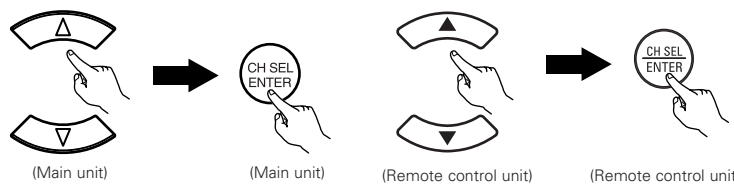
2-7. THX Audio Setup

Boundary Gain Compensation

Surround Back Speaker Position

Exit

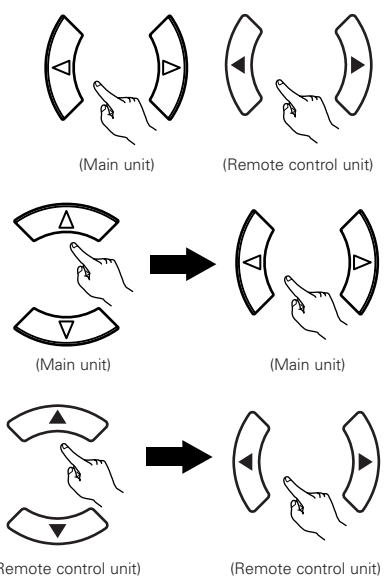
3



(Main unit) (Main unit) (Remote control unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Boundary Gain Compensation", then press the ENTER button.

4



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

(Main unit) (Main unit)

(Remote control unit) (Remote control unit)

When using a THX Ultra2 compatible subwoofer or subwoofer that frequency response extends to 20 Hz, select "Yes". Otherwise select "No".

2.7

Boundary Gain
THX U2 SW: No

- When "Yes" is selected "Boundary Gain Compensation" can be selected and the compensation set to "OFF".
- If the bass sound seems too strong Set "Boundary Gain Compensation" to "ON". This activates a filter that gently reduces very deep bass below 55 Hz to provide the flattest overall deep bass response. Select ON or OFF according to how strong you prefer the deep bass response to be.

2.7

Boundary Gain
THX U2 SW: Yes

2-7. THX Audio Setup

Do You Have

A THX Ultra2 Subwoofer

(Or Sub That Extends To 20Hz) ?

Yes No

2-7. THX Audio Setup

Do You Have

A THX Ultra2 Subwoofer

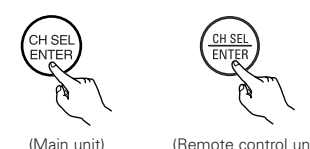
(Or Sub That Extends To 20Hz) ?

Yes No

Boundary Gain Compensation

ON OFF

5



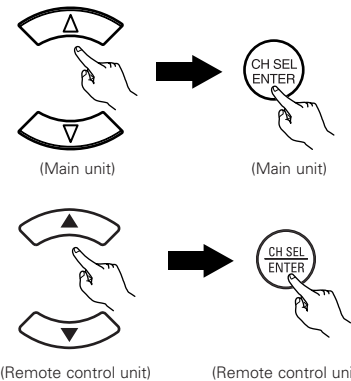
(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Press the ENTER button to return to the THX Audio Setup screen.

[2] Surround Back Speaker Position Settings

- When two surround back speakers have been set in "2-1. Speaker Configuration" (See pages 49, 50), set the distance of the speakers. This option is not available when "1spkr" selected.
- This setting is necessary to achieve the optimum effect in the THX Surround EX, THX Ultra2 Cinema, THX Music modes and THX Games mode. It is recommended that SBL/SBR speakers are placed together as close as possible.

1



(Main unit) (Main unit)

(Remote control unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Surround Back Speaker Position" at the THX Audio Setup screen and press the ENTER button.

2.7

*THX AudioSetup
SB Sp Position

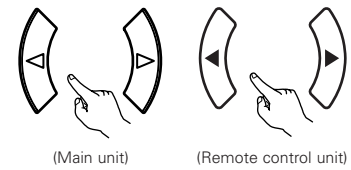
2-7. THX Audio Setup

Boundary Gain Compensation

☒ Surround Back Speaker Position

Exit

2



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select the settings according to the distances of the two surround back speakers. (See page 51)

2.7

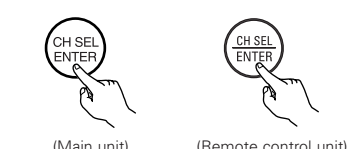
SB Sp Position
◀ 0m to 0.3m ▶

2-7. THX Audio Setup

Set The distance Between SBL/SBR

◀ 0m to 0.3m ▶

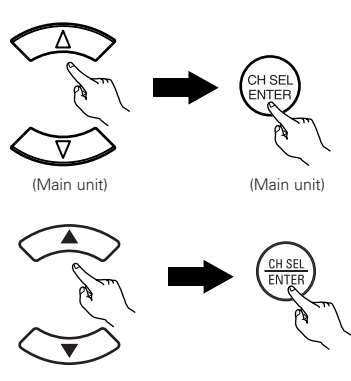
3



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Press the ENTER button to return to the THX Audio Setup screen.

4



(Main unit) (Main unit)

(Remote control unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Exit" and press the ENTER button to return to the Speaker Setup menu screen.

2.7

*THX AudioSetup
Exit

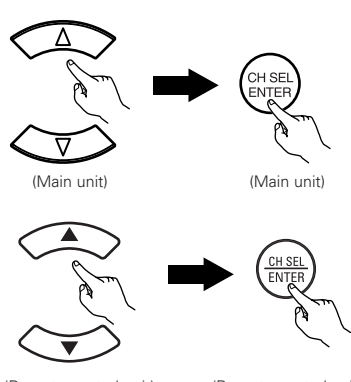
2-7. THX Audio Setup

Boundary Gain Compensation

Surround Back Speaker Position

☒ Exit

5



(Main unit) (Main unit)

(Remote control unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Exit" and press the ENTER button at the Speaker Setup menu screen. The System Setup Menu reappears.

2.0

*Speaker Setup
Exit

2. Speaker Setup

1. Speaker Config.

2. Subwoofer Setup

3. Delay Time

4. Channel Level

5. Crossover Frequency

6. Surround Sp Setup

7. THX Audio Setup

☒ Exit

3

Setting the Audio Input Setup

- Make the audio-related settings.

1

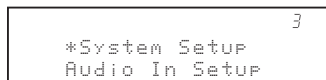


(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select "Audio Input Setup" at the System Setup Menu.



System Setup Menu

1. Auto Setup/Room EQ
2. Speaker Setup
3. Audio Input Setup
4. Video Setup
5. Advanced Playback
6. Zone Setup
7. Option Setup
- Exit

2

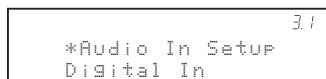


(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Display the Audio Input Setup menu screen.



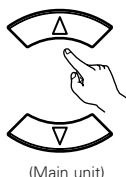
3. Audio Input Setup

1. Digital In Assign
2. EXT. IN Setup
3. Input Function Lev.
4. Function Rename
5. IEEE1394 Assign
6. IEEE1394 Auto Func.
- Exit

3-1. Setting the Digital In Assignment

- This setting assigns the digital input jacks of the AVC-A1XVA for the different input sources.

1

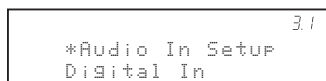


(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select "Digital In Assign" at the Audio Input Setup menu.



3. Audio Input Setup

1. Digital In Assign
2. EXT. IN Setup
3. Input Function Lev.
4. Function Rename
5. IEEE1394 Assign
6. IEEE1394 Auto Func.
- Exit

2

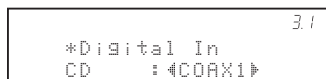


(Main unit)



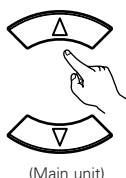
(Remote control unit)

Display the Digital In Assign screen.



3-1. Digital In Assign	
CD	COAX1
DVD	COAX2
VDP	COAX3
TV	COAX4
DBS	COAX5
VCR-1	OPT1
VCR-2	OPT2
VCR-3	OPT3
VCR-4	OPT4
Default Yes	

3



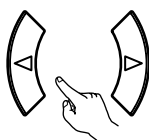
(Main unit)



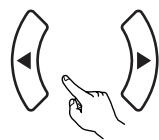
(Remote control unit)

Select the digital input jack to be assigned to the input source.

- ① Select the input source.



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

- ② Select the digital input jack.

Select from among COAX 1 to 6, OPT 1 to 6.

Select "OFF" for input sources for which no digital input jacks are used.

It is not possible to select the same digital input jack for different input sources.

If the same digital input jack is selected, the setting for the input source that was previously assigned switches to "OFF".

The HDMI input terminal is displayed when it is assigned to the input source at "4-1. HDMI/DVI In Assignment". (See pages 69, 70)

※ When "Yes" is selected for "Default", then press the cursor left button to reset to the default values.

4



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.
The Audio Input Setup menu reappears.

NOTES:

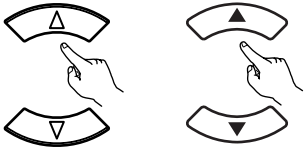
- The OPTICAL 3, 4 and 5 jacks on the AVC-A1XVA's rear panel are equipped with an optical digital output jack for recording digital audio signals to a CD recorder, MD recorder, or other digital audio recording deck. Use this for digital recording between a digital audio source (stereo - 2 channel) and a digital audio recorder.
- Do not connect the output of the component connected to the OPTICAL 3 OUT jack on the AVC-A1XVA's rear panel to any jack other than the OPTICAL 3 IN jack.
- Do not connect the output of the component connected to the OPTICAL 4 OUT jack on the AVC-A1XVA's rear panel to any jack other than the OPTICAL 4 IN jack.
- Do not connect the output of the component connected to the OPTICAL 5 OUT jack on the AVC-A1XVA's rear panel to any jack other than the OPTICAL 5 IN jack.
- "PHONO" cannot be selected on the Digital In Assignment screen.

Refer to "DENON LINK connections". (See page 20)

3-2. Setting the EXT. IN Setup

- Set the method of playback of the analog input signal connected to the EXT.IN-1 (10 CH) and EXT.IN-2 (6 CH) terminal.

1



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "EXT.IN Setup" at the Audio Input Setup menu.


*Audio In Setup 3.2
EXT.IN Setup

3. Audio Input Setup

1. Digital In Assign
2. EXT. IN Setup
3. Input Function Lev.
4. Function Rename
5. IEEE1394 Assign
6. IEEE1394 Auto Func.

Exit

2



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the EXT.IN Setup screen.

*EXT. IN Setup 3.2
EXT. IN-1

3-2. EXT. IN Setup

EXT. IN-1
EXT. IN-2
Exit


3

① Select the input terminal.



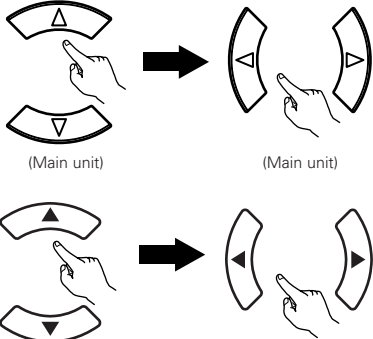
(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

② Switch to the setting screen.



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

4



(Main unit) (Main unit)
(Remote control unit) (Remote control unit)

Select the item to be set (use the cursor button to the up and down) then select the parameter (use the cursor left and right buttons).

*EXT. IN-1 Setup 3.2
Mode : DSP

3-2. EXT. IN-1 Setup

Mode ◀ DSP ▶
Surr. B ◀ NOT USED ▶
S. Back ◀ NOT USED ▶
SW Level ◀ +15dB ▶
Input ATT. ◀ OFF ▶

- The items to be set differ as described below according to the selected input jack and the “Mode” selection.

	EXT. IN-1 (10 CH)		EXT. IN-2 (6 CH)	
Mode	DSP	ANALOG	DSP	ANALOG
Surr. B	NOT USED / USED	NOT USED / USED	–	–
S. Back	NOT USED, SBL/SBR, SB (SBL)	–	–	–
Surr. Sp	–	Surr.A / Surr.B / Surr.A+B	–	Surr. A / Surr. B / Surr. A+B
SW Level	0, +5, +10, +15 dB	0, +5, +10, +15 dB	0, +5, +10, +15 dB	0, +5, +10, +15 dB
Input ATT.	OFF, –6 dB	–	OFF, –6 dB	–

MODE :

- DSP : The analog input signal is converted into a digital signal and undergoes DSP processing.
System Setup settings (speaker configuration, channel delay, etc.) are reflected in the same way as for other input signals.
The surround playback mode button functions.
- ANALOG : The analog input signal is played without DSP processing.
SW and center channel: Down-mixing is conducted by the analog circuit. Surround and surround back channels: Not output if “No” is selected at the speaker configuration. Channel delay: Not reflected.

S. Back :

Set when MODE is set to “DSP”. Select according to the specifications of the player being used. Also refer to the player’s operating instructions.

- NOT USED : Select when neither SBL or SBR is connected.
- SB (SBL) : Select when only one surround back channel (SBL) is connected.
- SBL/SBR : Select when two surround back channels (SBL and SBR) are connected.

Surr. B :

Select according to the specifications of the player being used. Also refer to the player’s operating instructions.

- NOT USED : Select when Surround B is not connected.
The Surround A input signal is output to the Surround B output connector.
- USED : Select when Surround B is connected. The playback in the MULTI CH DIRECT and MULTI CH IN is only possible when MODE is set to “DSP”.

Surr. Sp :

Set when MODE is set to “ANALOG”. Select according to the specifications of the player being used. Also refer to the player’s operating instructions.

- Surr. A : Select when using surround speakers A.
- Surr. B : Select when using surround speakers B.
- Surr. A+B : Select when using both surround speakers A and B.

SW Level :

Select according to the specifications of the player being used. Also refer to the player’s operating instructions.

Set the level of playback of the analog input signal connected to the Ext.In Subwoofer.

+15dB (default) recommended. (0, +5, +10 and +15 can be selected.)

INPUT ATT. :

Set when MODE is set to “DSP”.

If the OVER LOAD indicator is displayed on the fluorescent tube, select “–6 dB”.

5



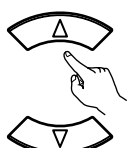
(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.
The EXT.IN Setup screen reappears.

6



(Main unit)



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select “Exit” and press the ENTER button to return to the Audio Input Setup menu screen.

```
*EXT.IN Setup
Exit
```

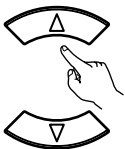
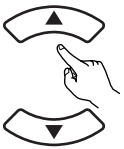
3-2. EXT. IN Setup

```
EXT. IN-1
EXT. IN-2
Exit
```

3-3. Setting the Input Function Level

- Correct the playback level of the different input sources.
- Adjust the playback levels of the devices connected to the different input sources to the same level to eliminate the need for adjusting the main volume each time the input source is switched.

1

(Main unit)
(Remote control unit)

Select "Input Function Lev." at the Audio Input Setup menu.

3.3



 *Audio In Setup
Input Func.Lev.

3. Audio Input Setup

1. Digital In Assign
2. EXT. IN Setup
3. Input Function Lev.
4. Function Rename
5. IEEE1394 Assign
6. IEEE1394 Auto Func.

Exit

2

(Main unit)
(Remote control unit)

Display the Input Function Lev. screen.

3.3

 *Input Func.Lev
TUNER : ◀ 0dB▶

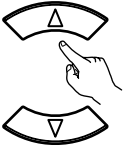
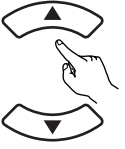
3-3. Input Function Lev.

Tuner : ◀ 0dB▶	DBS : 0dB
Phone : 0dB	VCR-1 : 0dB
CD : 0dB	VCR-2 : 0dB
Tape : 0dB	VCR-3 : 0dB
DVD : 0dB	VCR-4 : 0dB
VDP : 0dB	V.Aux : 0dB
TV : 0dB	Aux : 0dB

Default ◀

3

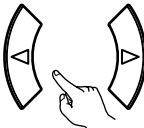
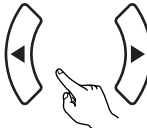
① Select the input source.

(Main unit)
(Remote control unit)

② Adjust the level.



The level can be adjusted between -12 dB and +12 dB in units of 1 dB.

(Main unit)
(Remote control unit)

※ When "Yes" is selected for "Default", then press the cursor left button to reset to the default values.

4

(Main unit)
(Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.
The Audio Input Setup menu reappears.

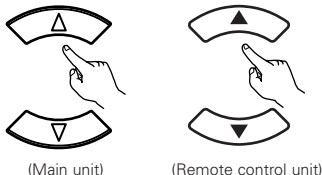
※ After completing this setting, check that the playback levels for the different sources are the same.

64

3-4. Setting the Function Rename

- The names of the input sources displayed on the front display and on the on screen display can be changed. The names or brands of the devices connected to the input sources can be input.

1



Select "Function Rename" at the Audio Input Setup menu.

3.4

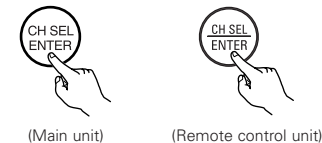
*Audio In Setup
Function Rename

3. Audio Input Setup

1. Digital In Assign
2. EXT. IN Setup
3. Input Function Lev.
4. Function Rename
5. IEEE1394 Assign
6. IEEE1394 Auto Func.

Exit

2



Display the Function Rename screen.

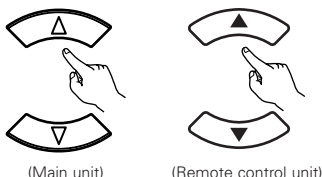
3.4

*FunctionRename
TUNER#TUNER

3-4. Function Rename

Tuner	: TUNER	▶
Phono	: PHONO	
CD	: CD	
Tape	: CDR/TAPE	
DVD	: DVD	
VDP	: VDP	
TV	: TV	

3



Select the input source whose name you want to change.

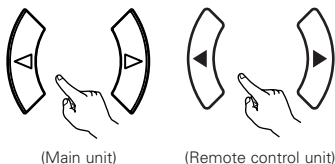
3-4. Function Rename

Tuner	: ◀TUNER ▶
Phono	: PHONO
CD	: CD
Tape	: CDR/TAPE
DVD	: DVD
VDP	: VDP
TV	: TV

3-4. Function Rename

DBS	: ◀DBS ▶
VCR-1	: VCR-1
VCR-2	: VCR-2
VCR-3	: VCR-3
VCR-4	: VCR-4
V.Aux	: V. AUX
Aux	: NetAudio

4



Press the cursor left and right buttons.
The screen switches to the character input screen.

3.4

Rename TUNER
◀TUNER ▶

3-4. Function Rename

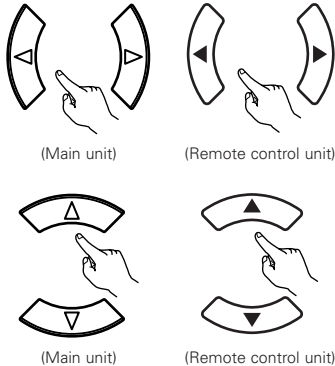
Tuner : ◀TUNER ▶

↑ ↓

Default Yes ◀

Example: When "TUNER" is selected and the cursor left and right buttons are pressed

5



① Move the cursor to choose the position at which you want to input the character using the cursor left and right buttons.

② Select the character to be input using the cursor up and down buttons.
Up to 8 characters can be input.

ABCDEF GHIJ KLMNOP QRSTUV WXYZ

abc defgh ijkl mnopq rstuvw xyz

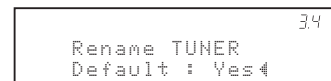
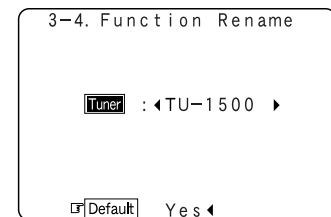
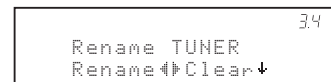
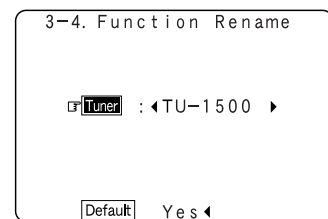
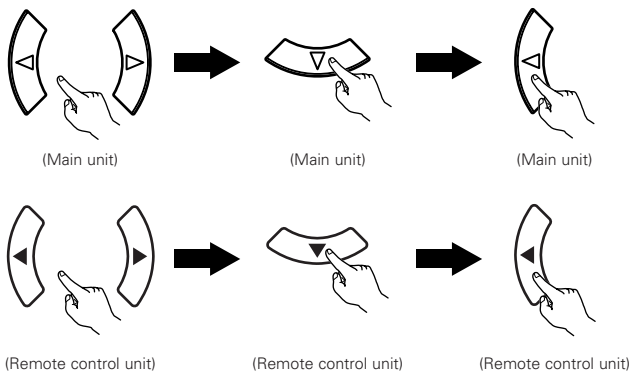
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

! " # % & ' () * + , - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] (space)

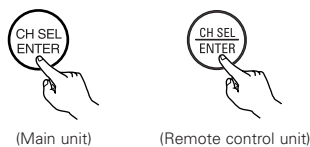
6

Repeat step 5 to input the input source name.

- ※ To reset the input source name to the default value, press the cursor left or right button to highlight the input source display, then press the cursor down button.
When "Yes" is selected for "Default", then press the cursor left button to reset to the default input source name.



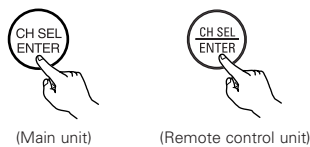
7



Once all the characters have been input, press the ENTER button.
The Function Rename screen reappears.

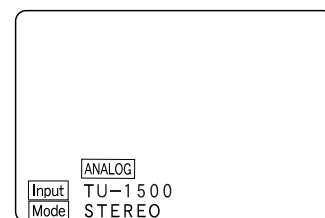
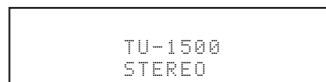
- ※ Use the same procedure to change other input source names as well.

8



Enter the setting.
The Audio Input Setup menu reappears.

- ※ When the input source is selected, the display is as shown below.

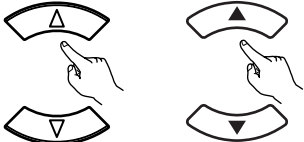


Example: When the name has been changed to "TU-1500"

3-5. Setting the IEEE1394 Assignment

- Assign the device connected by IEEE1394 cable to an input source. The power of the device to be assigned must be turned on ahead of time.

1



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "IEEE1394 Assign" at the Audio Input Setup menu.

*Audio In Setup 35

IEEE1394 Assign

3. Audio Input Setup

1. Digital In Assign

2. EXT. IN Setup

3. Input Function Lev.

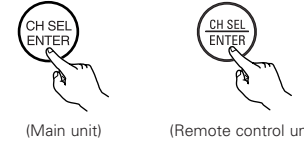
4. Function Rename

5. IEEE1394 Assign

6. IEEE1394 Auto Func.

Exit

2



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the IEEE1394 Assign screen.

*IEEE1394Assign 35

DVD-39104--- ▶

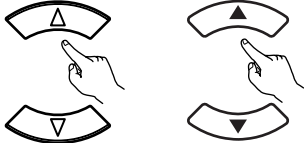
3-5. IEEE1394 Assign

11 DVD-3910 : ◀---▶

12 DVD-A1XV : ---▶

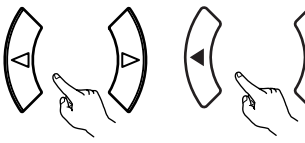
3

① Select the device to be assigned to the input source.



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

② Select the input source.



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

3-5. IEEE1394 Assign

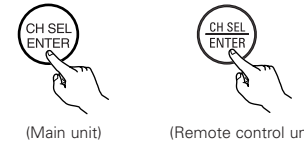
11 DVD-3910 : ◀DVD▶

12 DVD-A1XV : ---▶

*IEEE1394Assign 35

DVD-3910: ◀DVD ▶

4



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.

The Audio Input Setup menu reappears.

- ※ If you do not wish to assign the device connected by IEEE1394 cable to an input source, the IEEE1394 input can be selected by turning the FUNCTION knob. In this case, the connection information is cleared when the power of the connected device or the AVC-A1XVA is turned off, so the selection procedure must be performed again.

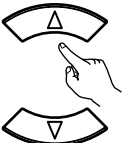
NOTES:

- By default, if no device has been connected using an IEEE1394 cable in the past, "No Connection" is displayed.
- "Connection Change" is displayed if there is a change in the IEEE1394 connection status while this screen is displayed.
- If the model name cannot be acquired from the connected IEEE1394 device, "UNKNOWN" is displayed.
- If an IEEE1394 device other than one for IEEE1394 audio playback is connected, "Not Play" is displayed and the input source cannot be assigned.

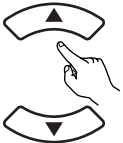
3-6. Setting the IEEE1394 Auto Function

- Set whether or not to automatically play the IEEE1394 device when it is selected with the FUNCTION knob.

1



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select "IEEE1394 Auto Func." at the Audio Input Setup menu.

3.6


*Audio In Setup
IEEE1394 Auto

3. Audio Input Setup


1. Digital In Assign
2. EXT. IN Setup
3. Input Function Lev.
4. Function Rename
5. IEEE1394 Assign
6. IEEE1394 Auto Func.

Exit

2



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Display the IEEE1394 Auto Function screen.

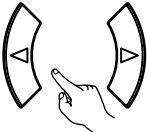
3.6

*IEEE1394 Auto
Auto Func: 4OFF5

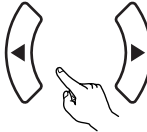
3-6. IEEE1394 Auto Func.

Auto Function ◀OFF▶

3



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select "ON" or "OFF".


ON : Select this to automatically play the device.

OFF : Select this if you do not want to automatically play the device.


NOTE:

- In some cases settings may be required on your player. Also refer to the player's operating instructions.

4



(Main unit)

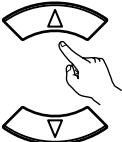


(Remote control unit)


Enter the setting.


The Audio Input Setup menu reappears.

5




➔





➔



Select "Exit" and press the ENTER button at the Audio Input Setup menu screen.

The System Setup Menu reappears.

3.0

*Audio In Setup
Exit

3. Audio Input Setup

1. Digital In Assign
2. EXT. IN Setup
3. Input Function Lev.
4. Function Rename
5. IEEE1394 Assign
6. IEEE1394 Auto Func.

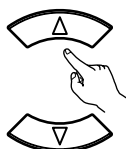
Exit

4

Setting the Video Setup

- Make the video-related settings.

1



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select "Video Setup" at the System Setup Menu.

```
*System Setup
Video Setup
```

System Setup Menu

1. Auto Setup/Room EQ
2. Speaker Setup
3. Audio Input Setup
4. Video Setup
5. Advanced Playback
6. Zone Setup
7. Option Setup
- Exit

2



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Display the Video Setup menu screen.

```
*Video Setup
HDMI/DVI In
```

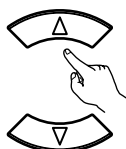
4. Video Setup

1. HDMI/DVI In Assign
2. Component In Assign
3. Video Convert Mode
4. HDMI/Component Out
5. Audio Delay
6. On Screen Display
- Exit

4-1. Setting the HDMI / DVI In Assignment

- This setting assigns the HDMI input terminals and DVI-D input terminal for different input sources.
- Select which input signal, HDMI or DVI, is to be output from which monitor out jack, HDMI or DVI-D.
- Set the method for playing the audio signals included in the HDMI input signal.

1



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select "HDMI / DVI In Assign" at the Video Setup menu.

```
*Video Setup
HDMI/DVI In
```

4. Video Setup

1. HDMI/DVI In Assign
2. Component In Assign
3. Video Convert Mode
4. HDMI/Component Out
5. Audio Delay
6. On Screen Display
- Exit

2



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Display the HDMI / DVI In Assign.

```
*HDMI/DVI In
DVD : NONE
```

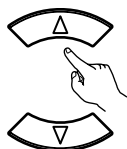
4-1. HDMI/DVI In Assign	
DVD	NONE
VDP	NONE
TV	NONE
DBS	NONE
VCR-1	NONE
VCR-2	NONE
VCR-3	NONE
VCR-4	NONE
V.Aux	NONE

3

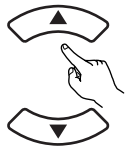
Select the HDMI input terminal or DVI-D input terminal to be assigned to the input source.

① Select the input source.

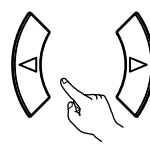
② Select the input terminal.



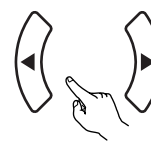
(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)



(Main unit)

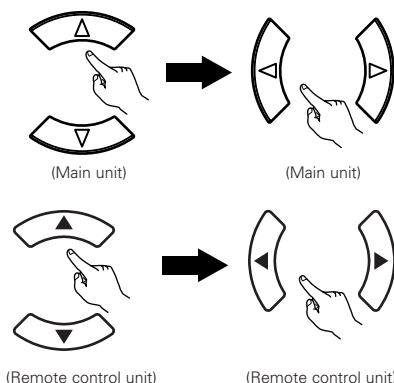


(Remote control unit)

Select from among HDMI1 to 5 and DVI-D.

If the same HDMI or DVI-D input terminal is selected, the setting for the input source that was previously assigned switches to "NONE". Select "NONE" for input sources for which both the HDMI and DVI-D input terminals are not used.

4



Select the "HDMI" or "DVI" monitor output terminal to be used.

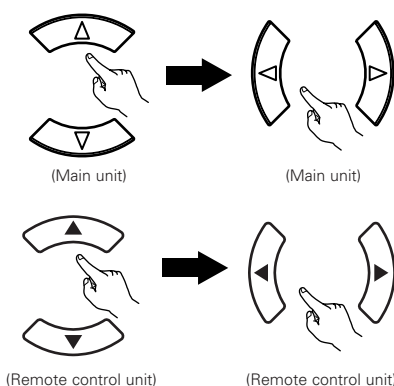
※ This setting can be switched directly using the MONITOR SELECT button on the Main unit.



4-1. HDMI/DVI In Assign	
DVD :	HDMI1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> [Monitor] : ◀HDMI▶
VDP :	HDMI2 HDMI
TV :	HDMI3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> [Audio] : ◀AMP▶
DBS :	HDMI4 No Signal
VCR-1 :	HDMI5 1 : EXT-1
VCR-2 :	DVI-D 2 : EXT-2
VCR-3 :	NONE 3 : ANALOG
VCR-4 :	NONE 4 : ANALOG
V.Aux :	NONE 5 : ANALOG

*HDMI/DVI In
Monitor : ◀HDMI▶

5



Select the method for playing the audio signals included in the HDMI input signal.

Select "TV" or "AMP".

AMP : The audio signals are played according to the AVC-A1XVA's speaker systems.

TV : The audio signals are played according to the number of playable channels on the monitor connected to the AVC-A1XVA's HDMI monitor output terminal.

NOTE:

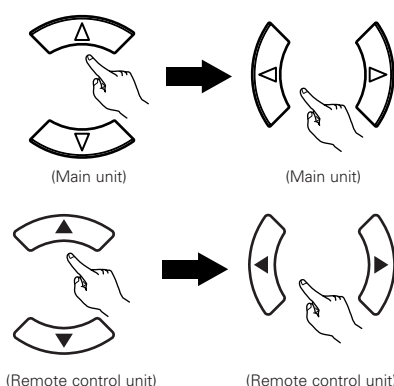
- If a monitor is connected with an HDMI cable but the monitor is not compatible with HDMI audio signal playback, only the video signals are output to the monitor from the AVC-A1XVA (DVI mode).

Use the STATUS button to check which mode is set for outputting HDMI signals from the AVC-A1XVA (HDMI and DVI modes).

4-1. HDMI/DVI In Assign	
DVD :	HDMI1 [Monitor] : HDMI
VDP :	HDMI2 HDMI
TV :	HDMI3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> [Audio] : ◀AMP▶
DBS :	HDMI4 No Signal
VCR-1 :	HDMI5 1 : EXT-1
VCR-2 :	DVI-D 2 : EXT-2
VCR-3 :	NONE 3 : ANALOG
VCR-4 :	NONE 4 : ANALOG
V.Aux :	NONE 5 : ANALOG

*HDMI/DVI In
Audio : ◀AMP▶

6



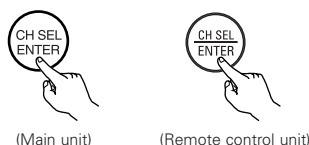
Select the input for the playback of signals when the audio signal of HDMI can not be reproduced. When the audio signal of HDMI has become unlocked, the unit automatically changes over to the set connector (ANALOG or EXT. IN).

1~5 correspond to each HDMI 1~5 input terminal. Select input signal (ANALOG or EXT. IN).

4-1. HDMI/DVI In Assign	
DVD :	HDMI1 [Monitor] : HDMI
VDP :	HDMI2 HDMI
TV :	HDMI3 [Audio] : ◀AMP▶
DBS :	HDMI4 No Signal
VCR-1 :	HDMI5 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 : ◀EXT-1▶
VCR-2 :	DVI-D 2 : EXT-2
VCR-3 :	NONE 3 : ANALOG
VCR-4 :	NONE 4 : ANALOG
V.Aux :	NONE 5 : ANALOG

*HDMI/DVI In
1 : ◀EXT-1▶

7

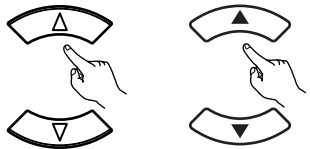


Enter the setting.
The Video Setup menu reappears.

4-2. Setting the Component In Assignment

- This setting assigns the component video input terminal of the AVC-A1XVA for the different input sources.

1



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Component In Assign" at the Video Setup menu.

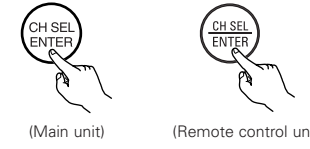
*Video Setup
Component In

4. Video Setup

1. HDMI/DVI In Assign
2. Component In Assign
3. Video Convert Mode
4. HDMI/Component Out
5. Audio Delay
6. On Screen Display

Exit

2



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Component In Assign screen.

*Component In
DVD : 1RCA

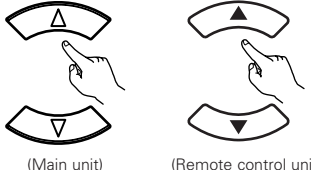
4-2. Component In Assign

DVD	: 1-RCA	VCR-3	: NONE
VDP	: 2-RCA	VCR-4	: NONE
TV	: 3-RCA	V.Aux	: NONE
DBS	: 4-RCA		
VCR-1	: 5-RCA		
VCR-2	: 6-BNC		

Default Yes

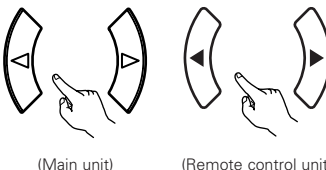
3

① Select the input source.



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

② Select the component video input terminal.

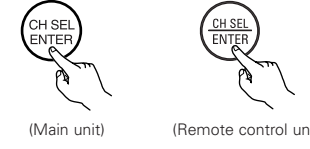


(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select from among 1-RCA to 5-RCA and 6-BNC.
 Select "NONE" for input sources for which the component (Y, Pb/Cb and Pr/Cr) video input is not to be used.
 It is not possible to select the same component video input jack for different sources.
 If the same component video input jack is selected, the setting for the input source that was previously assigned switches to "NONE".

※ If "Yes" is selected for "Default", the settings are reset to the default values.

4



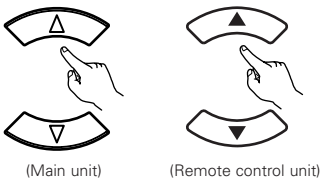
(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.
The Video Setup menu reappears.

4-3. Setting the Video Convert Mode

- Set whether or not to use the video conversion function.

1



Select "Video Convert Mode" at the Video Setup menu.

*Video Setup
Video Convert

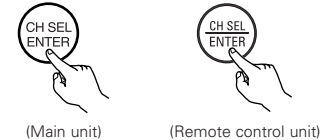
4. Video Setup

1. HDMI/DVI In Assign
2. Component In Assign
3. Video Convert Mode
4. HDMI/Component Out
5. Audio Delay
6. On Screen Display

Exit

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

2



Display the Video Convert Mode screen.

*Video Convert
DVD : 4ON

4-3. Video Convert Mode

DVD	ON	VCR-3	ON
VDP	ON	VCR-4	ON
TV	ON	V.Aux	ON
DBS	ON		
VCR-1	ON		
VCR-2	ON		

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

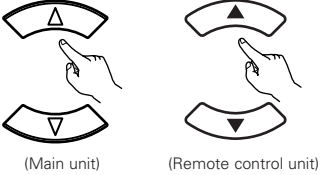
3

① Select the input source for which you want to set the Video Convert Mode.

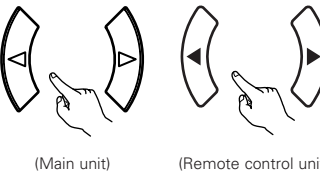
② Select the mode as below.

ON \longleftrightarrow OFF

The details in each mode are as follows.



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

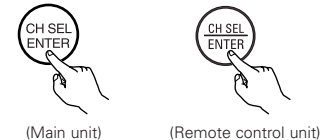
ON : When there are multiple input signals, the input signals are detected and the input signal to be output from the video monitor output terminal is selected automatically in the following order: component video, S-Video, composite video.

OFF : The convert function does not operate.
 The video signal input from the video input jack is only output to the video monitor out jack.
 The S-Video signal input from the S-Video input jack is only output to the S-Video monitor out jack.
 The component input signal input from the component input jacks is only output to the component monitor output terminals.

NOTE:

- Down-converting from the component video signal to the S-Video and composite video signal is possible only when the resolution of a component video signal is 480i / 576i.

4



Enter the setting.
The Video Setup menu reappears.

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

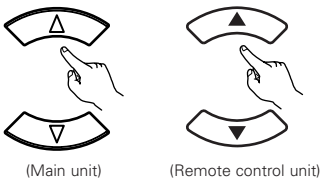
NOTES:

- When a non-standard video signal from a game machine or some other source is input, the video conversion function might not operate. If this happens, please set the conversion mode to OFF.
- When the video conversion function has been used, information such as that of text broadcasts which has been added to the video signal might not be output. If this happens, please set the conversion mode to OFF.

4-4. Setting the HDMI/Component Out

- Set the format of the signal up-converted to the HDMI monitor output or component output terminal.

1



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "HDMI/Component Out" at the Video Setup menu.

44

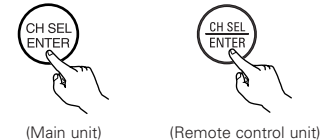
*Video Setup
HDMI/Comp Out

4. Video Setup

1. HDMI/DVI In Assign
2. Component In Assign
3. Video Convert Mode
4. HDMI/Component Out
5. Audio Delay
6. On Screen Display

Exit

2



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the HDMI/Component Out screen.

44

*HDMI/Comp Out
A to HDMI: ON ▶

4-4. HDMI/Component Out

☑ Analog to HDMI Convert ON ◀ ▶ OFF

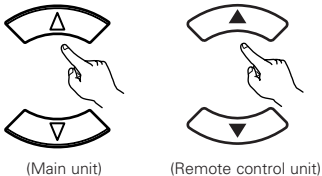
Scaler ◀ HDMI ▶

Aspect ◀ FULL ▶

Resolution ◀ 480p/576p ▶

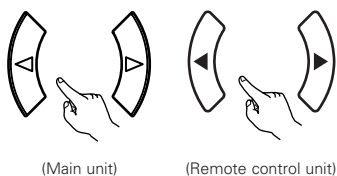
3

① Select the setting.



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

② Select the parameter.



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Analog to HDMI Convert:

- ON** : Setting for converting analog video signals into HDMI signals.
- OFF** : Setting for not converting analog video signals into HDMI signals.

Scaler:

- HDMI** : The i/p scaler can be used when outputting the input analog video signal to the HDMI monitor output terminal.
 - Component** : The i/p scaler can be used when outputting the input analog video signal to the component output terminal.
- ※ When "Analog to HDMI Convert" is set to "OFF", the "Scaler" setting is automatically set to "Component" and fixed there.

Aspect:

- FULL** : The video is output while maintaining the aspect ratio of the input video.
This mode is suited for playing back 16:9 video.
- NORMAL** : A black band is added to the left and right of the input video and the video is output.
This mode is suited for playing back 4:3 video.

Resolution:

- 480p/576p** : When the video signal input is a video, S-Video or 480i/576i component video signal, the resolution is converted to 480p/576p and the signal is output from the monitor output terminal.
- 1080i** : When the video signal input is a video, S-Video or 480i/576i/480p/576p component video signal, the resolution is converted to 1080i and the signal is output from the monitor output terminal.
- 720p** : When the video signal input is a video, S-Video or 480i/576i/480p/576p component video signal, the resolution is converted to 720p and the signal is output from the monitor output terminal.
- 1080p** : The input video signal is converted to a resolution of 1080p for output.
This cannot be selected when "Scaler" is set to "Component".
- Through** : The video signal input is output as such from the monitor output terminal without being converted.

Color Space:

- Y Cb Cr** : The Y Cb Cr format video signals is output via the HDMI output connector.
- RGB** : The RGB format video signals is output via the HDMI output connector.

RGB Mode Setup:

- Normal** : Signals are output via the HDMI output connector with a digital RGB video range (data range) of 16 (black) to 235 (white).
- Enhanced** : Signals are output via the HDMI output connector with a digital RGB video range (data range) of 0 (black) to 255 (white).

- ※ When the HDMI connectors are connected, the black may seem to stand out, depending on the TV or the monitor. In this case, set this to "Enhanced".
- ※ When "Y Cb Cr" is selected under "Color Space", "RGB Mode Setup" will have no effect.
- ※ The aspect ratio setting is valid when the resolution is set to 1080i, 720p or 1080p. To output with other resolutions, set the aspect ratio on the TV.
- ※ When "Through" is set, the signal is output with the same resolution as input from the video, S-Video and component video terminals. The OSD, however, is output with a resolution of 480i, so use a monitor compatible with this resolution.

4



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.
The Video Setup menu reappears.

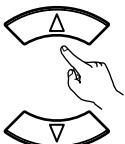
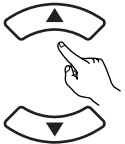
NOTES:

- "Scaler", "Color Space" and "RGB Mode Setup" are only displayed when "Analog to HDMI Convert" is set to "ON".
- When connecting to an HDCP compatible monitor equipped with DVI-D terminal using an HDMI/DVI-D converter cable, the signals are output in RGB format, regardless of the "Color Space" setting.
- To view the on screen display using an HDMI monitor, set "Analog to HDMI Convert" at "HDMI Out Setup" to "ON" (default).
- Set the resolution of the video output to one that is compatible with the resolution of your monitor.
- When "Scaler" is set to "Component" and the video input signal includes copyright protection data, the signal is output from the component video output terminal with a resolution of 480p/576p even if "Resolution" is set to "1080i" or "720p".

4-5. Setting the Audio Delay

- When watching a DVD or other video source, the picture on the monitor may seem delayed with respect to the sound. In this case, adjust the audio delay to delay the sound and synchronize it with the picture.
- The audio delay setting is stored separately for each input source.

1

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Audio Delay" at the Video Setup menu.

*Video Setup 4.5



Audio Delay

4. Video Setup

1. HDMI/DVI In Assign
2. Component In Assign
3. Video Convert Mode
4. HDMI/Component Out
5. Audio Delay
6. On Screen Display

Exit

2

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Audio Delay screen.

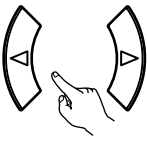
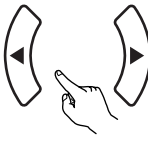
*Audio Delay 4.5

0ms

4-5. Audio Delay

Input Source: DVD ◀ 0ms ▶

3






(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Set the delay time. (0 ms ~ 200 ms)

With a movie source, for example, adjust so that the movement of the actors' lips is synchronized with the sound.

4

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.

The Video Setup menu reappears.

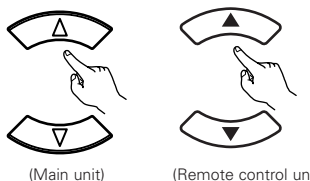
NOTE:

- The audio delay setting does not apply when playing in the EXT. IN mode or in the analog input direct mode or stereo mode (only when the crossover frequency is set to "FIXED-THX-" or front speaker is set to "Large").

4-6. Setting the On Screen Display (OSD)

- Use this to turn the on screen display (messages other than the menu screens) on or off.
- Sets the on screen display's display mode.

1



Select "On Screen Display" at the Video Setup menu.

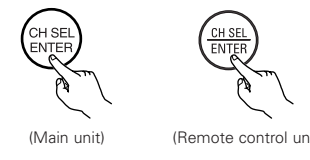
*Video Setup
On Screen

4. Video Setup

1. HDMI/DVI In Assign
2. Component In Assign
3. Video Convert Mode
4. HDMI/Component Out
5. Audio Delay
6. On Screen Display

Exit

2



Display the On Screen Display screen.

*On Screen
Func/Mode: ON

4-6. On Screen Display

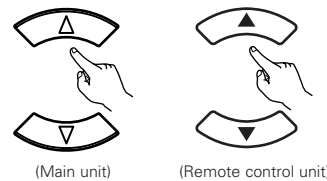
Function/Mode Status
ON OFF

Master Volume Status
ON OFF

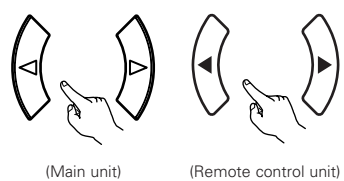
Display Mode
Mode1 Mode2

3

① Select the item to be set.



② Select the parameter.

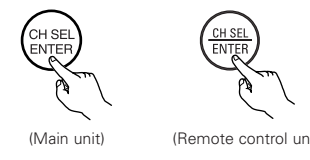


Function/Mode Status :
Set whether or not to turn on the on screen display of the input source name and input mode when an input source is selected.

Master Volume Status :
Set whether or not to turn on the on screen display of the main volume level when the main volume is operated.

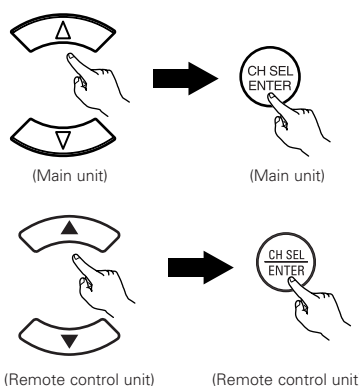
Display Mode :
Mode 1 : Flickering is not prevented.
Mode 2 : Prevents flickering of the on screen display when there is no video signal.
Use this mode if the on screen display does not appear in the Mode 1, as may happen according to the TV being used.

4



Enter the setting.
The Video Setup menu reappears.

5



Select "Exit" and press the ENTER button at the Video Setup menu screen.
The System Setup Menu reappears.

*Video Setup
Exit

4. Video Setup

1. HDMI/DVI In Assign
2. Component In Assign
3. Video Convert Mode
4. HDMI/Component Out
5. Audio Delay
6. On Screen Display

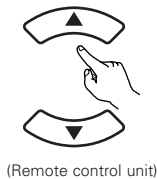
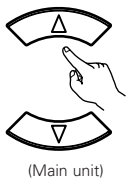
Exit

5

Setting the Advanced Playback

- Makes more detailed audio playback settings.

1



Select "Advanced Playback" at the System Setup Menu.

```
*System Setup      5
Advanced Play
```

System Setup Menu

1. Auto Setup/Room EQ
2. Speaker Setup
3. Audio Input Setup
4. Video Setup
5. Advanced Playback
6. Zone Setup
7. Option Setup
- Exit

2



Display the Advanced Playback menu screen.

```
*Advanced Play      5.1
2ch DRCT/ST
```

5. Advanced Playback

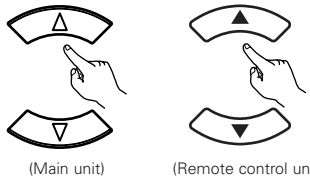
1. 2ch Direct/Stereo
2. Dolby Digital Setup
3. Auto Surround Mode
4. Manual EQ Setup

Exit

5-1. Setting the 2ch Direct/Stereo

- Set this when you want to change the speaker settings when the surround mode is set to the 2-channel Direct or Stereo mode.

1



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "2ch Direct / Stereo" at the Advanced Playback menu.

5.1

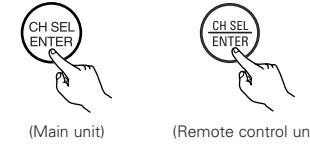
*Advanced Play
2ch DRCT/ST

5. Advanced Playback

- 1. 2ch Direct/Stereo
- 2. Dolby Digital Setup
- 3. Auto Surround Mode
- 4. Manual EQ Setup

Exit

2



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the 2ch Direct / Stereo screen.

5.1

*2ch DRCT/ST
Setting Basic

5-1. 2ch Direct/Stereo

Setting : Basic

Front : Small

Subwoofer : Yes

Subwoofer Mode : LFE+THX-

5-1. 2ch Direct/Stereo

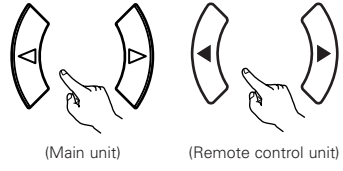
Crossover : THX

Delay FL : 3.60m

FR : 3.60m

Example: This screen is displayed in function of the settings made at "2-1. Speaker Configuration", "2-2. Subwoofer Setup", "2-3. Delay Time" and "2-4. Crossover Frequency".

3



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Custom".

5.1

*2ch DRCT/ST
Setting Custom

5-1. 2ch Direct/Stereo

Setting : Custom

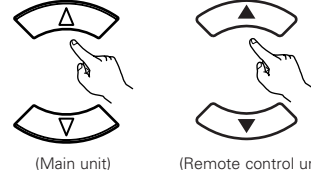
Front : Small

Subwoofer : Yes

Subwoofer Mode : LFE+THX-

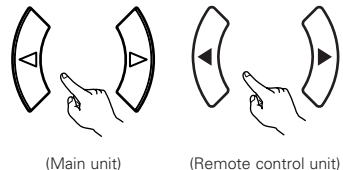
4

① Select the setting.



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

② Select the parameter.



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

5-1. 2ch Direct/Stereo

Setting : Custom

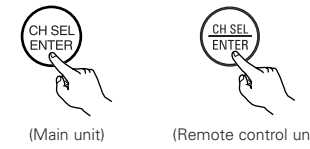
Front B : Used

Front : Large

Subwoofer : Yes

Subwoofer Mode : LFE+Main

5



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.
The Advanced Playback menu reappears.

■ Setting the front B speakers when the surround mode is set to the 2-channel Direct or Stereo

When "Adv+Front B" is selected at "7-2. Power Amp Assign" and "Custom" is selected at this setting, the "Front B" setting is displayed.

- To play signals from the Front B speaker when in the 2-channel Direct or Stereo mode, set "Used".

5-1. 2ch Direct/Stereo

Setting : Custom

Front B : Used

Front : Large

Subwoofer : Yes

Subwoofer Mode : LFE+Main

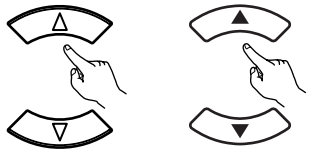
5-2. Setting the Dolby Digital Setup

Sets the down-mixing method when not using a center speaker or surround speakers.

OFF: The dynamic range is not compressed.

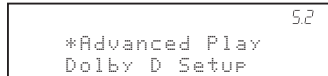
ON: The dynamic range is compressed automatically according to the combination of speakers being used.

- 1**



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

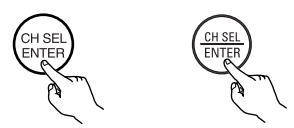
Select "Dolby Digital Setup" at the Advanced Playback menu.



5. Advanced Playback

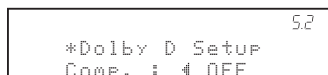
 - 1. 2ch Direct/Stereo
 - 2. Dolby Digital Setup
 - 3. Auto Surround Mode
 - 4. Manual EQ Setup

Exit
- 2**



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

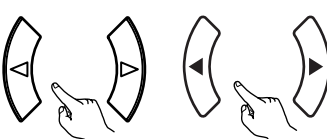
Display the Dolby Digital Setup screen.



5-2. Dolby Digital Downmix Option Setup

Compression

ON : OFF
- 3**

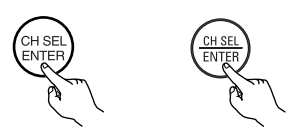


(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "ON" if you want to use the Compression, "OFF" if you do not want to use it.

※ Set "Compression" to "ON" if it seems that sound is distorted because the input level exceeds the allowable input for the front speakers.

NOTE:
When a center speaker or surround speakers are not connected, the sounds in those channels are directed to the front speakers.
- 4**



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.
The Advanced Playback menu reappears.

5-3. Setting the Auto Surround Mode

The surround mode used at last for the four types of input signals shown below is stored in the memory, and the signal is automatically played with that surround mode the next time it is input.

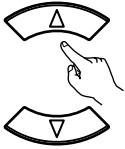

Note that the surround mode setting is also stored separately for the different input sources.

- ① Analog and PCM 2-channel signals (STEREO)
- ② 2-channel signals of Dolby Digital, DTS or other multi-channel format (DOLBY PLIIx cinema)
- ③ Multi-channel signals of Dolby Digital, DTS or other multi-channel format (DOLBY/DTS SURROUND)
- ④ PCM and DSD multi-channel signals other than Dolby Digital and DTS (MULTI CH IN)

※ Default settings are indicated in ().

※ During playback in the PURE DIRECT mode, the surround mode does not change even if the input signal is changed.

1

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Auto Surround Mode" at the Advanced Playback menu.

5.3

*Advanced Play
Auto Surround

5. Advanced Playback

1. 2ch Direct/Stereo



2. Dolby Digital Setup

3. Auto Surround Mode

4. Manual EQ Setup

Exit

2

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Auto Surround Mode screen.

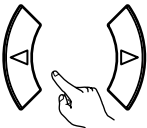
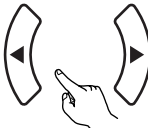
5.3

*Auto Surround
ON/OFF: ON

5-3. Auto Surround Mode

ON ◀ : ▶ OFF



3

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)


Select "ON" if you want to use the auto surround mode, "OFF" if you do not want to use it.

4

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.
The Advanced Playback menu reappears.



(Remote control unit)

※ Contents stored in the auto surround mode can be checked with the on screen display.

Auto Surround Mode CD

ANALOG PCM

2ch: STEREO

MULTI Ch: MULTI CH IN

DIGITAL

2ch: DOLBY PLIIx cinema

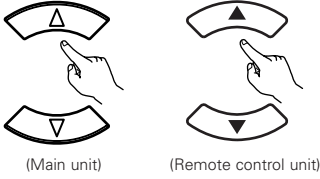
5. 1ch: DOLBY/DTS SURROUND

OSD-4

5-4. Setting the Manual EQ Setup

- Allows you to adjust the tonal quality of the various speakers (except the subwoofer) while listening to a music source.

1



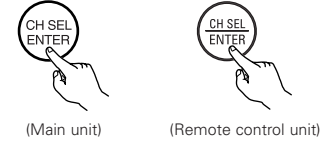
(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Manual EQ Setup" at the Advanced Playback menu.

5.4
*Advanced Play
Manual EQ Setup

5. Advanced Playback
1. 2ch Direct/Stereo
2. Dolby Digital Setup
3. Auto Surround Mode
4. Manual EQ Setup
Exit

2



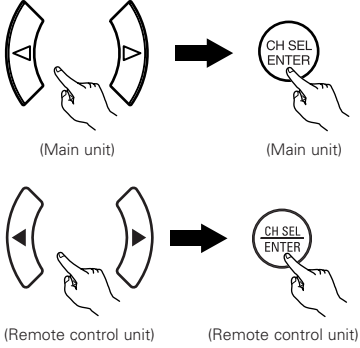
(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Manual EQ screen.

5.4
*Manual EQ
Adjust CH L/R

5-4. Manual EQ
Default Yes
Base Curve Copy
Adjust CH L/R
Exit

3

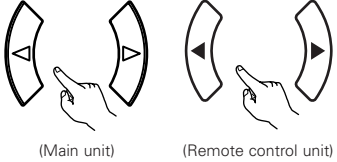


(Main unit) (Main unit)
(Remote control unit) (Remote control unit)

Select the adjustment mode, then press the ENTER button.

All CH : All channels can be adjusted simultaneously.
L/R CH : The left and right channels of the pair of speakers can be adjusted simultaneously.
Each CH : The channels can be adjusted separately.

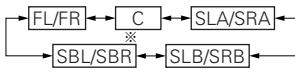
4



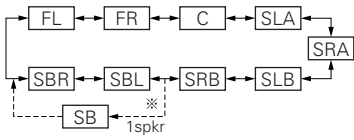
(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select the speaker to be set.
The display changes as follows.

① Select "L/R CH"



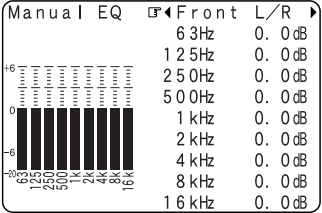
② Select "Each CH"



③ Select "All CH"

In this case, speaker selection is not performed.
 ※ If a value is already set for the FL channel, the data stored for the FL channel is displayed.

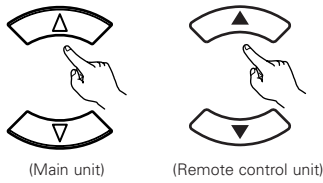
Manual EQ



Example: When "L/R CH" is selected.

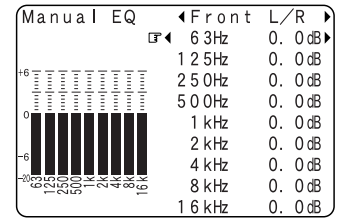
5.4
*Manual EQ: L/R
Front L/R

5

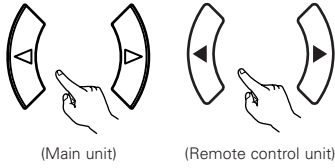


Select the frequency.

*Manual EQ:L/R
63Hz : 0.0dB



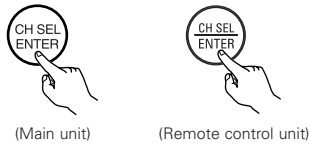
6



Use the cursor left and right buttons to adjust the Gain level.

- Each frequency can be adjusted the range from -20 dB to +6 dB in 0.5 dB step.

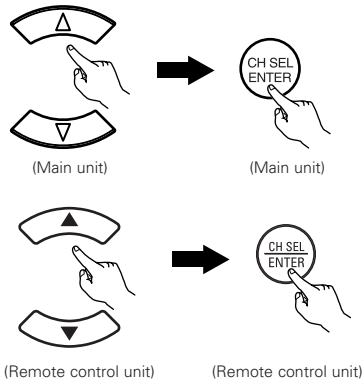
7



Enter the setting.

The Manual EQ screen reappears.

8



Select "Exit", then press the ENTER button.
The Advanced Playback menu reappears.

*Manual EQ
Exit

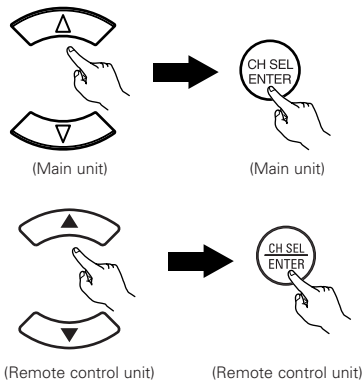
5-4. Manual EQ

Default Yes

Adjust CH L/R CH

Exit

9



Select "Exit" and press the ENTER button at the
Advanced Playback menu screen.
The System Setup Menu reappears.

*Advanced Play
Exit

5. Advanced Playback

1. 2ch Direct/Stereo

2. Dolby Digital Setup

3. Auto Surround Mode

4. Manual EQ Setup

Exit

※ To restore the settings to their defaults, select "Default Yes" then press the cursor left button.

5-4. Manual EQ

Default Yes

Base Curve Copy



Adjust CH L/R CH

Exit

■ Procedure for copying the “Flat” correction curve set at “Auto Setup”, then using the graphic equalizer to adjust manually

NOTE: If the “Auto Setup” procedure has not been performed, this item is not displayed.

- 1**

Select “Base Curve Copy”.

5.4

*Manual EQ
BaseCurve Copy◀



5-4. Manual EQ

Default Yes◀

▣Base Curve Copy◀

Adjust CH ◀L/R CH ▶

Exit
- 2**

The Base Curve Select screen appears when the cursor left button is pressed.

5.4


*Base Curve
Copy?:◀ No

5-4. Manual EQ


Curve: -Flat-

▣Base Curve Copy?



Yes◀:▶No
- 3**




(Main unit)




(Remote control unit)



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select “Base Curve Copy?”, then press the cursor left button to select “Yes”.

5.4



*Base Curve
Copy?: Yes ▶

5-4. Manual EQ

Curve: -Flat-

Base Curve Copy?

▣Yes◀:▶No
- 4**

Enter the setting.

The Manual EQ screen reappears.

The type of the copied correction curve is displayed in the upper right of this screen.

5-4. Manual EQ (-Flat-)

Default Yes◀

Base Curve Copy◀

▣Adjust CH ◀L/R CH ▶

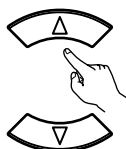
Exit

6

Setting the Zone Setup (ZONE2 = 5.1/7.1ch)

- Make the settings related to surround playback and video for ZONE2.
- Adjust the sound played in ZONE3 and ZONE4.

1



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select "Zone Setup" at the System Setup Menu.

```
*System Setup      6
Zone Setup
```

System Setup Menu

1. Auto Setup/Room EQ
2. Speaker Setup
3. Audio Input Setup
4. Video Setup
5. Advanced Playback
6. Zone Setup
7. Option Setup
- Exit

2



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Display the Zone Setup menu screen.

```
*Zone Setup      6.1
Z2 Sp Config.
```

6. Zone Setup

1. Speaker Config.
2. Subwoofer Mode
3. Delay Time
4. Channel Level
5. Crossover Frequency
6. Video Setup
7. Zone3/4 Tone/Ch Lev.
- Exit

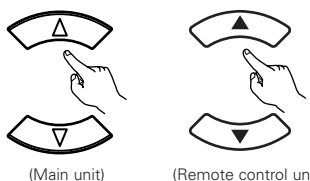
NOTE:

- When "STEREO" or "MONO" is selected for the ZONE2 channel output setting at "7-1. Channel Setup" (see pages 96 ~ 99), the menu screen displayed differs. In this case, see the instructions starting at page 95.

6-1. Setting the type of speakers for ZONE2

- The composition of the signals output to each channels and the frequency response are adjusted automatically according to the combination of speakers actually being used in ZONE2.

1



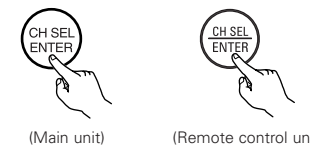
(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Speaker Config." at the Zone Setup menu.

*Zone Setup
Z2 Sp Config.

6. Zone Setup
 1. Speaker Config.
 2. Subwoofer Mode
 3. Delay Time
 4. Channel Level
 5. Crossover Frequency
 6. Video Setup
 7. Zone3/4 Tone/Ch Lev.
 Exit

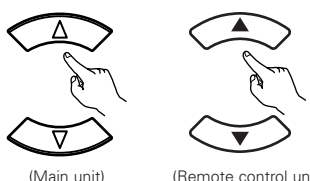
2



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Speaker Config. screen as below.

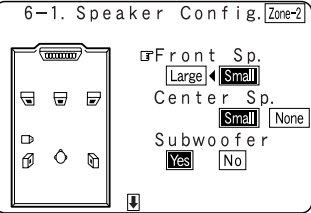
3

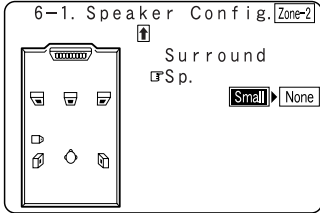


(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Set whether speakers are connected or not in ZONE2 and their size parameters.
Select the speakers connected in ZONE2 and the size parameters.

① Select the speaker.

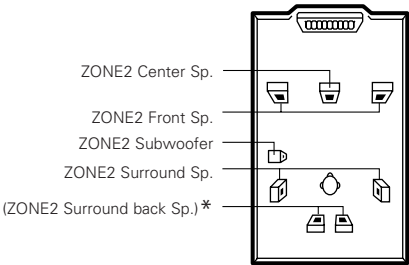
6-1. Speaker Config. Zone-2


6-1. Speaker Config. Zone-2


*Z2 Sp Config.
Front : 4Small

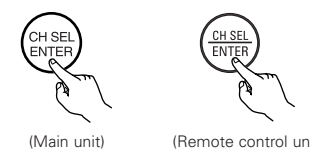
② Select the parameter.

※ For a description of the different parameters, see page 50.



* This is only displayed when "7.1ch" is selected for the ZONE2 channel output setting at "7-1. Channel Setup". (See pages 96 ~ 99)

4



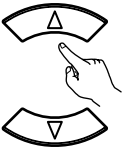

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.
The Zone Setup menu reappears.

6-2. Setting the low frequency distribution for ZONE2

- Set the subwoofer mode according to the speaker systems used in ZONE2.

1

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)



Select "Subwoofer Mode" at the Zone Setup menu.

6.2
 *Zone Setup
 Z2 SW Mode

6. Zone Setup

1. Speaker Config.
2. Subwoofer Mode
3. Delay Time
4. Channel Level
5. Crossover Frequency
6. Video Setup
7. Zone3/4 Tone/Ch Lev.
- Exit

2

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Subwoofer Mode screen.

6.2
 *Z2 SW Mode
 LFE

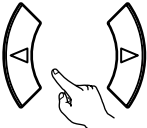
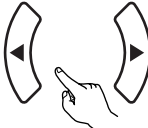
6-2. Subwoofer Mode Zone-2

LFE

◀ ▶

LFE
+Main

3



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select the setting.

LFE :
 For any channel(s) that are set to LARGE, low frequencies in that channel's corresponding source are directed to that loudspeaker only. Low frequencies that are directed to the subwoofer(s) are from the program source LFE channel, and from other channels where the speakers are set to SMALL.

LFE + Main :
 Low frequencies from speaker channels that have been set to LARGE are reproduced from those speakers as well as from the subwoofer(s). Depending upon the characteristics of the LARGE main speakers, this mode may provide a more even low frequency response throughout the listening room.

4

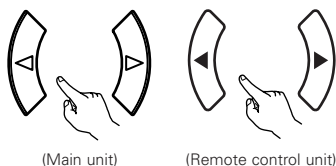
(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.
 The Zone Setup menu reappears.

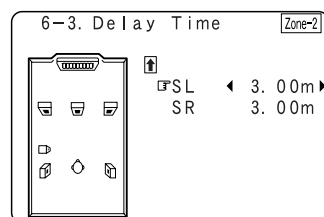
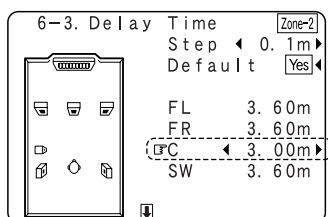
NOTE:

- The subwoofer mode setting is only valid when "Large" is set for the ZONE2 front speakers and "Yes" is set for the subwoofer in the "6-1. Speaker Configuration" settings. (See page 85)

6



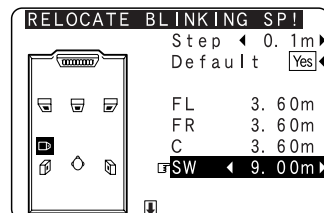
Set the distance between the center speaker and listening position.
The distance changes in units of 0.1 meters (1 foot) or 0.01 meters (0.1 foot) each time the button is pressed. Select the value closest to the measured distance.



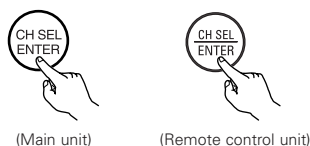
Example: When the distance is set to 3.0 m for the center speaker

- ※ When "Step" is selected, you can select the unit of "0.1 m (1 ft)" or "0.01 m (0.1 ft)".
- ※ When "Yes" is selected for "Default", then press the cursor left button to reset to the default values.

Please note that the difference of distance for every speaker should be 6.0 m (20 ft) or less. If you set an invalid distance, a CAUTION notice, such as screen right will appear. In this case, please relocate the blinking speaker(s) so that its distance is no larger than the value shown in highlighted line.



7

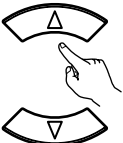
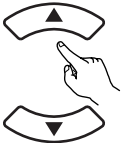


Enter the setting.
The Zone Setup menu reappears.
The AVC-A1XVA automatically sets the optimum surround delay time for the ZONE2 listening room.

6-4. Setting the Channel Level for ZONE2

- Use this setting to adjust so that the playback level between the different channels of ZONE2 is equal.
- From the ZONE2 listening position, listen to the test tones produced from the speakers used in ZONE2 to adjust the level.
- The level can also be adjusted directly from the Remote control unit. (For details, see pages 173, 174.)

1

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Channel Level" at the Zone Setup menu.



6.4

*Zone Setup
Z2 Channel Lev.

6. Zone Setup

1. Speaker Config.
2. Subwoofer Mode
3. Delay Time
4. Channel Level
5. Crossover Frequency
6. Video Setup
7. Zone3/4 Tone/Ch Lev.
- Exit

2

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Channel Level screen.

6.4

*Z2 Channel Lev
T.Tone: Auto ▶

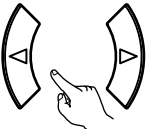
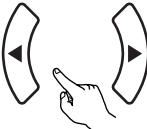
6-4. Channel Level Zone-2

Test Tone Auto ◀ ▶ Manual

Test Tone Start Yes ◀

Level Clear Yes ◀

3

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select the mode.
Select "Auto" or "Manual".

6.4

*Z2 Channel Lev
T.Tone: Auto ▶

6-4. Channel Level Zone-2

Test Tone Auto ◀ ▶ Manual

Test Tone Start Yes ◀

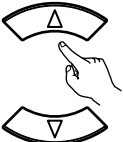
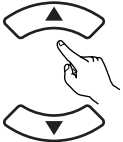
Level Clear Yes ◀

Auto :
Adjust the level while listening to the test tones produced automatically from each speaker.

Manual :
Select the speaker from which you want to produce the test tone to adjust the level.

Example: When the "Auto" mode is selected

4

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Test Tone Start".

6.4

*Z2 Channel Lev
Tone Start: Yes ◀



6-4. Channel Level Zone-2

Test Tone Auto ◀ ▶ Manual

Test Tone Start Yes ◀

Level Clear Yes ◀

5

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Yes".

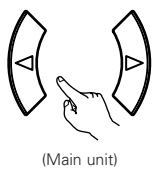
6-4. Channel Level Zone-2

Test Tone Auto ◀ ▶ Manual

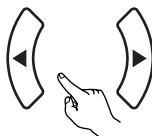
Test Tone Start Yes ◀

Level Clear Yes ◀

6



(Main unit)

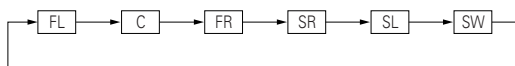


(Remote control unit)

a. When "Auto" mode is selected:

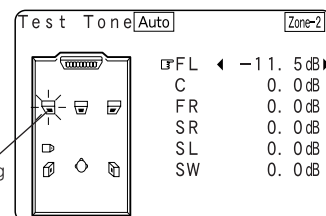
Test tones are automatically emitted from each speaker used in ZONE2.

The test tones are emitted from each speaker in the following order, at 4-second intervals the first time and second time around, 2-second intervals the third time around and on:

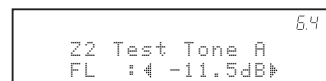


Use the cursor left and right buttons to adjust all the speakers to the same volume.

The volume can be adjusted between -12 dB and +12 dB in units of 0.5 dB.



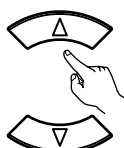
Example: When the volume is set to -11.5 dB while the test tone is being produced from the Front Lch speaker



b. When "Manual" mode is selected:

① Select the speaker used in ZONE2.

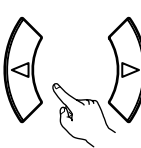
② Adjust all the speakers to the same volume.



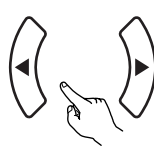
(Main unit)



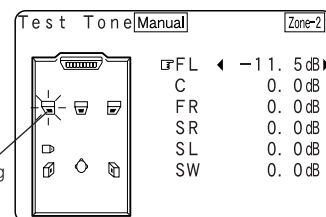
(Remote control unit)



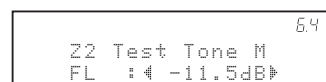
(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)



Example: "Manual" mode is selected.



7



(Main unit)

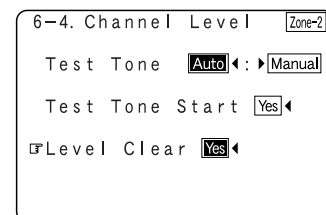


(Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.

The Channel Level screen reappears.

※ To cancel the settings, press the cursor down button to select "Level Clear" and "Yes" on the "Channel Level" screen, then make the settings again.



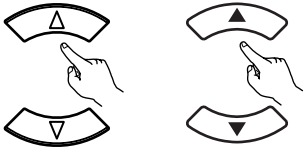
NOTES:

- When adjusting the level of an active subwoofer system, you may also need to adjust the subwoofer's own volume control.
- When you adjust the channel levels while in the SYSTEM SETUP CHANNEL LEVEL mode, the channel level adjustments made will affect all surround modes for ZONE2.
- After you have completed the SYSTEM SETUP CHANNEL LEVEL adjustments, you can then activate the individual surround modes and adjust channel levels that will be remembered for each of those modes. Then, whenever you activate a particular surround sound mode, your preferred channel level adjustments for just that mode will be recalled. Check the instructions for adjusting channel levels within each surround mode. (See pages 173, 174)
- You can adjust the channel levels for each of the following surround modes for ZONE2: STEREO, DOLBY/DTS SURROUND, 5/7 CH STEREO, WIDE SCREEN, SUPER STADIUM, ROCK ARENA, JAZZ CLUB, CLASSIC CONCERT, MONO MOVIE, VIDEO GAME, MATRIX and VIRTUAL.

6-5. Setting the Crossover Frequency for ZONE2

- Set the frequency (in Hz) below which deep bass appearing in the main channels will be routed to the ZONE2 subwoofer.

1



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

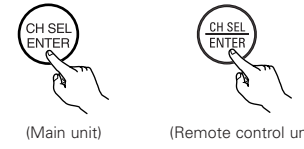
Select the "Crossover Frequency" at the Zone Setup menu.

*Zone Setup
 Z2 Crossover
 6.5

6. Zone Setup

1. Speaker Config.
2. Subwoofer Mode
3. Delay Time
4. Channel Level
5. Crossover Frequency
6. Video Setup
7. Zone3/4 Tone/Ch Lev.
- Exit

2



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

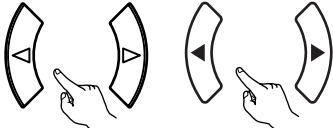
Display the Crossover Frequency screen.

*Z2 Crossover
 6.5
 80Hz

6-5. Crossover Frequency Zone-2

Variable
 80Hz

3



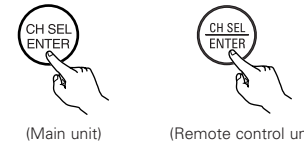
(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select the frequency.

Variable 40, 60, 80, 100, 120, 150, 200, 250 Hz :

Set as desired according to your speakers' bass playback ability.

4



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.

The Zone Setup menu reappears.

NOTES:

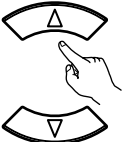
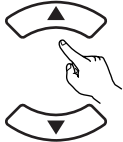
- For the majority of home theater speaker systems, we recommend that the crossover frequency be set to 80 Hz. When using very compact speakers, however, it may be advantageous to select a higher crossover frequency. Check the specified low frequency limit of each speaker (usually published in the specifications tables in speaker owner's manuals).
- The crossover frequency mode is valid only when subwoofer is set to ON, and when one or more speakers are set to SMALL, as described in section "6-1. Speaker Configuration" settings. (See page 85)

6-6. Setting the Video Setup for ZONE2

[1] Video Convert Mode (ZONE2)

- Set whether or not to use the video conversion function for the signal output to the ZONE2 monitor output terminal.

1



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Video Setup" at the Zone Setup menu.

6.6
 *Zone Setup
 Z2 Video Setup

6. Zone Setup
 1. Speaker Config.
 2. Subwoofer Mode
 3. Delay Time
 4. Channel Level
 5. Crossover Frequency
 6. Video Setup
 7. Zone3/4 Tone/Ch Lev.
 Exit

2

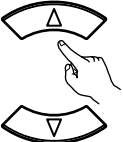
(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Video Setup screen.

6.6
 *Z2 Video Setup
 Z2 Video Conv.


6-6. Video Setup Zone-2
 Video Convert Mode
 Audio Delay
 Exit

3




(Main unit)

→




(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

→



(Remote control unit)

Select "Video Convert Mode", then press the ENTER button.
Display the Video Convert Mode.

6.6
 *Z2 Video Conv.
 DVD : ◀ ON ▶

6-6. Video Convert Mode Zone-2
 DVD : ◀ ON ▶
 VDP : ON
 TV : ON
 DBS : ON
 VCR-1 : ON
 VCR-2 : ON
 VCR-3 : ON
 VCR-4 : ON
 V.Aux : ON

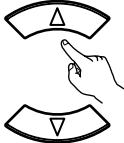

4

① Select the ZONE2 input source.

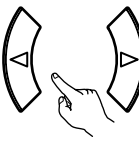
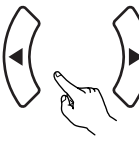
② Select the mode as below.

ON ←→ OFF

The details in each mode are as follows.

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

ON

OFF

: When there are multiple input signals for the input sources selected at ZONE2, the input signal is detected and the input signal output to the ZONE2's monitor output terminal is selected automatically, in the following order of priority: Component, S-Video, Composite.

: The convert function does not operate.
The video signal of the input source selected at ZONE2 is only output to the ZONE2 video monitor output terminal.
The S-Video signal selected at ZONE2 is only output to the ZONE2 S-Video monitor output terminal.

5



(Main unit)



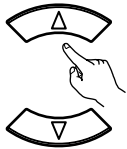
(Remote control unit)

Press the ENTER button to return to the Video Setup screen.

[2] Audio Delay (ZONE2)

- Set this if it seems there is a delay in the picture on the monitor screen with respect to the sound when watching a DVD or other video source in the ZONE2 listening room. Adjust the audio delay to delay the sound and synchronize the sound and picture.
- The audio delay setting is stored in the memory individually for the different input sources selected at ZONE2.

1



(Main unit)

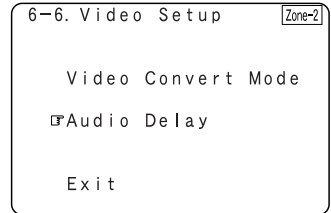


(Remote control unit)

Select "Audio Delay" at the Video Setup screen.

```

6.6
*Z2 Video Setup
Z2 Audio Delay
  
```



2



(Main unit)

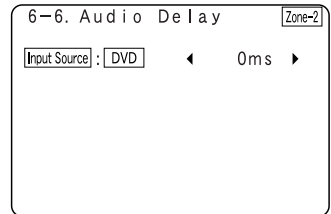


(Remote control unit)

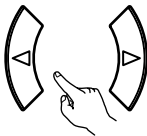
Display the Audio Delay screen.

```

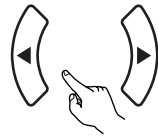
6.6
*Z2 Audio Delay
  0ms
  
```



3



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Set the delay time. (0 ms ~ 200 ms)

With a movie source, for example, adjust so that the movement of the actors' lips is synchronized with the sound.

4



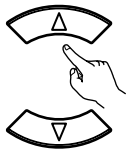
(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Press the ENTER button to return to the Video Setup screen.

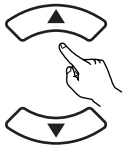
5



(Main unit)



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

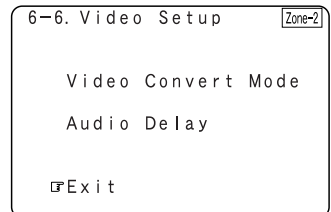


(Remote control unit)

Select "Exit", then press the ENTER button to return the Zone Setup menu screen.

```

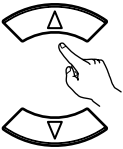

6.6
*Z2 Video Setup
Exit
  
```



6-7. ZONE3 and ZONE4 tone control and channel level setting

- Adjust the sound output from ZONE3 and ZONE4.

1

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Zone3/4 Tone/Ch Lev." at the Zone Setup menu.



6.7

*Zone Setup
Zone3/4

6. Zone Setup

1. Speaker Config.
2. Subwoofer Mode
3. Delay Time
4. Channel Level
5. Crossover Frequency
6. Video Setup
7. Zone3/4 Tone/Ch Lev.
- Exit

2

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Zone3/4 Tone/Ch Lev. screen.

6.7

*Zone3/4
Z3 Tone/Ch Lev.

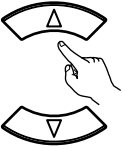
6-7. Zone3/4 Tone/Ch Lev.

Zone3 Tone/Ch Lev.


Zone4 Tone/Ch Lev.

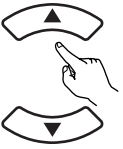
Exit

3



 (Main unit)

➡


 (Main unit)


 (Remote control unit)

➡


 (Remote control unit)

Select the Zone whose sound you want to adjust. (ZONE3, ZONE4)
Switch to the setting screen.

6.7

*Z3 Tone/Ch Lev
Bass : 4 0dB

6-7. Zone3 Tone/Ch Lev.

Bass ◀ 0dB ▶

Treble ◀ 0dB ▶

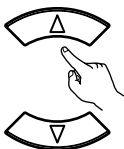
HPF ◀ OFF ▶


Lch Lev. ◀ 0dB ▶

Rch Lev. ◀ 0dB ▶

Example: When "Zone3" is selected

4


 (Main unit)

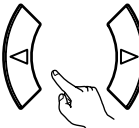

 (Remote control unit)

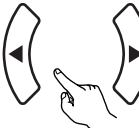
① Select the item to be set.

6.7

*Z3 Tone/Ch Lev
Bass : 4 0dB

② Adjust the parameter.


 (Main unit)


 (Remote control unit)



Bass : Adjust the tone for the bass.

Treble : Adjust the tone for the treble.
(The bass or treble sound can be adjusted between -12 dB and +12 dB in steps of 2.0 dB.)

HPF : Set this to "ON" if your speakers do not have a very strong capacity for producing low bass. Using the high pass filter makes it possible to reduce distortion of the bass sound.

Channel Level : Set so that the playback level is the same for the left and right channels.
(The volume can adjusted between -12 dB and +12 dB in steps of 1.0 dB.)

5

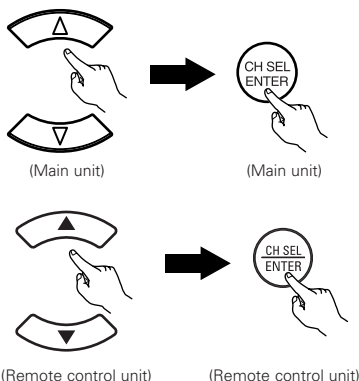



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Press the ENTER button to return to the Zone3/4 Tone/Ch Lev. screen.

※ Use the same procedure to make the settings for ZONE4.

6



Select "Exit" then press the ENTER button.
The Zone Setup menu reappears.

```
*Zone3/4
Exit
```

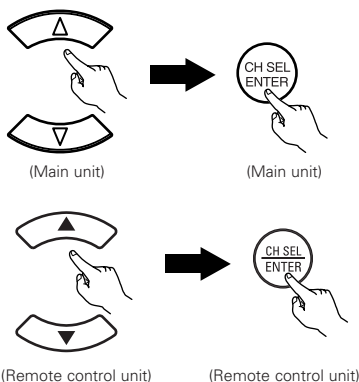
6-7. Zone3/4 Tone/Ch Lev.

Zone3 Tone/Ch Lev.

Zone4 Tone/Ch Lev.

Exit

7



Select "Exit" and press the ENTER button at Zone Setup menu screen.
The System Setup Menu reappears.

```
*Zone Setup
Exit
```

6. Zone Setup

1. Speaker Config.
 2. Subwoofer Mode
 3. Delay Time
 4. Channel Level
 5. Crossover Frequency
 6. Video Setup
 7. Zone3/4 Tone/Ch Lev.
- Exit

■ "Zone Setup" setting when ZONE2 is set to "STEREO" or "MONO"

The "Zone Setup" screen shown below is displayed when "STEREO" or "MONO" is selected for the ZONE2 channel setting at "7-1. Channel Setup".

```
*Zone Setup
Z2 Tone/Ch Lev.
```

6. Zone Setup

1. Zone2 Tone/Ch Lev.
2. Zone3 Tone/Ch Lev.
3. Zone4 Tone/Ch Lev.
4. Video Setup

Exit

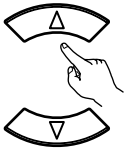
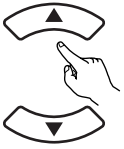
- For instructions on making the ZONE2, 3 and 4 "Tone/Ch Level" settings (items 1 to 3).
- For instructions on the "Video Setup" (item 4), see pages 92, 93.

7

Setting the Option Setup

- Make other expert settings.

1

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)



Select "Option Setup" at the System Setup Menu.

*System Setup
Option Setup

System Setup Menu

1. Auto Setup/Room EQ
2. Speaker Setup
3. Audio Input Setup
4. Video Setup
5. Advanced Playback
6. Zone Setup
7. Option Setup
- Exit

2

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Option Setup menu screen.

*Option Setup
Channel Setup

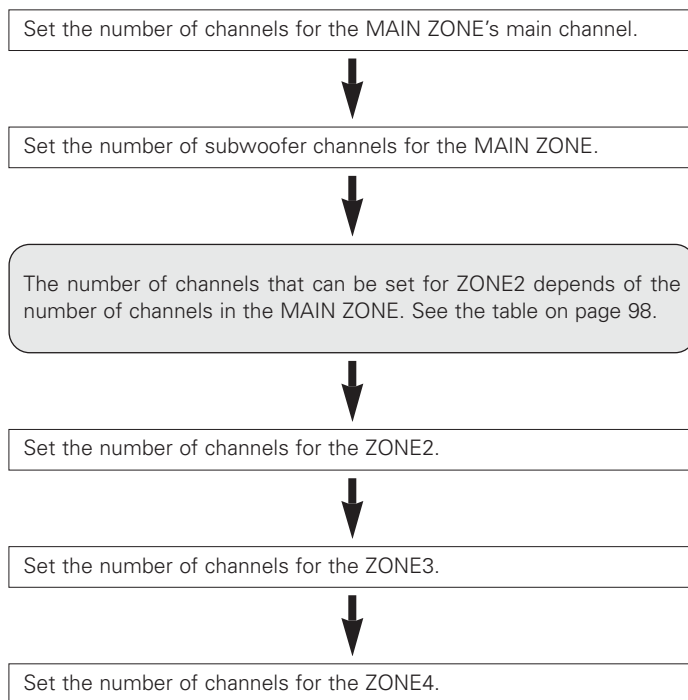
7. Option Setup

1. Channel Setup
2. Power Amp Assign
3. Volume Control
4. Trigger Out
5. AC Outlet Assign
6. Setup Memory/Lock
7. Network Setup
- Exit

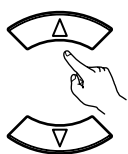
7-1. Setting the Channel setup

- With this setting it is possible to change the number of channels played in the different zones according to the purpose.
The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with pre-out connectors for a total of 22 channels.
16 channel of these pre-out connectors can be assigned between the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 (Theater). In addition, up to three channels of subwoofers can be added to the MAIN ZONE, so subwoofers can be set in the front and back or at the sides. The number of channels output from the pre-out connectors exclusively for ZONE2, 3 and 4 can be set to "MONO" or "STEREO" according to the method of playback in the various multi-zones.

Channel setup flow



1



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select "Channel Setup" at the Option Setup menu.

```
*Option Setup 7.1
Channel Setup
```

7. Option Setup

- 1. Channel Setup
- 2. Power Amp Assign
- 3. Volume Control
- 4. Trigger Out
- 5. AC Outlet Assign
- 6. Setup Memory/Lock
- 7. Network Setup
- Exit

2



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Display the Channel Setup screen.

```
*Channel Setup 7.1
Main : 9.1CH
```

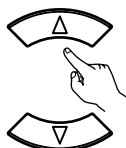
7-1. Channel Setup

```
Main Zone
Main 9.1CH
Subwoofer 1SP

Zone2 5.1CH
Zone3 Stereo
Zone4 Stereo
```

3

① Select the Zone.



(Main unit)

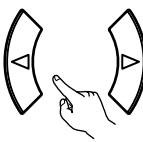


(Remote control unit)

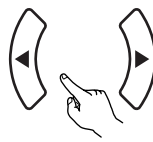
② Select the channel setting.

Also select the number of subwoofers and the output composition to be used in the MAIN ZONE.

Refer to the table on page 98.



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

7-1. Channel Setup

```
Main Zone
Main 9.1CH
Subwoofer 3SP L/R/LFE

Zone2 Stereo
Zone3 Stereo
Zone4 Stereo
```

4



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.
The Option Setup menu reappears.

■ The number of channels that can be selected for the different zones is as shown below.

MAIN ZONE		ZONE2	ZONE3	ZONE4
Main	Subwoofer			
9.1 CH	1 SP	5.1 CH / STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO
	2 SP	STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO
	3 SP	STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO
7.1 CH	1 SP	7.1 CH / 5.1 CH / STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO
	2 SP	5.1 CH / STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO
	3 SP	5.1 CH / STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO
5.1 CH	1 SP	7.1 CH / 5.1 CH / STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO
	2 SP	7.1 CH / 5.1 CH / STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO
	3 SP	7.1 CH / 5.1 CH / STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO	STEREO / MONO

NOTE:

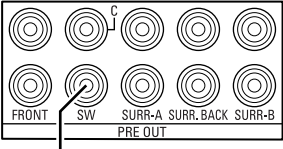
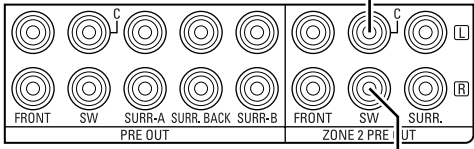
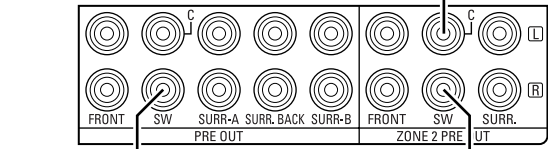
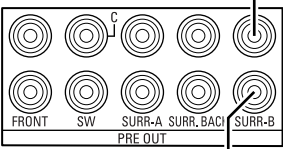
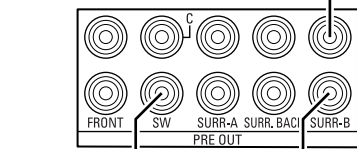
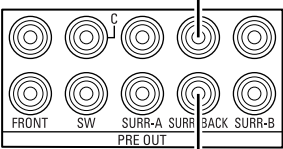
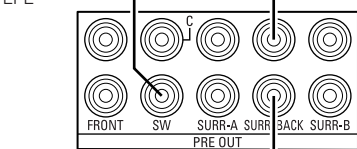
- The channel settings that can be selected for ZONE2 depend on the channel settings for the MAIN ZONE.

■ The subwoofer output composition is as shown below.

Subwoofer	Output Composition	
1 SP	–	Select this when only one subwoofer is connected.
2 SP	L/R	Select this when subwoofers are installed on the left and right.
	F/B	Select this when subwoofers are installed at the front and rear.
	LFE/M	Select this to use the subwoofer for both the main channel's low frequencies and for LFE low frequencies.
3 SP	L/R/LFE	Select this when subwoofers are installed on the left and right and you are using a subwoofer specifically for the LFE.
	F/B/LFE	Select this when subwoofers are installed at the front and rear and you are using a subwoofer specifically for the LFE.

■ Connecting the preouts

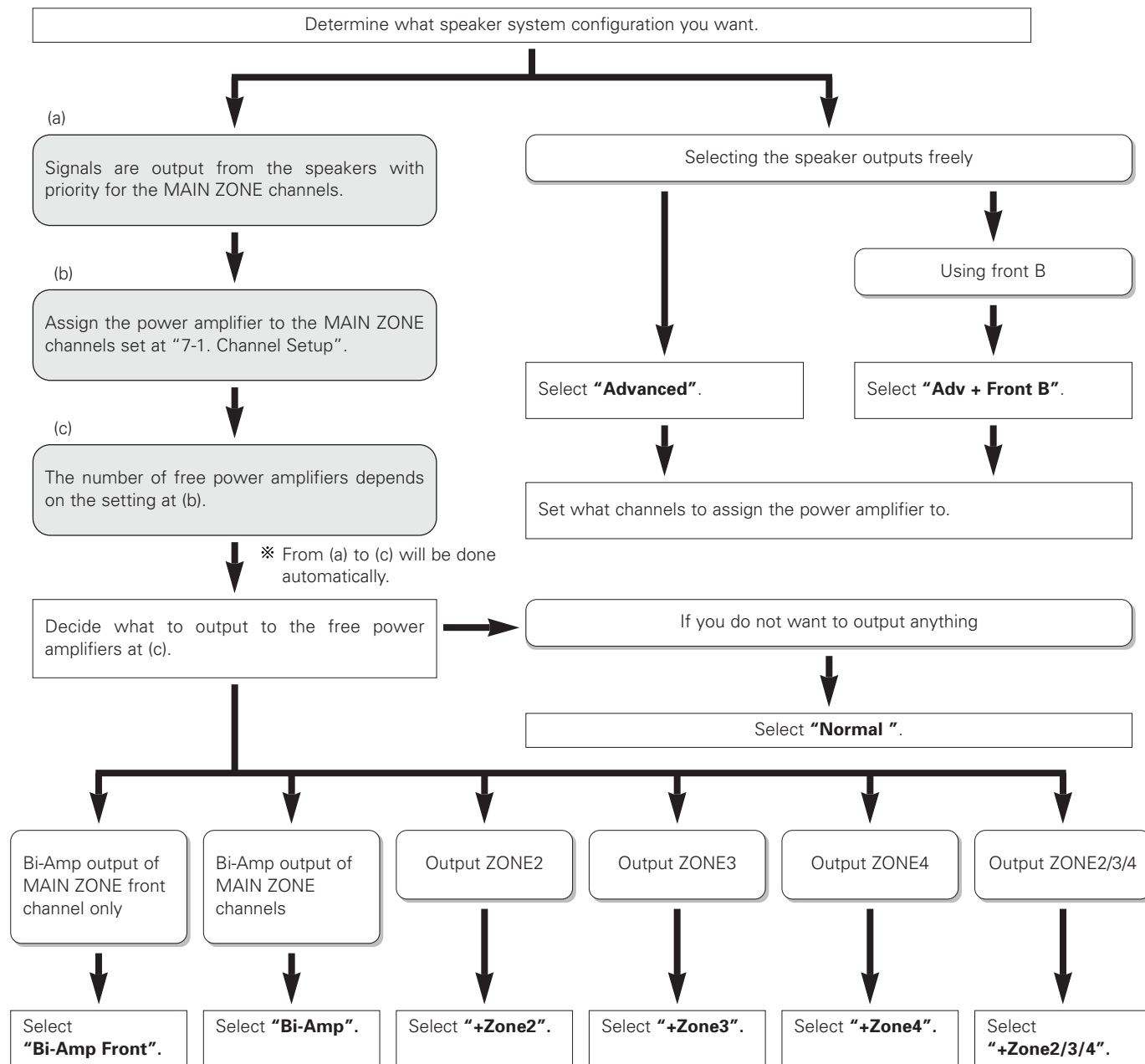
The pre-out connector used to connect the subwoofer depends on the MAIN ZONE's channel setup. Connect as shown on the diagram below.

Channel Setup		Connection
Main	Subwoofer	
9.1 CH / 7.1 CH / 5.1 CH	1 SP	 <p>Subwoofer</p>
9.1 CH	2 SP	 <p>Subwoofer(L/F/M)</p> <p>Subwoofer(R/B/LFE)</p>
	3 SP	 <p>Subwoofer(L/F)</p> <p>Subwoofer(R/B)</p>
7.1 CH	2 SP	 <p>Subwoofer(L/F/M)</p> <p>Subwoofer(R/B/LFE)</p>
	3 SP	 <p>Subwoofer(L/F)</p> <p>Subwoofer(R/B)</p>
5.1 CH	2 SP	 <p>Subwoofer(L/F/M)</p> <p>Subwoofer(R/B/LFE)</p>
	3 SP	 <p>Subwoofer(L/F)</p> <p>Subwoofer(R/B)</p>

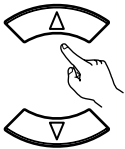
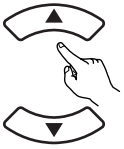
7-2. Setting the Power Amplifier Assignment

- With the AVC-A1XVA's 10-channel power amplifier, it is possible to select 10 channels worth of signals (not including the subwoofer signals output from the pre-out connectors) to be output from the speakers. This makes it possible to put together various speaker systems. The channels can be selected freely, so "L1" to "L5" and "R1" to "R5" are indicated on the speaker terminals on the AVC-A1XVA's rear panel.
- The channels for which the power amplifier can be assigned differ according to the channel settings made at "7-1. Channel Setup". (See pages 96 ~ 99)

■ Power amplifier assignment flow



1

(Main unit)

(Remote control unit)

Select "Power Amp Assign" at the Option Setup menu.



*Option Setup 7.2

P.AMP Assign

7. Option Setup

1. Channel Setup
2. Power Amp Assign
3. Volume Control
4. Trigger Out
5. AC Outlet Assign
6. Setup Memory/Lock
7. Network Setup
- Exit

2

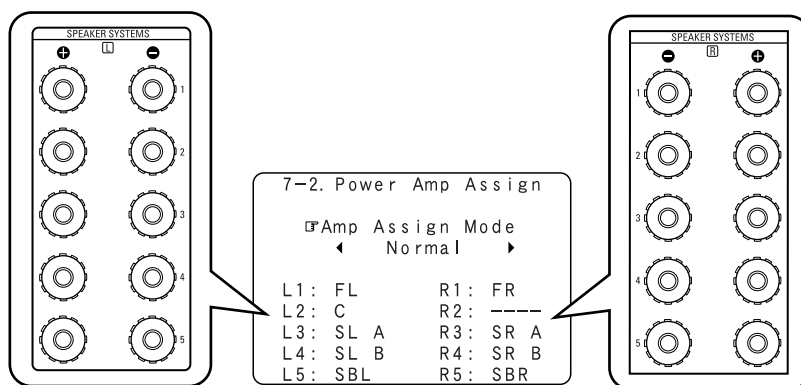
(Main unit)

(Remote control unit)

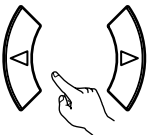
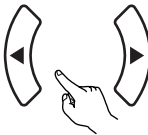
Display the Power Amp Assign screen.

*P.AMP Assign 7.2

◀ Normal ▶



3

(Main unit)

(Remote control unit)

Select the Amp Assign mode according to the speaker system you want to achieve. One of the following modes can be selected: "Normal", "+Zone2", "+Zone3", "+Zone4", "+Zone2/3", "+Zone3/4", "+Zone2/4", "+Zone2/3/4", "Bi-Amp Front", "Bi-Amp", "Advanced" and "Adv+Front B".

※ For details of the "Amp Assign Mode", see page 102.

NOTE:

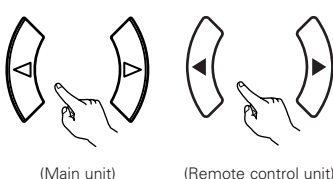
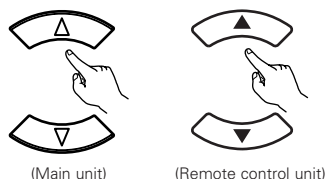
- Selectable mode will vary, depending on the numbers of free amplifiers.

4

If "Advanced" or "Adv+Front B" is selected at step 3, the power amplifiers can be assigned freely to the desired channels.

- ① Select the power amplifier to be assigned.

② Select which channel to assign the power amplifier to.



7-2. Power Amp Assign

Amp Assign Mode



◀ Advanced ▶

◻ L1: ◀ FL ▶	R1: ◀ FR ▶
L2: ◀ C ▶	R2: ◀ ---- ▶
L3: ◀ SL A ▶	R3: ◀ SR A ▶
L4: ◀ SL B ▶	R4: ◀ SR B ▶
L5: ◀ SBL ▶	R5: ◀ SBR ▶

*P.AMP Assign 7.2

L1: ◀ FL ▶

5

(Main unit)

(Remote control unit)

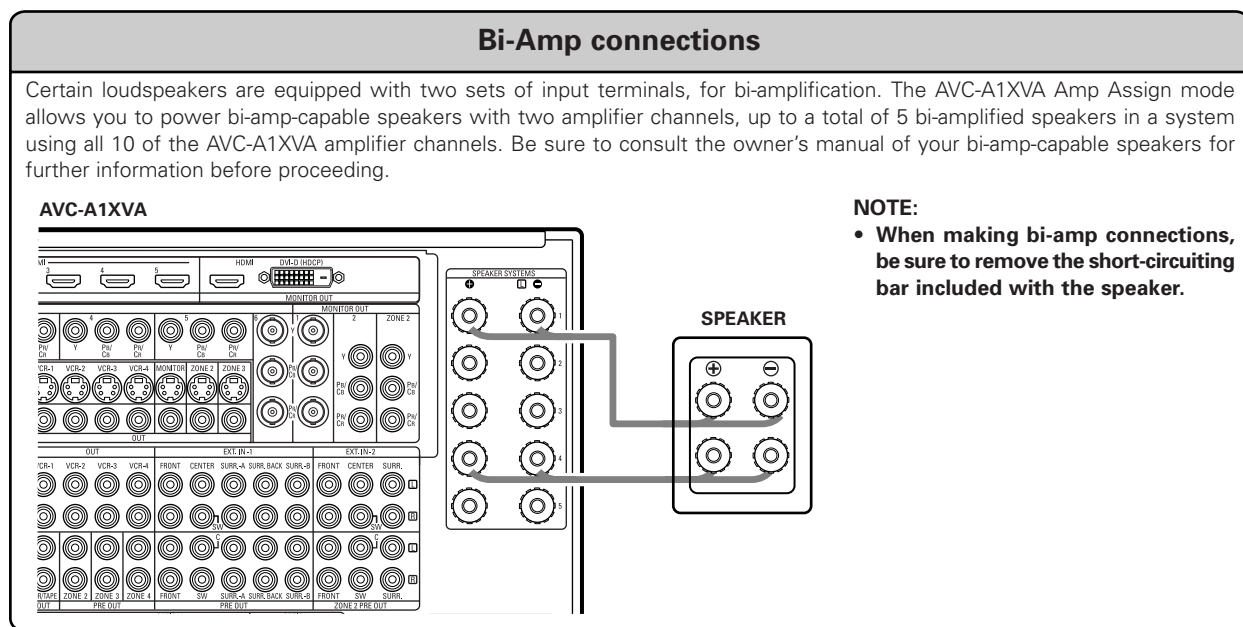
Enter the setting.
The Option Setup menu reappears.

■ Amp Assign mode

- Normal : This is the recommended amplifier assignment mode. Normally select this when not conducting the power amplifier assignment.
By default, this is set to "Normal".
- Advanced : With this mode, the power amplifiers can be assigned freely to the desired channels according to the speaker system you are using.
- Adv+Front B : With this mode, the power amplifiers can be assigned freely to the desired channels and front B.
- The following modes can be selected when there are power amplifiers that are free with respect to the recommended amplifier assignment ("Normal").
 - +Zone2 : This mode is the setting of the status in which the power amplifier is assigned to the ZONE2 output channel.
 - +Zone3 : This mode is the setting of the status in which the power amplifier is assigned to the ZONE3 output channel.
 - +Zone4 : This mode is the setting of the status in which the power amplifier is assigned to the ZONE4 output channel.
 - +Zone2/3 : This mode is the setting of the status in which the power amplifier is assigned simultaneously to the ZONE2 and 3 output channels.
 - +Zone3/4 : This mode is the setting of the status in which the power amplifier is assigned simultaneously to the ZONE3 and 4 output channels.
 - +Zone2/4 : This mode is the setting of the status in which the power amplifier is assigned simultaneously to the ZONE2 and 4 output channels.
 - +Zone2/3/4 : This mode is the setting of the status in which the power amplifier is assigned simultaneously to the ZONE2, 3 and 4 output channels.
 - Bi-Amp+Front : This mode is the setting for playing the front channel with Bi-amp connections.
 - Bi-Amp : This mode is the setting for playing the front, center and surround channels with Bi-amp connections.

NOTES:

- The amplifier assignment modes that can be selected differ according to the channel settings made at "7-1. Channel Setup" (See pages 96 ~ 99).
- The status in which power amplifiers are assigned to output channels in the different amplifier assignment modes differs according to the channel settings for the different zones. (See pages 102 ~ 104)
- If the "Advanced" or "Adv+Front B" amplifier assignment mode is selected, the channels to which power amplifiers can be assigned differ according to the channel settings for the different zones. (See page 104)



■ Table of power amplifier assignment modes with respect to the channel settings for the different zones and assignment modes

- Amp Assign mode: Normal

Channel Setup →	MAIN ZONE	9.1 CH				7.1 CH				5.1 CH			
Power Amp Assign		L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR
		L2	C	R2	—	L2	C	R2	—	L2	C	R2	—
		L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A
		L4	SL B	R4	SR B	L4	—	R4	—	L4	—	R4	—
		L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	—	R5	—

- Amp Assign mode: +Zone2

Channel Setup →	MAIN ZONE	9.1 CH				7.1 CH								5.1 CH											
	ZONE2	MONO				STEREO				MONO				5.1 CH				STEREO				MONO			
Power Amp Assign		L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR
		L2	C	R2	Z2 M	L2	C	R2	—	L2	C	R2	Z2 M	L2	C	R2	Z2 C	L2	C	R2	—	L2	C	R2	Z2 M
		L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A
		L4	SL B	R4	SR B	L4	Z2 L	R4	Z2 R	L4	—	R4	—	L4	Z2 FL	R4	Z2 FR	L4	Z2 L	R4	Z2 R	L4	—	R4	—
		L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	Z2 SL	R5	Z2 SR	L5	—	R5	—	L5	—	R5	—

- Amp Assign mode: +Zone3

Channel Setup →	MAIN ZONE	9.1 CH				7.1 CH								5.1 CH							
	ZONE3	MONO				STEREO				MONO				STEREO				MONO			
Power Amp Assign		L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR
		L2	C	R2	Z3 M	L2	C	R2	—	L2	C	R2	Z3 M	L2	C	R2	—	L2	C	R2	Z3 M
		L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A
		L4	SL B	R4	SR B	L4	Z3 L	R4	Z3 R	L4	—	R4	—	L4	Z3 L	R4	Z3 R	L4	—	R4	—
		L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	—	R5	—	L5	—	R5	—

- Amp Assign mode: +Zone4

Channel Setup →	MAIN ZONE	9.1 CH				7.1 CH								5.1 CH							
	ZONE4	MONO				STEREO				MONO				STEREO				MONO			
Power Amp Assign		L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR
		L2	C	R2	Z4 M	L2	C	R2	—	L2	C	R2	Z4 M	L2	C	R2	—	L2	C	R2	Z4 M
		L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A
		L4	SL B	R4	SR B	L4	Z4 L	R4	Z4 R	L4	—	R4	—	L4	Z4 L	R4	Z4 R	L4	—	R4	—
		L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	—	R5	—	L5	—	R5	—

- Amp Assign mode: +Zone2/3

Channel Setup →	MAIN ZONE	7.1 CH												5.1 CH															
	ZONE2	STEREO				MONO				MONO				STEREO				STEREO				MONO				MONO			
	ZONE3	MONO				STEREO				MONO				STEREO				MONO				STEREO				MONO			
Power Amp Assign		L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR
		L2	C	R2	Z3 M	L2	C	R2	Z2 M	L2	C	R2	Z3 M	L2	C	R2	—	L2	C	R2	Z3 M	L2	C	R2	Z2 M	L2	C	R2	Z3 M
		L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A
		L4	Z2 L	R4	Z2 R	L4	Z3 L	R4	Z3 R	L4	Z2 M	R4	—	L4	Z2 L	R4	Z2 R	L4	Z2 L	R4	Z2 R	L4	Z3 L	R4	Z3 R	L4	Z2 M	R4	—
		L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	Z3 L	R5	Z3 R	L5	—	R5	—	L5	—	R5	—	L5	—	R5	—

- Amp Assign mode: +Zone3/4

Channel Setup →	MAIN ZONE	7.1 CH												5.1 CH															
	ZONE3	STEREO				MONO				MONO				STEREO				STEREO				MONO				MONO			
	ZONE4	MONO				STEREO				MONO				STEREO				MONO				STEREO				MONO			
Power Amp Assign		L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR				
		L2	C	R2	Z4 M	L2	C	R2	Z3 M	L2	C	R2	Z4 M	L2	C	R2	—	L2	C	R2	Z4 M	L2	C	R2	Z3 M	L2	C	R2	Z4 M
		L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A
		L4	Z3 L	R4	Z3 R	L4	Z4 L	R4	Z4 R	L4	Z3 M	R4	—	L4	Z3 L	R4	Z3 R	L4	Z3 L	R4	Z3 R	L4	Z4 L	R4	Z4 R	L4	Z3 M	R4	—
		L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	Z4 L	R5	Z4 R	L5	—	R5	—	L5	—	R5	—	L5	—	R5	—

- Amp Assign mode: +Zone2/4

Channel Setup →	MAIN ZONE		7.1 CH												5.1 CH															
	ZONE2		STEREO				MONO				MONO				STEREO				STEREO				MONO				MONO			
	ZONE4		MONO				STEREO				MONO				STEREO				MONO				STEREO				MONO			
Power Amp Assign			L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR
			L2	C	R2	Z4 M	L2	C	R2	Z2 M	L2	C	R2	Z4 M	L2	C	R2	–	L2	C	R2	Z4 M	L2	C	R2	Z2 M	L2	C	R2	Z4 M
			L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A
			L4	Z2 L	R4	Z2 R	L4	Z4 L	R4	Z4 R	L4	Z2 M	R4	–	L4	Z2 L	R4	Z2 R	L4	Z2 L	R4	Z2 R	L4	Z4 L	R4	Z4 R	L4	Z2 M	R4	–
			L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	Z4 L	R5	Z4 R	L5	–	R5	–	L5	–	R5	–	L5	–	R5	–

- Amp Assign mode: +Zone2/3/4

Channel Setup →	MAIN ZONE	7.1 CH				5.1 CH																							
	ZONE2	MONO				STEREO				STEREO				MONO				STEREO				MONO				MONO			
	ZONE3	MONO				STEREO				MONO				STEREO				MONO				STEREO				MONO			
	ZONE4	MONO				MONO				STEREO				STEREO				MONO				MONO				STEREO			
Power Amp Assign		L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR
		L2	C	R2	Z2 M	L2	C	R2	Z4 M	L2	C	R2	Z3 M	L2	C	R2	Z2 M	L2	C	R2	Z3 M	L2	C	R2	Z2 M	L2	C	R2	Z2 M
		L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A
		L4	Z3 M	R4	Z4 M	L4	Z2 L	R4	Z2 R	L4	Z2 L	R4	Z2 R	L4	Z3 L	R4	Z3 R	L4	Z2 L	R4	Z2 R	L4	Z3 L	R4	Z3 R	L4	Z4 L	R4	Z4 R
		L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	Z3 L	R5	Z3 R	L5	Z4 L	R5	Z4 R	L5	Z4 L	R5	Z4 R	L5	Z4 M	R5	—	L5	Z4 M	R5	—	L5	Z3 M	R5	—

- Amp Assign mode: Bi-Amp Front

Channel Setup →	MAIN ZONE	7.1 CH				5.1 CH			
Power Amp Assign		L1	FL	R1	FR	L1	FL	R1	FR
		L2	C	R2	—	L2	C	R2	—
		L3	SL A	R3	SR A	L3	SL A	R3	SR A
		L4	FL	R4	FR	L4	FL	R4	FR
		L5	SBL	R5	SBR	L5	—	R5	—

- Amp Assign mode: Bi-Amp

Channel Setup →	MAIN ZONE	5.1 CH			
Power Amp Assign		L1	FL	R1	FR
		L2	C	R2	C
		L3	SL A	R3	SR A
		L4	FL	R4	FR
		L5	SL A	R5	SR A

■ Table of channels to which power amplifiers can be assigned with respect to the channel settings for the different zones and the amplifier assignment modes

- Amp Assign mode: Advanced

Channel Setup ↓				ASSIGNABLE CHANNEL
MAIN ZONE	ZONE2			
9.1 CH	5.1CH	FL, FR, C, SL A, SR A, SL B, SR B, SBL, SBR, Z2 FL, Z2 FR, Z2 C, Z2 SL, Z2 SR, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
	STEREO	FL, FR, C, SL A, SR A, SL B, SR B, SBL, SBR, Z2 L, Z2 R, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
	MONO	FL, FR, C, SL A, SR A, SL B, SR B, SBL, SBR, Z2 M, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
7.1 CH	7.1CH	FL, FR, C, SL A, SR A, SBL, SBR, Z2 FL, Z2 FR, Z2 C, Z2 SL, Z2 SR, Z2 SBL, Z2 SBR, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
	5.1CH	FL, FR, C, SL A, SR A, SBL, SBR, Z2 FL, Z2 FR, Z2 C, Z2 SL, Z2 SR, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
	STEREO	FL, FR, C, SL A, SR A, SBL, SBR, Z2 L, Z2 R, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
	MONO	FL, FR, C, SL A, SR A, SBL, SBR, Z2 M, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
5.1 CH	7.1CH	FL, FR, C, SL A, SR A, Z2 FL, Z2 FR, Z2 C, Z2 SL, Z2 SR, Z2 SBL, Z2 SBR, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
	5.1CH	FL, FR, C, SL A, SR A, Z2 FL, Z2 FR, Z2 C, Z2 SL, Z2 SR, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
	STEREO	FL, FR, C, SL A, SR A, Z2 L, Z2 R, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
	MONO	FL, FR, C, SL A, SR A, Z2 M, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		

- Amp Assign mode: Adv+Front B

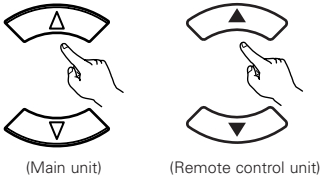
Channel Setup ↓				ASSIGNABLE CHANNEL
MAIN ZONE	ZONE2			
9.1 CH	5.1CH	FL A, FR A, FL B, FR B, C, SL A, SR A, SL B, SR B, SBL, SBR, Z2 FL, Z2 FR, Z2 C, Z2 SL, Z2 SR, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
	STEREO	FL A, FR A, FL B, FR B, C, SL A, SR A, SL B, SR B, SBL, SBR, Z2 L, Z2 R, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
	MONO	FL A, FR A, FL B, FR B, C, SL A, SR A, SL B, SR B, SBL, SBR, Z2 M, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
7.1 CH	7.1CH	FL A, FR A, FL B, FR B, C, SL A, SR A, SBL, SBR, Z2 FL, Z2 FR, Z2 C, Z2 SL, Z2 SR, Z2 SBL, Z2 SBR, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
	5.1CH	FL A, FR A, FL B, FR B, C, SL A, SR A, SBL, SBR, Z2 FL, Z2 FR, Z2 C, Z2 SL, Z2 SR, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
	STEREO	FL A, FR A, FL B, FR B, C, SL A, SR A, SBL, SBR, Z2 L, Z2 R, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
	MONO	FL A, FR A, FL B, FR B, C, SL A, SR A, SBL, SBR, Z2 M, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
5.1 CH	7.1CH	FL A, FR A, FL B, FR B, C, SL A, SR A, Z2 FL, Z2 FR, Z2 C, Z2 SL, Z2 SR, Z2 SBL, Z2 SBR, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
	5.1CH	FL A, FR A, FL B, FR B, C, SL A, SR A, Z2 FL, Z2 FR, Z2 C, Z2 SL, Z2 SR, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
	STEREO	FL A, FR A, FL B, FR B, C, SL A, SR A, Z2 L, Z2 R, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		
	MONO	FL A, FR A, FL B, FR B, C, SL A, SR A, Z2 M, Z3 L, Z3 R, Z4 L, Z4 R		

※ The above is an example of the selectable channels when “STEREO” is set for the ZONE3 and 4 channel setting.
If “MONO” is selected, “Z3 M” and “Z4 M” are displayed.

7-3. Setting the Volume Control

- Set the upper limit for the volume, the volume level when the power is turned on, and the volume level when the mute mode is set for the different zones.

1 Select "Volume Control" at the Option Setup menu.



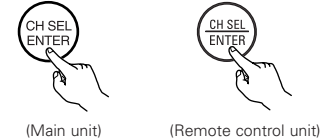
(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

*Option Setup
Volume Control

7. Option Setup

1. Channel Setup
2. Power Amp Assign
3. Volume Control
4. Trigger Out
5. AC Outlet Assign
6. Setup Memory/Lock
7. Network Setup
- Exit

2 Display the Volume Control screen.



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

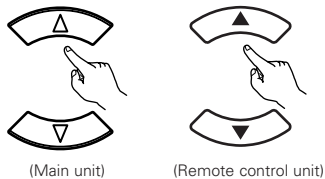
*Volume : Main
Limit : 4 OFF

7-3. Volume Control

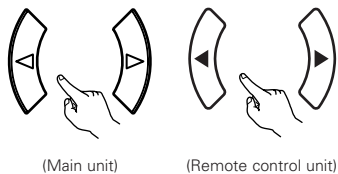
☐Main	Vol. Limit	◀ OFF ▶
	P. On Lev.	LAST ▶
	Mute Lev.	◀ FULL ▶
Zone2	Vol. Lev.	◀ VAR ▶
	Vol. Limit	◀ OFF ▶
	P. On Lev.	LAST ▶
	Mute Lev.	◀ FULL ▶

3 Make the volume restriction settings for the different zones.

- ① Select the desired setting.



- ② Select the parameter.



7-3. Volume Control

☐Main	Vol. Limit	◀ OFF ▶
	P. On Lev.	LAST ▶
	Mute Lev.	◀ FULL ▶
Zone2	Vol. Lev.	◀ VAR ▶
	Vol. Limit	◀ OFF ▶
	P. On Lev.	LAST ▶
	Mute Lev.	◀ FULL ▶

7-3. Volume Control

☐Zone3	Vol. Lev.	◀ VAR ▶
	Vol. Limit	◀ OFF ▶
	P. On Lev.	LAST ▶
	Mute Lev.	◀ FULL ▶
Zone4	Vol. Lev.	◀ VAR ▶
	Vol. Limit	◀ OFF ▶
	P. On Lev.	LAST ▶
	Mute Lev.	◀ FULL ▶

Volume Limit: Set the upper limit for the volume for the different zones.

–20 dB, –10 dB, 0 dB : The volume cannot be increased above the selected levels.

OFF : If you do not want to set a volume limit, select "OFF".

In this case, the volume can be set to the AVC-A1XVA's maximum volume (output) level of +18 dB, which is extremely loud.

Power On Level: Set the volume that is set when the power is turned on for the different zones.

You can adjust the volume level within the range of –80 to +18 dB in steps of 1.0 dB.

– – – (Mute) : The volume is always muted when the power is turned on.

LAST : The volume set when the AVC-A1XVA was last used is stored in the memory and set when the power is turned on.

Mute Level: Set the volume attenuation level when the mute mode is set for the different zones.

FULL : The volume is fully muted.

–40 dB : The volume is lowered 40 dB from the current level.

–20 dB : The volume is lowered 20 dB from the current level.

Volume Level: Set whether to fix the output level for the different zones or make it variable.

Variable : The level can be adjusted freely using buttons on the Remote control unit.

–40 dB, 0 dB : The output level is fixed at the set level and the volume can no longer be adjusted.

NOTES:

- For ZONE2, ZONE3 and ZONE4, the "Volume Limit", "Power On Level" and "Mute Level" can be set when "Variable" is selected for "Volume Level".
- When the power amplifier is assigned to either of the ZONE2, ZONE3 and ZONE4 channels at "7-2. Power Amp Assign", "–VAR–" (only variable) is displayed and the fixed level cannot be set.

4



(Main unit)



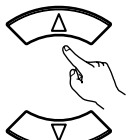
(Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.
The Option Setup menu reappears.

7-4. Setting the Trigger Out

- Four 12 V DC Trigger Outputs on the rear panel can be used to control other devices with compatible trigger inputs, such as motorized screens, motorized screen masking, motorized drapes, and other trigger-controlled devices.
- Set the DC output supplied from the trigger out jacks for the various input sources to ON or OFF.

1



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Select "Trigger Out" at the Option Setup menu.

```

*Option Setup
Trigger Out
74
  
```

7. Option Setup

1. Channel Setup
2. Power Amp Assign
3. Volume Control
4. Trigger Out
5. AC Outlet Assign
6. Setup Memory/Lock
7. Network Setup
- Exit

2



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Display the Trigger Out screen.

```

*Trigger Out
Trigger Out 1
74
  
```

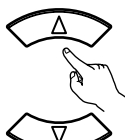
7-4. Trigger Out

- Trigger Out 1
- Trigger Out 2
- Trigger Out 3
- Trigger Out 4

Default Yes

Exit

3



(Main unit)

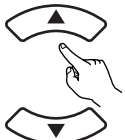


(Main unit)

Select the trigger out jack you want to set.
Switch to the setting screen.

```

*Trigger Out 1
ZONE : MAIN
74
  
```



(Remote control unit)



(Remote control unit)

7-4. Trigger Out 1

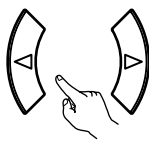
ZONE : MAIN

Tuner	: OFF	DBS	: ON
Phono	: OFF	VCR-1	: ON
CD	: OFF	VCR-2	: ON
Tape	: OFF	VCR-3	: ON
DVD	: ON	VCR-4	: ON
VDP	: ON	V.Aux	: ON
TV	: ON	Aux	: ON

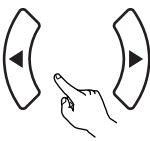
Surr. Mode

Example: When "Trigger Out 1" is selected

4



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

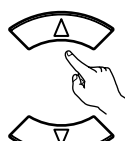
Select the Zone. (MAIN ZONE, ZONE2, ZONE3 and ZONE4)

The power supplied from the trigger out jack turns on and off when the power for the set zone is turned on and off.

5

① Select the input source.

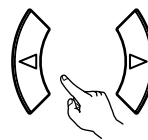
② Select "ON" or "OFF".



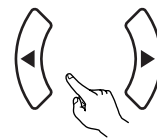
(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

ON : When that input source is selected, the power supplied from the trigger out jack turns on.

OFF : When that input source is selected, the power supplied from the trigger out jack turns off.

6

If "MAIN" was selected at step 4, the trigger out jack's output setting can also be made for the various surround modes.

```
*Trigger Out 1
DRCT/ST : ON
```

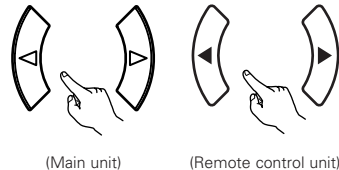
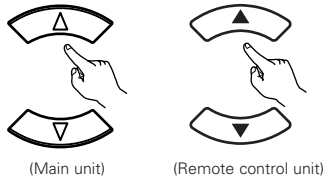
```

DIRECT/STEREO : ON
THX/DOLBY/DTS : ON
CINEMA        : ON
MUSIC         : ON
GAME          : ON
WIDE SCREEN   : ON
9CH STEREO    : ON
DSP SIMULATION : ON
MULTI CH MODE : ON

```

① Select the surround mode.

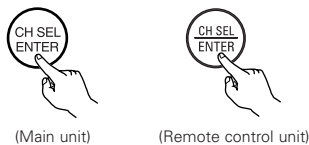
② Select "ON" or "OFF".



ON : If that surround mode is selected when an input source set to "ON" is selected, the power supplied from the trigger out jack turns on.

OFF : If that surround mode is selected when an input source set to "ON" is selected, the power supplied from the trigger out jack turns off.

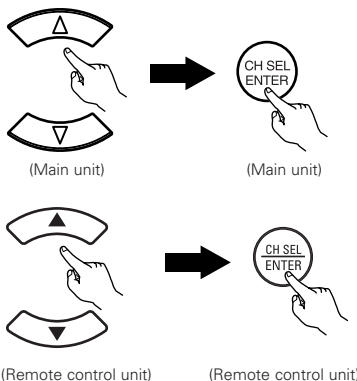
7



Press the ENTER button to return to the Trigger Out screen.

※ Use the same procedure to make the settings for Trigger Out 2, 3, 4.

8



Select "Exit" then press the ENTER button at the Trigger Out screen.
The Option Setup menu reappears.

```
*Trigger Out
Exit
```

※ If "Yes" is selected for "Default", then press the cursor left button to reset to the default values.

```

7-4. Trigger Out

Trigger Out 1
Trigger Out 2
Trigger Out 3
Trigger Out 4

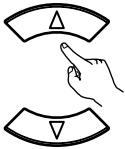
Default Yes
Exit

```

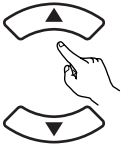
7-5. Setting the AC Outlet Assignment

- Set the power of the AC outlet on the AVC-A1XVA's rear panel to ON or OFF with respect to the different input sources.

1



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)


Select "AC Outlet Assign" at the Option Setup menu.

*Option Setup
AC Outlet


7. Option Setup

1. Channel Setup
2. Power Amp Assign
3. Volume Control
4. Trigger Out
5. AC Outlet Assign
6. Setup Memory/Lock
7. Network Setup
- Exit

2



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Display the AC Outlet Assign screen.

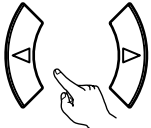
*AC Outlet
ZONE : MAIN

7-5. AC Outlet

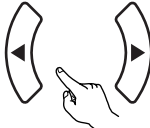
☐ ZONE : MAIN

Tuner	OFF	DBS	ON
Phono	OFF	VCR-1	ON
CD	OFF	VCR-2	ON
Tape	OFF	VCR-3	ON
DVD	OFF	VCR-4	ON
VDP	OFF	V.Aux	ON
TV	OFF	Aux	ON

3



(Main unit)

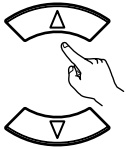


(Remote control unit)

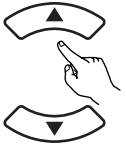
Select the Zone. (MAIN ZONE, ZONE2, ZONE3 and ZONE4)
The power of the AC outlet turns on and off when the power for the set zone is turned on and off.

4

① Select the input source.

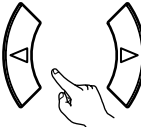


(Main unit)

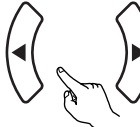


(Remote control unit)

② Select "ON" or "OFF".




(Main unit)




(Remote control unit)

ON : The power of the AC outlet turns on when that input source is selected.
OFF : The power of the AC outlet turns off when that input source is selected.

5



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Enter the setting.
The Option Setup menu reappears.

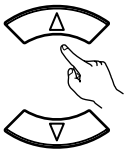
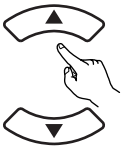
108

7-6. Protecting the setting and memory backup

[1] User Memory

- The currently set settings (system setup, surround parameters, etc.) can be stored in the memory. The stored settings can be called out when needed.

1

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Setup Memory / Lock" at the Option Setup menu.

*Option Setup 7.5



Memory/Lock

7. Option Setup

1. Channel Setup
2. Power Amp Assign
3. Volume Control
4. Trigger Out
5. AC Outlet Assign
6. Setup Memory/Lock
7. Network Setup

Exit

2

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Display the Setup Memory / Lock screen.

*Memory/Lock 7.6

User Memory

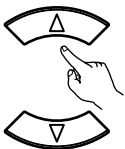
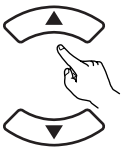
7-6. Setup Memory/Lock

☐ User Memory

Setup Lock

Exit



3

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "User Memory" at the Setup Memory / Lock screen.

4

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Switch to the User Memory screen.

*User Memory 7.6



Save : Yes

7-6. User Memory

☐ Save Yes

Exit

5

(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

To store the settings in the memory, select "Yes".

※ Once the settings are stored in the memory, "Load" is displayed and the settings can be loaded.

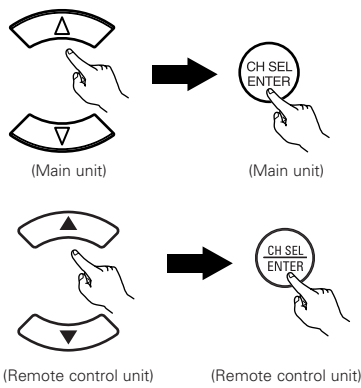
7-6. User Memory

☐ Load Yes

Save Yes

Exit

6

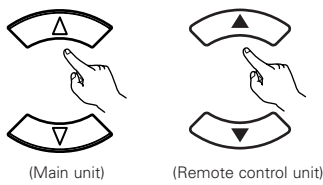


Select "Exit" and press the ENTER button to return to the Setup Memory / Lock screen.

[2] Setup Lock

- The system setup settings can be locked so that they cannot be changed easily.

1



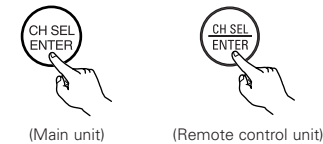
Select "Setup Lock" at the Setup Memory / Lock screen.

*Memory/Lock
Setup Lock

7-6. Setup Memory/Lock

User Memory
☒ Setup Lock
 Exit

2



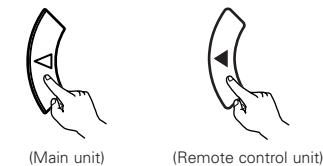
Switch to the Setup Lock screen.

*Setup Lock
ON/OFF: ☒ OFF

7-6. Setup Lock

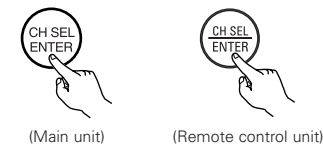
☒ ON ☐ OFF

3



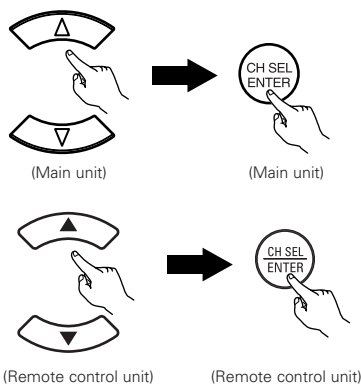
Select "ON", to lock the system setup settings.

4



Press the ENTER button to return to the Setup Memory / Lock screen.

5



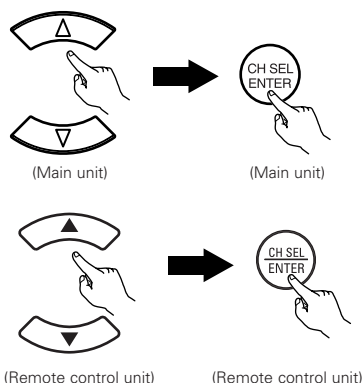
Select "Exit" and press the ENTER button at the Setup Memory / Lock screen.
The Option Setup menu reappears.

*Memory/Lock
Exit

7-6. Setup Memory/Lock

User Memory
 Setup Lock
☒ Exit

6



Select "Exit" and press the ENTER button to finalize the setting and exit the Option Setup mode. When the setup lock function is activated, the settings listed below cannot be changed, and "SETUP LOCKED!" is displayed when related buttons are operated.

- System setup settings
- Surround parameter settings
- Tone control settings
- Channel level settings (including test tones)
- RoomEQ

To unlock, press the System Setup button again and display the Setup Lock screen, then select "OFF" and press the ENTER button.

*Option Setup
Exit

7. Option Setup

1. Channel Setup
2. Power Amp Assign
3. Volume Control
4. Trigger Out
5. AC Outlet Assign
6. Setup Memory/Lock
7. Network Setup

Exit

※ **System setup is complete. Once these settings are made, there is no need to change them unless different AV components are connected or the speakers are repositioned.**

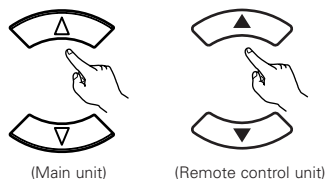
7-7. Setting the Network Setup

- If you are using a broadband router (DHCP function), there is no need to make the settings at "IP Address" and "Proxy", since the DHCP function is set to "ON" in the AVC-A1XVA's default settings.
- If the AVC-A1XVA is being used connected to a network without the DHCP function, the network settings must be made. In this case, some knowledge of networks is required.

[1] Setting the IP Address

- Set this when "OFF" is set for "DHCP".

1



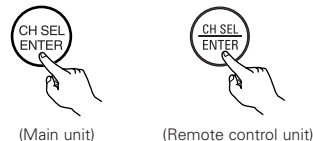
Select "Network Setup" at the Option Setup menu.

7. Option Setup

1. Channel Setup
2. Power Amp Assign
3. Volume Control
4. Trigger Out
5. AC Outlet Assign
6. Setup Memory/Lock
7. Network Setup

Exit

2



Press the ENTER button.

- The "Network Setup" screen appears.

7-7. Network Setup

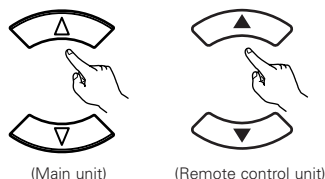
IP Address

Proxy

Network Option

Exit

3



Select "IP Address".

4



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Press the ENTER button.

- The "IP Address" screen appears.

7-7. IP Address

DHCP : ◀ON▶

IP Address 192.168.000.001

Subnet Mask 255.255.255.000

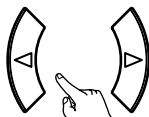
7-7. IP Address

Gateway 000.000.000.000

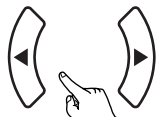
Primary DNS 000.000.000.000

Second DNS 000.000.000.000

5



(Main unit)

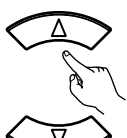


(Remote control unit)

Select "OFF".

- The DHCP function is disabled.

6



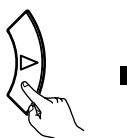
(Main unit)



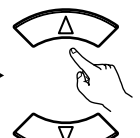
(Remote control unit)

Select the desired setting item.

7



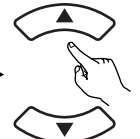
(Main unit)



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)



(Remote control unit)

Input the address.

IP Address : Set the IP address within the ranges shown below. The Network Audio function cannot be used if other IP addresses are set.

CLASS A: 10.0.0.0 ~ 10.255.255.255

CLASS B: 172.16.0.0 ~ 172.31.255.255

CLASS C: 192.168.0.0 ~ 192.168.255.255

Subnet Mask : When connecting an xDSL modem or terminal adapter directly to the AVC-A1XVA, input the subnet mask indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider. Normally input 255.255.255.0.

Gateway : When connected to a gateway (router), input its IP address.

Primary DNS / Secondary DNS:

If there is only one DNS address indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider, input it at "primary DNS". If there are two or more DNS addresses, input the first one at "Second DNS".

8



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Press the ENTER button to enter the setting.

- The "IP Address" menu reappears.

NOTES:

- DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol):

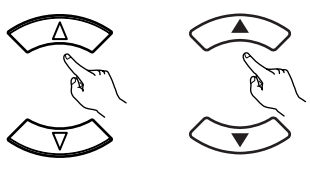
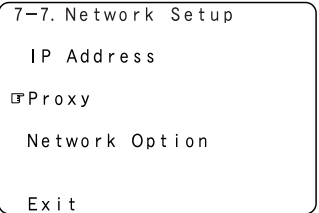
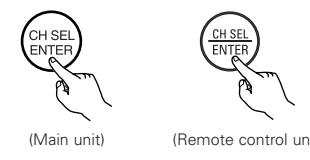
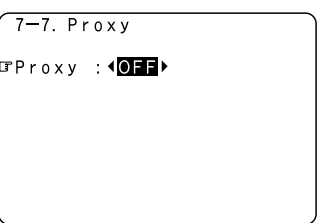
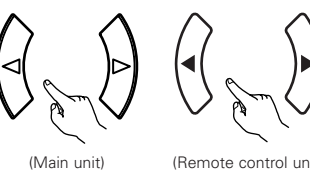
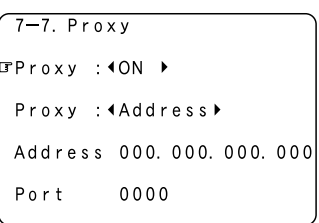
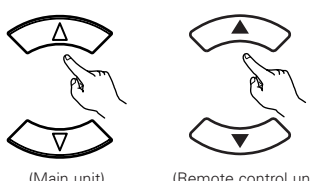
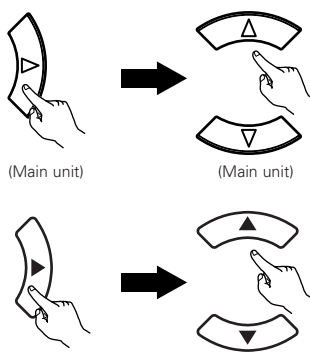

These are systems by which the IP address and other network settings are automatically set for the AVC-A1XVA, computer, broadband router and network devices.

- DNS (Domain Name System):

This is a system for converting the domain names used when browsing Internet sites (for example, "www.denon.jp") into the IP addresses actually used for communications (for example, "202.221.192.106").

[2] Setting the Proxy

- Make this setting when connecting to the Internet via a proxy server.

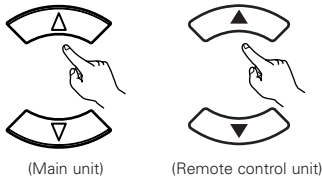
<p>1</p>  <p>(Main unit) (Remote control unit)</p>	<p>Select "Proxy" at the "Network Setup" screen.</p>	
<p>2</p>  <p>(Main unit) (Remote control unit)</p>	<p>Press the ENTER button.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The "Proxy" screen appears. 	
<p>3</p>  <p>(Main unit) (Remote control unit)</p>	<p>Select "ON".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The proxy server is enabled. 	
<p>4</p>  <p>(Main unit) (Remote control unit)</p>	<p>Select the desired setting item.</p>	
<p>5</p>  <p>(Main unit) (Main unit) (Remote control unit) (Remote control unit)</p>	<p>Input the character or number.</p> <p>Proxy: Input the proxy server domain name or address. Port : Input the proxy server port number.</p>	
<p>6</p>  <p>(Main unit) (Remote control unit)</p>	<p>Press the ENTER button to enter the setting.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The "Network Setup" menu reappears. 	

[3] Setting the Network Option

- When not using the AVC-A1XVA connected in a network, set "ON" to reduce the power consumption when in the standby mode. Set "OFF" when using the AVC-A1XVA connected in a network.

■ Setting the Power Saving

1



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "Network Option" at the "Network Setup" screen.

7-7. Network Setup

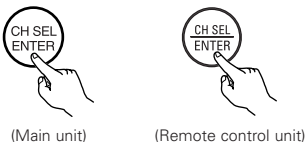
IP Address

Proxy

☒ Network Option

Exit

2



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Press the ENTER button.

- The "Network Option" screen appears.

7-7. Network Option

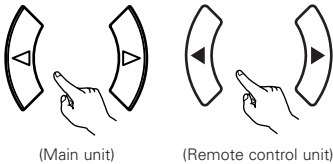
☒ Standby Mode ◀ON▶

Power Saving

PC Language: ◀eng▶

*MAC Address: 0005cd-10d901

3



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select "OFF".

7-7. Network Option

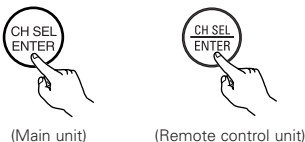
☒ Standby Mode ◀OFF▶

Power Saving

PC Language: ◀eng▶

*MAC Address: 0005cd-10d901

4



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

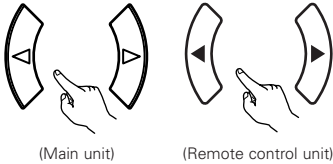
Press the ENTER button to enter the setting.

- The "Network Setup" menu reappears.

■ Setting the PC Language

- Select according to the language of the computer being used. The languages are indicated with three letters conforming to ISO639-2.

1



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

Select the PC Language.

7-7. Network Option

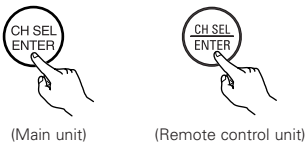
Standby Mode ◀ON▶

Power Saving

☒ PC Language: ◀eng▶

*MAC Address: 0005cd-10d901

2



(Main unit) (Remote control unit)

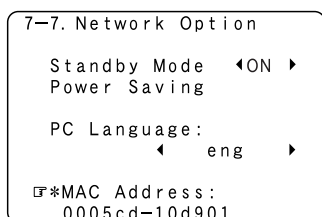
Press the ENTER button to enter the setting.

- The "Network Setup" menu reappears.

114

■ Checking the MAC Address


- The AVC-A1XVA's MAC address is displayed.
- The MAC address differs for each set.




After completing system setup

This button can be pressed at any time during the system setup process to complete the process.

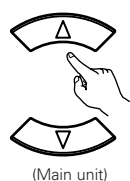
1




(Main unit)



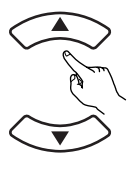
(Remote control unit)




➔



(Main unit)



➔



(Remote control unit)

Press the SYSTEM SETUP button at the System Setup Menu, or select "Exit" and press the ENTER button.

※ The changed settings are entered and the on screen display turns off.

*System Setup

Exit

System Setup Menu

1. Auto Setup/Room EQ
2. Speaker Setup
3. Audio Input Setup
4. Video Setup
5. Advanced Playback
6. Zone Setup
7. Option Setup

☐Exit

■ On screen display for component video outputs

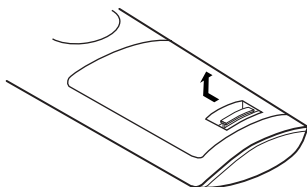
- When viewing component video signals via the AVC-A1XVA, the on screen display is only displayed on the monitor when the "System Setup" and "Surround Parameter" operations are performed and when the Remote control unit's ON SCREEN button is operated.
- When only component video signals are input to the AVC-A1XVA or when "Component" is selected at the "Video Convert Mode settings", the characters of the on screen display are not displayed over the picture.

8 REMOTE CONTROL UNIT

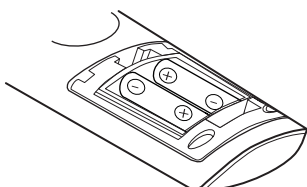
- The included Remote control unit (RC-1036) can be used to operate not only the AVC-A1XVA but other remote control compatible DENON components as well. In addition, the memory contains the control signals for other Remote control units, so it can be used to operate non-Denon remote control compatible products.

Inserting the Batteries

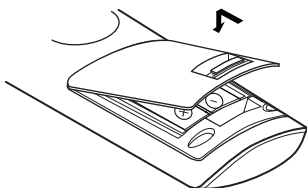
- Remove the Remote control unit's rear cover.



- Set two LR6/AA batteries in the battery compartment in the indicated direction.



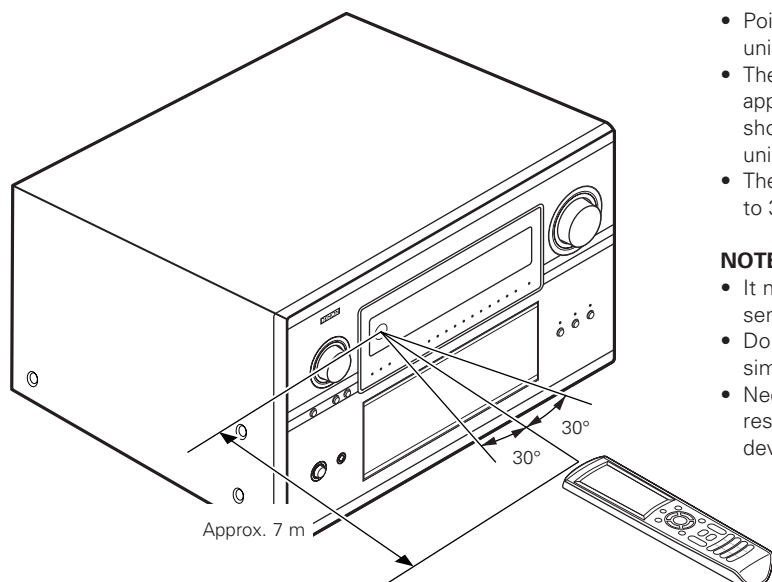
- Put the rear cover back on.



Notes on Batteries

- Use LR6/AA alkaline batteries in the Remote control unit.
- Replace the batteries with new ones if the set does not operate even when the Remote control unit is operated nearby the set. (The included battery is only for verifying operation.)
- When inserting the batteries, be sure to do so in the proper direction, following the "⊕" and "⊖" marks in the battery compartment.
- To prevent damage or leakage of battery fluid:
 - Do not use a new battery together with an old one.
 - Do not use two different types of batteries.
 - Do not short-circuit, disassemble, heat or dispose of batteries in flames.
- Remove the batteries from the Remote control unit when you do not plan to use it for an extended period of time.
- If the battery fluid should leak, carefully wipe the fluid off the inside of the battery compartment and insert new batteries.
- When replacing the batteries, have the new batteries ready and insert them as quickly as possible.

Using the Remote Control Unit



- Point the Remote control unit at the remote sensor on the Main unit as shown on the diagram.
- The Remote control unit can be used from a straight distance of approximately 7 meters from the Main unit, but this distance will be shorter if there are obstacles in the way or if the Remote control unit is not pointed directly at the remote sensor.
- The Remote control unit can be operated at a horizontal angle of up to 30 degrees with respect to the remote sensor.

NOTES:









- It may be difficult to operate the Remote control unit if the remote sensor is exposed to direct sunlight or strong artificial light.
- Do not press buttons on the Main unit and Remote control unit simultaneously. Doing so may result in malfunction.
- Neon signs or other devices emitting pulse-type noise nearby may result in malfunction, so keep the set as far away from such devices as possible.

Operating DENON audio components

1

Press the mode selector buttons to select the component you want to operate.

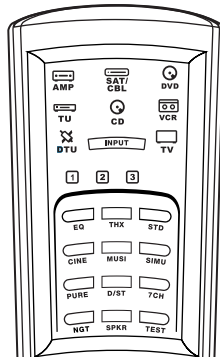
- The icon for the selected mode flashes.

	: AMP, ZONE2, ZONE3, ZONE4 or SYSTEM CALL
	: TUNER
	: DIGITAL TUNER (This mode is for future use.)
	: SATELLITE or CABLE
	: CD or CDR
	: DVD or DVDR
	: VCR or TAPE
	: TV

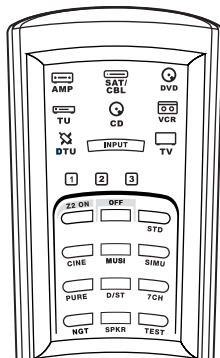
※ This function switches as shown below each time one of the AMP button is pressed.

Example:

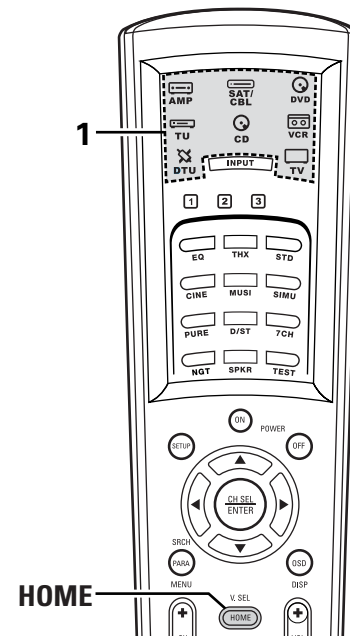
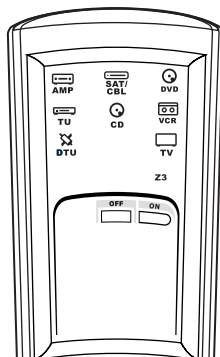
Select "AMP" mode.



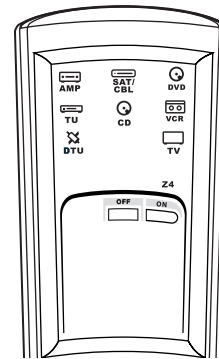
Select "ZONE2" mode.



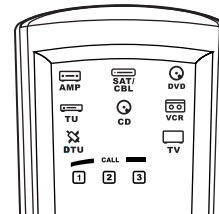
Select "ZONE3" mode.



Select "ZONE4" mode.



Select "SYSTEM CALL" mode.



2

Operate the audio component.

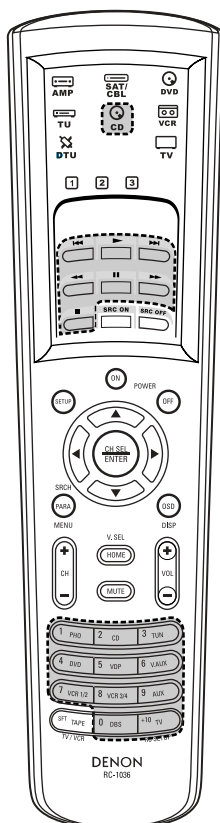
- ※ For details, refer to the component's operating instructions.
- ※ It may not be possible to operate some models.

NOTES:

- When a remote control code is sent, the icon for the mode of the device to which that code belongs flashes.
- The HOME button is used to return to the "AMP" mode when in any mode other than "AMP" ("AMP", "ZONE2", "ZONE3", "ZONE4" or "SYSTEM CALL").

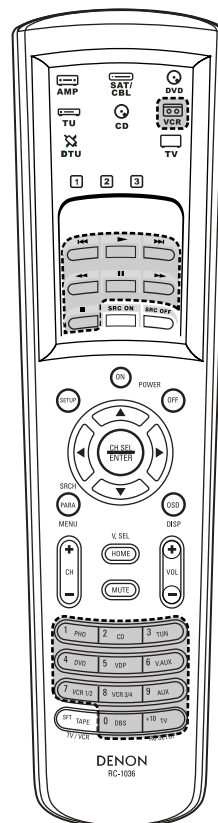
1. CD player (CD), CD recorder (CDR) system buttons

- ◀▶ : Manual search (forward and reverse)
- : Stop
- ▶ : Play
- ◀▶▶ : Auto search (to beginning of track)
- || : Pause
- 0 ~ 9, +10 : Number



2. Tape deck (TAPE) system buttons

- ◀▶ : Manual search (forward and reverse)
- : Stop
- ▶ : Play
- ◀▶▶ : Auto search (to beginning of track)
- || : Pause
- 0 ~ 9, +10 : Number



※ Default setting = CD

The preset codes of a CDR can be recorded in the CD mode so that the CD recorder can be operated.

It is only possible to set the preset memory for either the CD or CDR.

※ To operate a DENON CDR player, preset "30626" or "31868". To return to operation of a DENON CD player, preset "31867".

※ Default setting = VCR (See page 121)

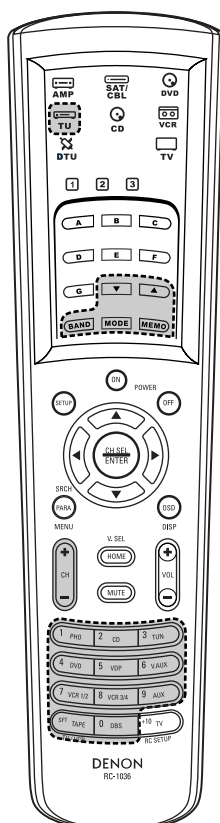
The preset codes of a TAPE can be recorded in the VCR mode so that the tape deck can be operated.

It is only possible to set the preset memory for either the VCR or TAPE.

※ To operate a DENON TAPE, preset "21471".

3. Tuner system buttons

- ▲, ▼ : Tuning up/down
- BAND** : Switch between AM and FM bands
- MODE** : Switch between AUTO and MANUAL
- MEMO** : Preset memory
- SFT** : Switching the memory block
- CH +, -** : Preset channel up/down
- 1 ~ 8** : Preset channel



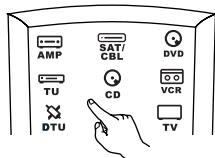
Preset memory

The included remote control unit (RC-1036) can be used to operate devices of different brands by registering the preset number corresponding to the brand of your device.

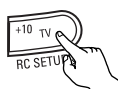
For some models the remote control unit or the device may not operate properly. In this case, use the learning function (See page 122) to store your device's remote control signals in the included remote control unit.

- 1 Press the mode selector button for the component you want to preset.

※ Presetting is not possible for the AMP, ZONE2, ZONE3, ZONE4, SYSTEM CALL and TUNER modes.

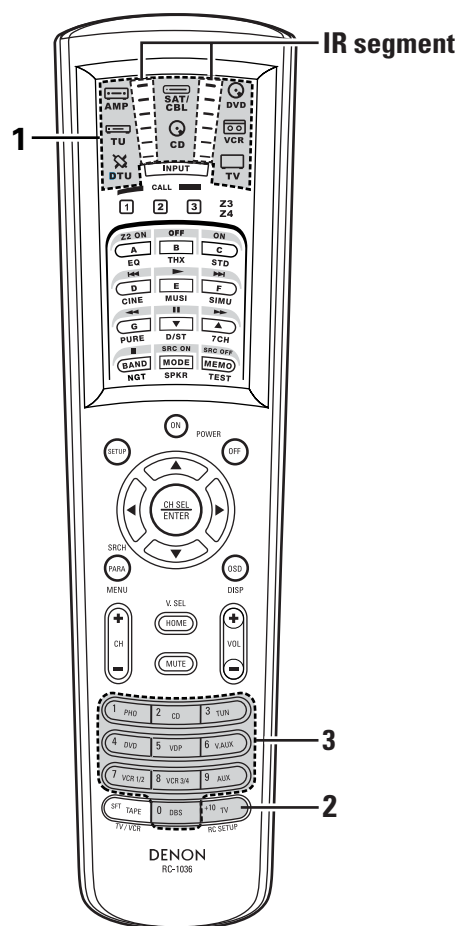
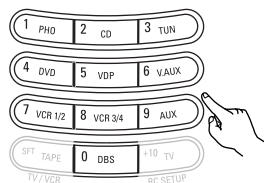


- 2 Press and hold the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds.
 - The top IR segment blinks twice.



- 3 Referring to the included List of Preset Codes (See page 198 ~ 233), press the NUMBER button to input the preset code (a 5-digit number) for the manufacturer of the component whose signals you want to store in the memory.
 - The top IR segment blinks once after each button press.
 - If the remote recognizes the manufacturer's code, the IR segment blinks twice.

※ You have 10 seconds to press each digit. If it takes longer than that, the remote "times out" and you must begin again.



NOTES:

- Depending on the model and year of manufacture, this function cannot be used for some models, even if the your device is listed on the included list of preset codes.
- Some manufacturers use more than one type of remote control code. Refer to the included list of preset codes to change the number and check it out.

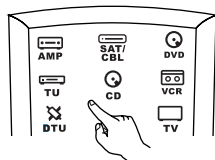
The preset codes are as follows upon shipment from the factory and after resetting:

- TV, VCRHITACHI
- CD, DVDDENON
- SATRCA

DVD preset codes			
41470 (default)		40490	
DENON Model No.	DVD-550	DVD-2800	DVD-800
	DVD-700	DVD-2800II	DVD-1600
	DVD-900	DVD-2900	DVD-2000
	DVD-1000	DVD-2910	DVD-2500
	DVD-1400	DVD-3800	DVD-3000
	DVD-1500	DVD-3910	DVD-3300
	DVD-1710	DVD-A11	
	DVD-1910	DVD-A1	
	DVD-2200	DVD-A1XV	

Operating a component stored in the preset memory

- 1 Press the mode selector button for the component you want to operate.

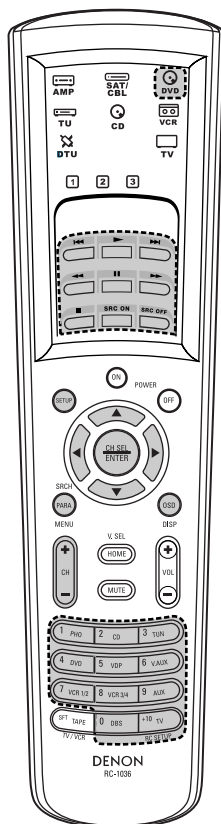


- 2 Operate the component.

- ※ For details, refer to the component's operating instructions.
- ※ Some models cannot be operated with this remote control unit.

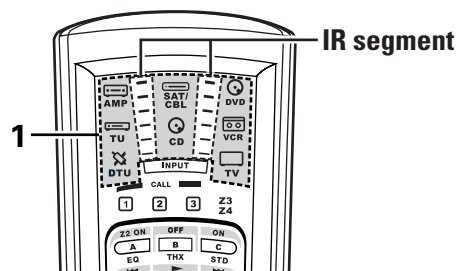
1. DVD player (DVD), DVD recorder (DVDR) system buttons

- SRC ON** : Power on
- SRC OFF** : Power off
- ◀▶** : Manual search (forward and reverse)
- : Stop
- ▶** : Play
- ◀▶** : Auto search (to beginning of track)
- ||** : Pause
- SETUP** : Setup
- MENU** : Menu
- ▲, ▼, ◀, ▶** : Cursor up, down, left and right
- ENTER** : Enter
- DISP** : Display
- CH +, -** : Switch channels +, -
- 0 ~ 9, +10** : Number



※ Default setting = DVD

The preset codes of a DVDR can be recorded in the DVD mode so that the DVD recorder can be operated. (See page 119)
It is only possible to set the preset memory for either the DVD or DVDR.

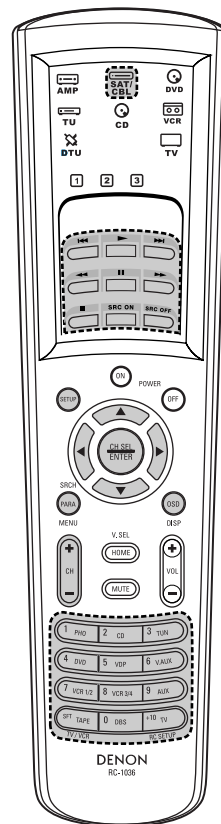


NOTE:

- For the DVD player remote control buttons, function names may differ according to manufacturer. Compare with the remote control operation of the various components.

2. Satellite (SAT) tuner, cable (CABLE) system buttons

- SRC ON** : Power on
- SRC OFF** : Power off
- SETUP** : Setup
- DISP** : Guide
- MENU** : Menu
- ▲, ▼, ◀, ▶** : Cursor up, down, left and right
- ENTER** : Enter
- CH +, -** : Switch channels +, -
- 0 ~ 9, +10** : Number



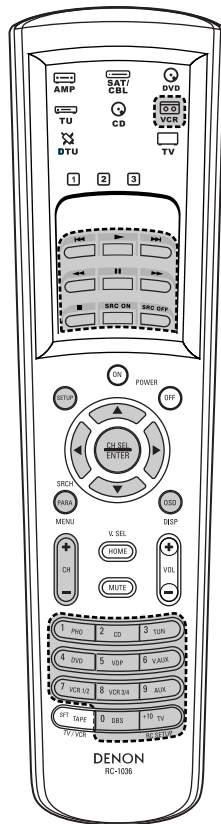
※ When there are codes usable for the preset device, those codes are sent when the buttons below are pressed. If not, by default the DVD codes are punched through. If the punch through setting is made after the preset memory is set, the codes are sent with priority.

- ◀▶** : Manual search (forward and reverse)
- : Stop
- ▶** : Play
- ◀▶** : Auto search (cue)
- ||** : Pause

※ Default setting = SAT

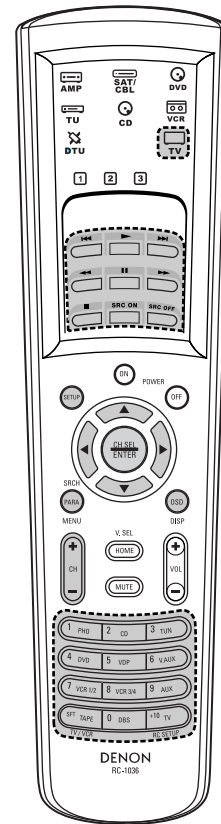
The preset codes of a CABLE can be recorded in the SAT/CBL mode so that the cable device can be operated. (See page 119)
It is only possible to set the preset memory for either the SAT or CBL.

3. Video deck (VCR) system buttons



- SRC ON** : Power on
- SRC OFF** : Power off
- ◀◀, ▶▶** : Manual search (forward and reverse)
- : Stop
- ▶** : Play
- ◀◀◀, ▶▶▶** : Auto search (to beginning of track)
- ||** : Pause
- SETUP** : Setup
- MENU** : Menu
- ▲, ▼, ◀, ▶** : Cursor up, down, left and right
- ENTER** : Enter
- DISP** : Guide
- CH +, -** : Switch channels +, -
- 0 ~ 9, +10** : Number

4. Monitor TV (TV), system buttons



- SRC ON** : Power on
- SRC OFF** : Power off
- SETUP** : Setup
- MENU** : Menu
- ▲, ▼, ◀, ▶** : Cursor up, down, left and right
- ENTER** : Enter
- DISP** : Guide
- CH +, -** : Switch channels +, -
- 0 ~ 9, +10** : Number
- TV/VCR** : Switch between TV and video player

※ When there are codes usable for the preset device, those codes are sent when the buttons below are pressed. If not, by default the DVD codes are punched through. If the punch through setting is made after the preset memory is set, the codes are sent with priority.

- ◀◀, ▶▶** : Manual search (forward and reverse)
- : Stop
- ▶** : Play
- ◀◀◀, ▶▶▶** : Auto search (cue)
- ||** : Pause

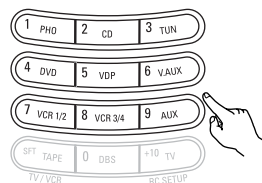
Learning function

If an AV component is not a DENON product, or if it cannot be operated via codes provided in the AVC-A1XVA remote control's internal preset memory, or if its codes cannot be successfully learned by the AVC-A1XVA remote control, then you should use the remote control that was supplied with that AV component to operate the component.

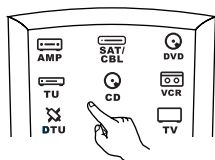
- 1** Press and hold the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.



- 2** Press the "9, 7, 5" button (9 → 7 → 5) to select Learning setup.
 - The IR segment blinks twice, indicating the remote is in Learning set up mode.

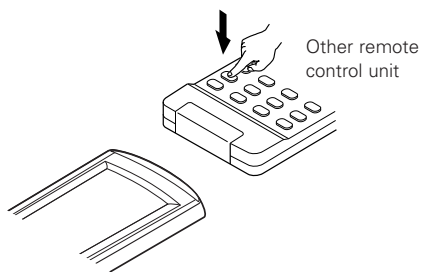


- 3** Press the mode selector button for the component you want to learned.
 - ※ Learning is not possible for the AMP, ZONE2, ZONE3, ZONE4 and SYSTEM CALL modes.

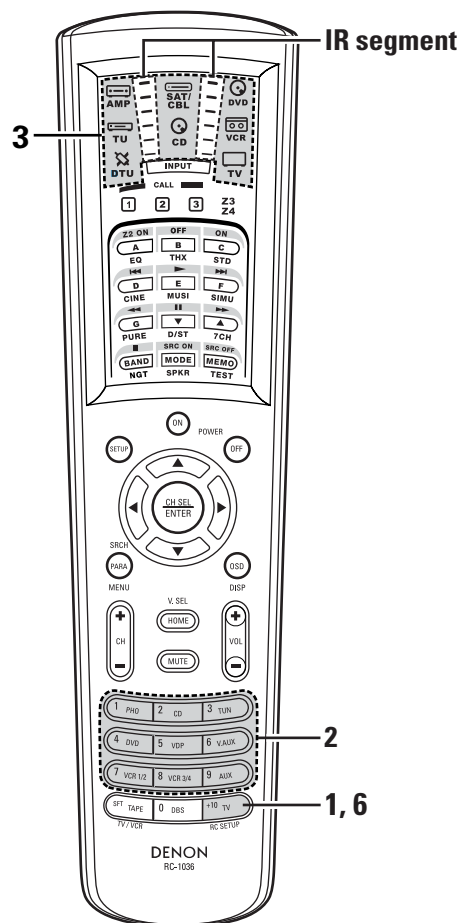


- 4** Press the button that you wish to be learned.
 - The display will go off and the unit will enter the learning standby mode.
 - ※ If a button that cannot be "learned" is pressed, the IR segment lights and the learning setup mode is cancelled.
 - ※ The HOME button cannot be "learned".

- 5** Point the remote control units directly at each other and press and hold in the button on the other remote control unit which you want to "learn".
 - The display turns on again and the IR segment blinks twice to indicate that the code is successfully captured.



- ※ Other buttons can be "learned" by repeating steps 4 and 5.
- ※ The mode can be switched by pressing a mode selector button.
- ※ If the IR segment displays one long flash, a learning error has occurred. Try repeating this step again until a successful capture occurs.



- 6** Press and hold the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds to exit programming.



NOTES:

- To cancel the learning setup mode, press the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds.
- Do not try to learn anything to the RC SETUP button.

System call

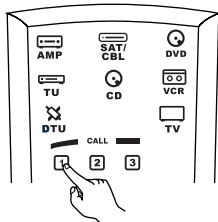
The accessories remote control unit is equipped with "system call" function allowing a series of remote control signals to be transmitted by pressing a single button.

This function can be used for example to turn on the amplifier's power, select the input source, turn on the monitor or TV's power, turn on the source component's power and set the source to the play mode, all at the touch of a single button.

(1) System call buttons

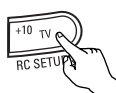
Up to 32 signals each can be stored at the SYSTEM CALL 1 ~ 3 buttons.

The System Call function can be used in the SYSTEM CALL mode.

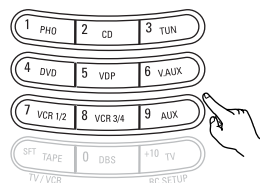


(2) Storing system call signals

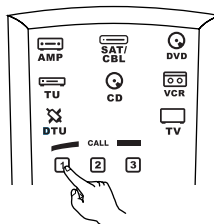
- 1** Press and hold the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.



- 2** Press the "9, 7, 8" button (9 → 7 → 8) to select system call setting.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.



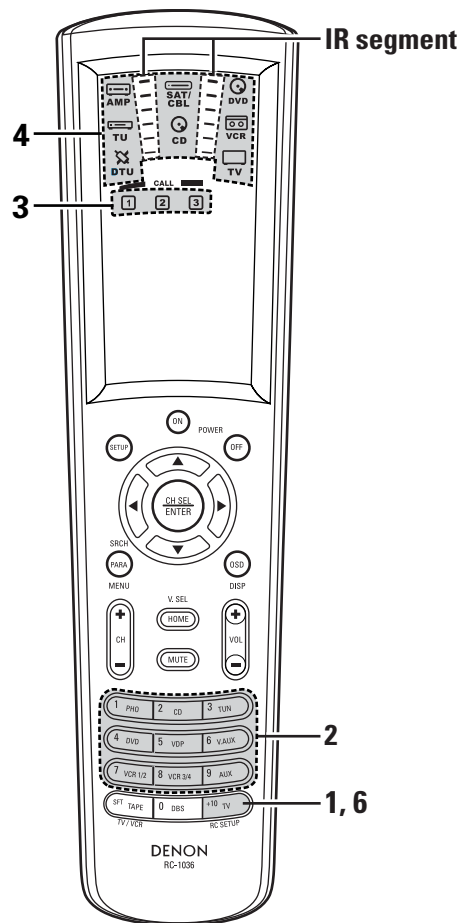
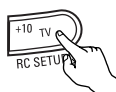
- 3** Press the SYSTEM CALL button (1 to 3) you want to register the system call.



- 4** Press the button you want to register.
 - The IR segment blinks once after each button press.
- ※ The mode can be switched by pressing a mode selector button.

- 5** Repeat steps 4 to register the desired buttons.
 - ※ Up to 32 signals each can be stored at the SYSTEM CALL 1 ~ 3.


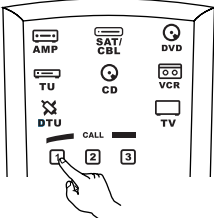
- 6** Press and hold the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds to register the system call.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.

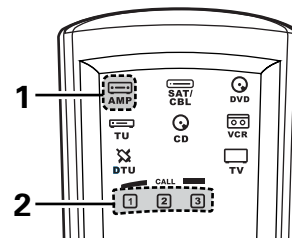


NOTE:

- The remote control signals of the buttons pressed while registering the system call signals are emitted, so be careful not to operate the components accidentally (cover the remote sensors, for example).


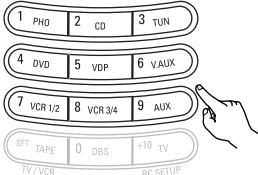
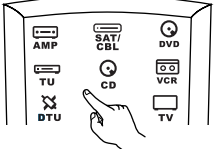
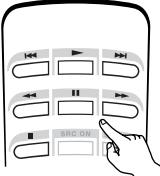
(3) Using the system call function

- 1 Press the AMP button to select SYSTEM CALL mode.
 
- 2 Press the SYSTEM CALL button (1 to 3) at which the system call signals have been stored.
 - The stored signals are transmitted successively.

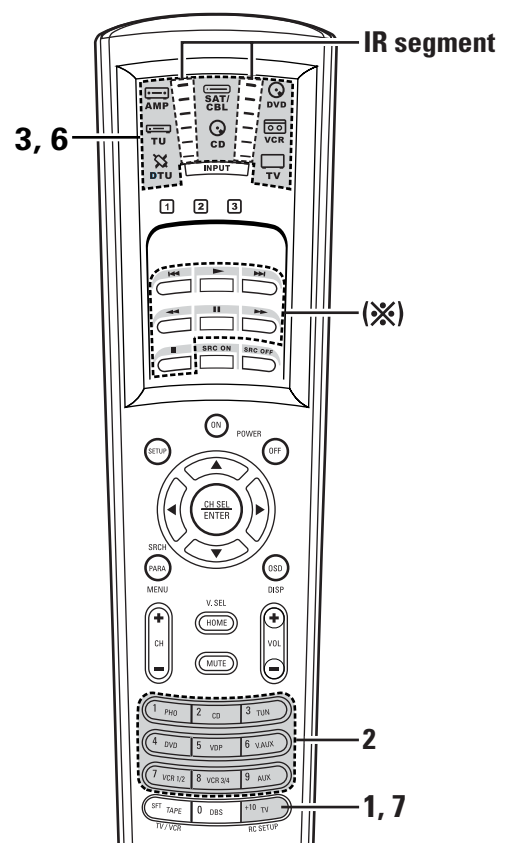


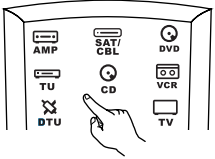
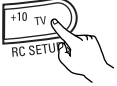
Punch Through

Buttons used in the CD, DVD, and VCR modes can be assigned to the buttons which are not normally used in the TV and SAT/CBL modes. For example, when the DVD mode is set to the punch through mode in the TV mode, the DVD mode's PLAY (▶), STOP (■), MANUAL SEARCH (◀◀, ▶▶), AUTO SEARCH (◀◀, ▶▶) and PAUSE (||) button's signals are sent in the TV mode. — (※)

- 1 Press and hold the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.
- 2 Press the "9, 8, 4" button (9 → 8 → 4) to select punch through setting.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.
- 3 Select the mode selector button (CD, DVD or VCR) you want to punch through.
 
- 4 Press the button you want to punch through (▶, ■, ◀◀, ▶▶, ◀◀, ▶▶ or ||).
 

- 5 Repeat step 4.



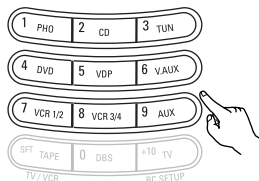
- 6 Press the mode selector button (TV or SAT/CBL) for which you want to set the punch through.
 
- 7 Press and hold the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds to register the system call.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.

Setting the back light's lighting time

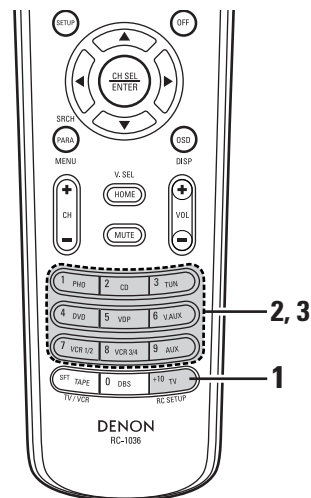
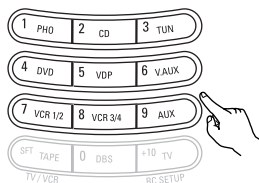
- 1** Press and hold the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.



- 2** Press the "9, 7, 3" button (9 → 7 → 3) to select punch through setting.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.



- 3** Press the NUMBER button (1 to 5) you want to adjust the lighting time (5 sec ~ 25 sec).
 - Lighting time
 - 1: 5 sec
 - 2: 10 sec (factory default)
 - 3: 15 sec
 - 4: 20 sec
 - 5: 25 sec



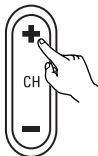
Setting the brightness

- The brightness of the display can be adjusted in 5 levels.
- The default brightness setting is level 3 (level 5 = brightest).

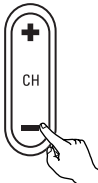
- 1** Press and hold the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.



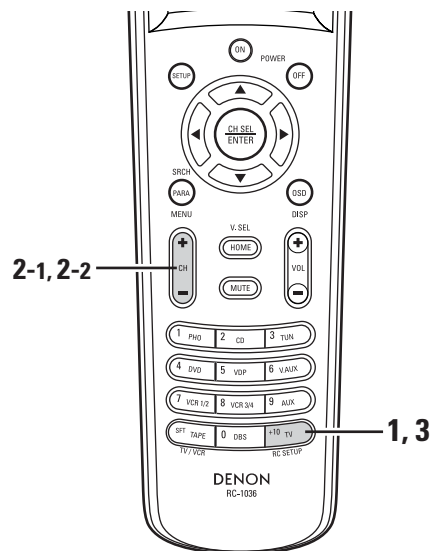
- 2-1** For 1 brightness step increase: Press the CHANNEL + button.



- 2-2** For 1 brightness step decrease: Press the CHANNEL - button.

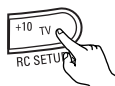
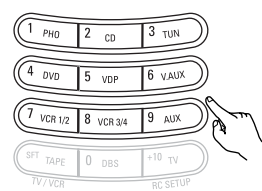
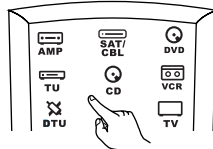


- 3** Press and hold the RC SETUP button to exit programming.
 - The IR segment twice as confirmation.



Resetting

(1) Resetting the single learned button

- 1** Press and hold the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.
- 2** Press the "9, 7, 6" button (9 → 7 → 6).
 - The IR segment blinks twice.
- 3** Press the mode selector button.
 
- 4** Press the learned button you want to reset twice.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.

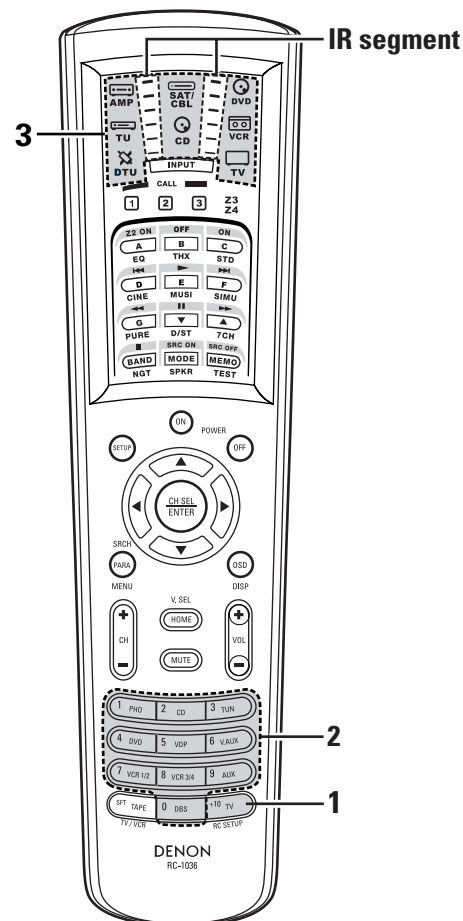
※ Other key can be deleted by repeating steps 1 to 4.

(2) Resetting all learned buttons

- 1** Press and hold the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.
- 2** Press the 9, 7, 6 button (9 → 7 → 6).
 - The IR segment blinks twice.
- 3** Press the mode selector button you want to reset twice.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.

(3) Resetting the system call buttons

- 1** Press and hold the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.
- 2** Press the 9, 7, 8 button (9 → 7 → 8).
 - The IR segment blinks twice.
- 3** Press the SYSTEM CALL button (1 to 3) you want to reset.
- 4** Press and hold the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds to clear the system call.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.



(4) Resetting the punch through setting

- 1** Press the mode selector button (TV or SAT / CBL) you want to reset.
- 2** Press and hold the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.
- 3** Press the 9, 8, 4 button (9 → 8 → 4).
 - The IR segment blinks twice.
- 4** Press and hold the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds to reset the punch through setting.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.

(5) All reset function

- 1** Press and hold the RC SETUP button for at least three seconds.
 - The IR segment blinks twice.
- 2** Press the 9, 8, 1 button (9 → 8 → 1).
 - The IR segment blinks four times.
 - Clear the entire system memory, which will restore the remote control unit to the factory default settings.

※ Only use this if you wish to clear all customized settings and memories and restore the unit to its out-of-the-box factory default settings.

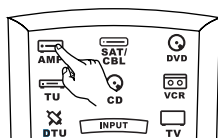
9 OPERATION

Operating the Remote control unit

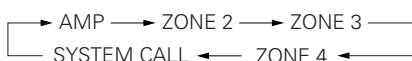
The RC-1036 remote control has a backlit EL display whose contents change according to the mode or function selected, with the appropriate remote commands for that mode or function.

■ Operate the this unit

The AMP button is the main mode for controlling the AVC-A1XVA in the main room (MAIN ZONE).



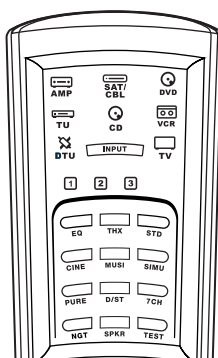
※ The function switches as shown below each time one of the AMP button is pressed.



※ The EL display switches as shown below with respect to the selected mode.

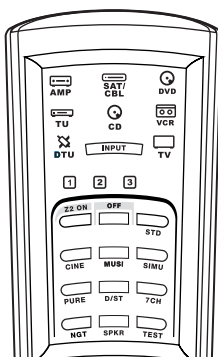
■ AMP mode

To operate the MAIN ZONE function.



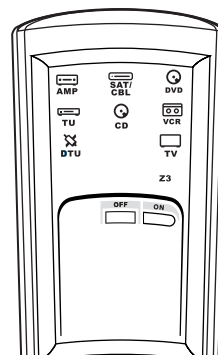
■ ZONE2 mode

To operate the ZONE2 function.



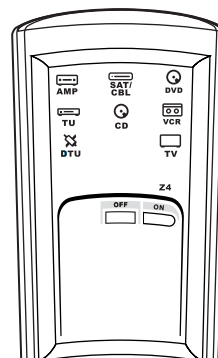
■ ZONE3 mode

To operate the ZONE3 function.



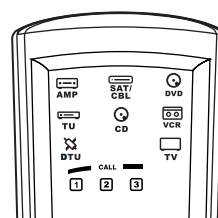
■ ZONE4 mode

To operate the ZONE4 function.



■ SYSTEM CALL mode

To operate the "System call" function.



NOTE:

- This function provides the ability to program a series of individual remote control codes into a macro stored under one of the number pad's numeric choices (See pages 123, 124).

Before operating

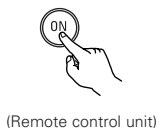
1 Refer to "CONNECTIONS" (See pages 10 ~ 23) and check that all connections are correct.

2 Press the POWER switch.



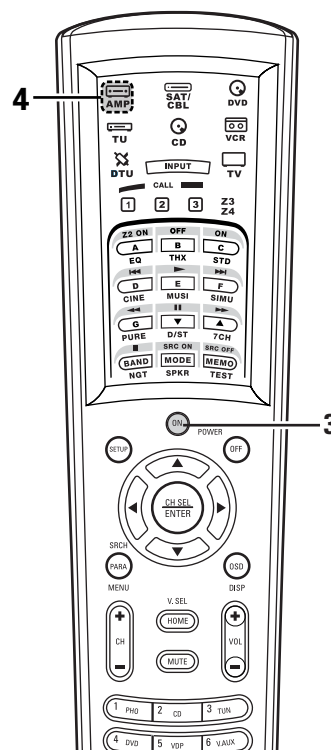
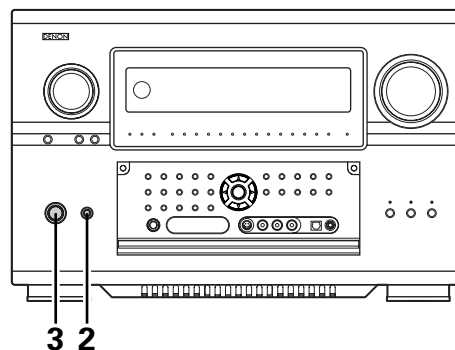
- **ON**
The power turns on and the power indicator lights.
Set the power switch to this position to turn the power on and off from the included Remote control unit.
- **OFF**
The power turns off and indicator is off.
In this position, the power cannot be turned on and off from the Remote control unit.

3 Turn on the power
Press the POWER ON/STANDBY button.

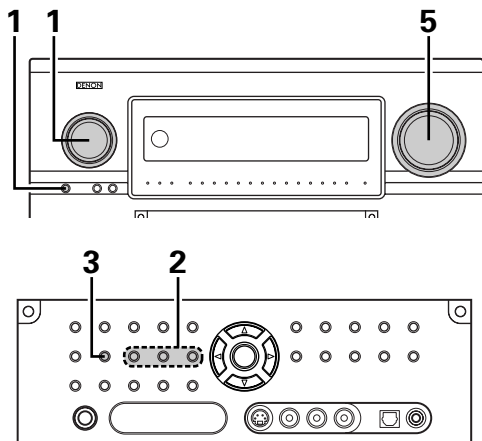


- When pressed, the power turns on and the display lights. The sound is muted for several seconds, after which the unit operates normally.
- When pressed again, the power turns off, the standby mode is set and the display turns off.
- Whenever the ON/STANDBY button is in the STANDBY state, the apparatus is still connected to the AC line voltage. Please be sure to turn off the power switch or unplug the cord when you leave home for, say, a vacation.

4 Select "AMP" using the AMP button.
(only when operating with the Remote control unit)

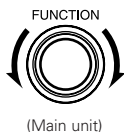


Playing the input source



1 Select the input source to be played.

Example: CD

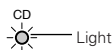


(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

※ When the input source is selected the input indicator lights.



※ To select the input source when ZONE2 SELECT or ZONE3/4/REC SELECT is selected, press the SOURCE button then operate the input function selector.



(Main unit)

2 Select the input mode.

- Selecting the AUTO, PCM and DTS modes

The mode switches as shown below each time the INPUT MODE button is pressed.

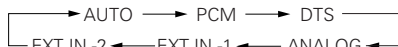
※ When operating the main unit:

The mode switches as shown below each time the INPUT MODE button on the main unit is pressed:

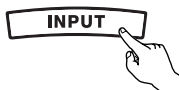


※ When operating the remote control unit:

The mode switches as shown below each time the INPUT MODE button on the remote control unit is pressed:



(Main unit)



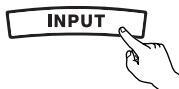
(Remote control unit)

- Selecting the analog mode

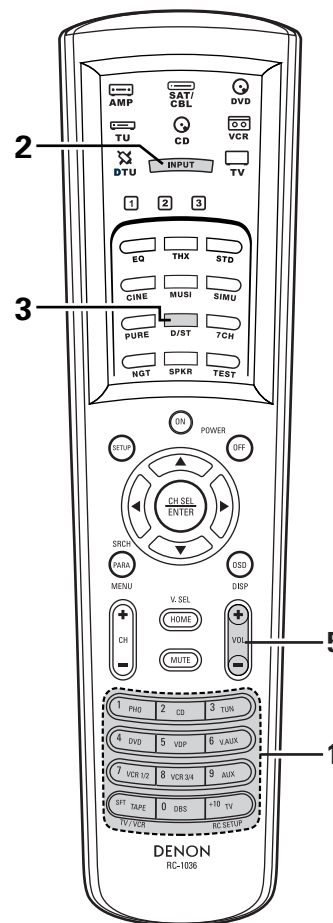
Press the ANALOG button on the main unit or INPUT MODE button on the remote control unit to switch to the analog input.



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)



Input mode selection function

Different input modes can be selected for the different input sources. The selected input modes for the separate input sources are stored in the memory.

① AUTO (All auto mode)

In this mode, the types of signals being input to the digital and analog input jacks for the selected input source are detected and the program in the AVC-A1XVA's surround decoder is selected automatically upon playback. This mode can be selected for all input sources other than PHONO.

The presence or absence of digital signals is detected, the signals input to the digital input jacks are identified and decoding and playback are performed automatically in DTS, Dolby Digital or PCM (2 channel stereo) format. If no digital signal is being input, the analog input jacks are selected.

Use this mode to play Dolby Digital signals.

② PCM (exclusive PCM signal playback mode)

Decoding and playback are only performed when PCM signals are being input.

Note that noise may be generated when using this mode to play signals other than PCM signals.

③ DTS (exclusive DTS signal playback mode)

Decoding and playback are only performed when DTS signals are being input.

④ ANALOG (exclusive analog audio signal playback mode)

The signals input to the analog input jacks are decoded and played.

⑤ EXT. IN (external decoder input jack selection mode)

The signals being input to the external decoder input jacks are played. (See page 131)

- Selecting the external input (EXT. IN) mode
Press the EXT. IN on the main unit or INPUT MODE button on the remote control unit to switch the external input.



Note on playing a source encoded with DTS

- Noise may be generated at the beginning of playback and while searching during DTS playback in the AUTO mode. If so, play in the DTS mode.

3

Select the play mode.

Example: Stereo



- ※ The mode switches as shown below each time the DIRECT/STEREO button on the Main unit is pressed.

DIRECT ↔ STEREO

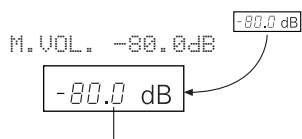
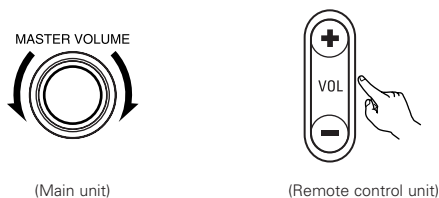
4

Start playback on the selected component.

- For operating instructions, refer to the component's manual.

5

Adjust the volume.



The volume level is displayed on the master volume level display.

- ※ The volume can be adjusted within the range of -80 to +18 dB, in steps of 0.5 dB. However, when the channel level is set as described on pages 53, 54 or 137, 138, if the volume for any channel is set at +0.5 dB or greater, the volume cannot be adjusted up to 18 dB. (In this case the maximum volume adjustment range is "18 dB — (Maximum value of channel level)".)

Input mode when playing DTS sources

- Noise will be output if DTS-compatible CDs or LDs are played in the "ANALOG" or "PCM" mode.
When playing DTS-compatible sources, be sure to connect the source component to the digital input jacks (OPTICAL/COAXIAL) and set the input mode to "DTS".

Input mode display

- In the AUTO mode



- In the DIGITAL PCM mode



- In the DIGITAL DTS mode



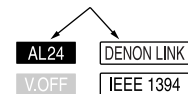
- In the ANALOG mode



- In the EXT.IN mode



Depending on the input signal.



Input signal display

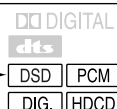
- DOLBY DIGITAL



- DTS



- PCM



Depending on the input signal.

- The [DSD] indicator lights when the DENON LINK have been connected and the DSD signals have been inputted. (See page 20)

Depending on the input signal.

- The [HDCD] indicator lights when digital signals are being input with a player that supports HDCD playback.

- ※ The [DIG.] indicator lights when digital signals are being input properly. If the [DIG.] indicator does not light, check whether the digital input component setup (See pages 60, 61) and connections are correct and whether the component's power is turned on.

- ※ AL24 processing is activated when PCM signals are played while the surround mode is set to PURE DIRECT, DIRECT, STEREO, MULTI CH PURE DIRECT, MULTI CH DIRECT or MULTI CH IN.

- ※ Advanced AL24 processing is activated when PCM (2-channel) signals are played while the surround mode is set to PURE DIRECT or DIRECT.

NOTE:

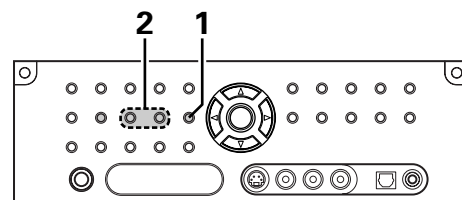
- The [DIG.] indicator will light when playing CD-ROMs containing data other than audio signals, but no sound will be heard.

Playback using the external input (EXT. IN) jacks

- 1 Set the external input (EXT. IN) mode.
Press the EXT. IN button on the main unit or INPUT MODE button on the remote control unit to switch the external input.

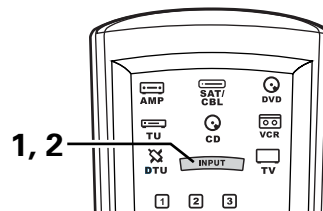
The playback switches as shown below each time the button is pressed.

EXT. IN-1 ↔ EXT. IN-2



- EXT. IN-1
Once this is selected, the input signals connected to the FRONT-L, FRONT-R, CENTER, SURR.-L A/B (surround left A/B), SURR.-R A/B (surround right A/B) SB-L (surround back left) and SB-R (surround back right) channels of the EXT. IN jacks are output directly to the front (left and right), center, surround A/B (left and right A/B) and surround back (left and right) speaker systems as well as the pre-out jacks.
In addition, the signal input to the SW (subwoofer) jack is output to the PRE OUT SW (subwoofer) jack.

- EXT. IN-2
Once this is selected, the input signals connected to the FRONT-L, FRONT-R, CENTER, SURR.-L (surround left) and SURR.-R (surround right) channels of the EXT. IN jacks are output directly to the front (left and right), center and surround (left and right) speaker systems as well as the pre-out jacks.
In addition, the signal input to the SW (subwoofer) jack is output to the PRE OUT SW (subwoofer) jack.

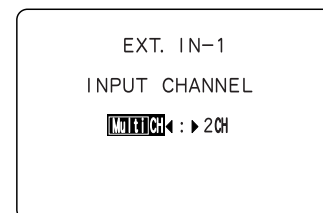
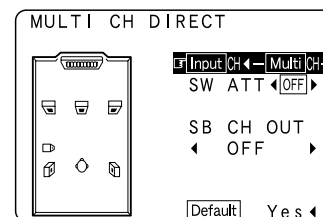


Playback using the external input jacks (EXT.IN-1 and EXT.IN-2)

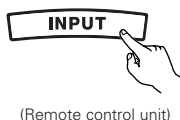
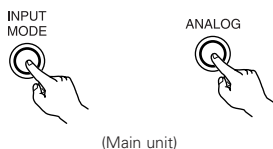
- ① When the "ANALOG" mode is selected at "3-2. EXT.IN Setup" at the System Setup:
The surround playback mode button does not function.
- ② When the "DSP" mode is selected at "3-2. EXT.IN Setup" at the System Setup: The surround playback mode button functions.

Press the SURROUND PARAMETER button to display the surround parameters screen.
Select the parameter (Cursor up/down) and select the setting value (Cursor left/right).
Press the SURROUND PARAMETER button to complete.

- Input CH parameter
2 CH: Select when the input source being played is a 2-channel source.
MULTI CH: Select when the input source being played is a multi-channel source.



- 2 C Cancelling the external input mode
To cancel the external input (EXT. IN) setting, press the INPUT MODE or ANALOG button on the main unit or INPUT MODE button on the remote control unit to switch to the desired input mode.



- When the input mode is set to EXT. IN (1 or 2), playback in the DIRECT, STEREO, DOLBY/DTS SURROUND, HOME THX CINEMA, WIDE SCREEN, 9CH STEREO and DSP SIMULATION modes is only possible when DSP MODE is selected for EXT.IN Setup at System Setup.
- When the DIRECT button is pressed while the input channel parameter is set to "MULTI CH", the MULTI CH DIRECT mode is set. When the STANDARD button is pressed, the MULTI CH IN mode is set. (See page 193)
- To lower the subwoofer channel level in the EXT. IN mode, press SURROUND PARAMETER and select "SW. ATT".
For some players the playback level of the SW channel may seem strong. If so, set to "ON".

NOTES:

- In play modes other than the external input mode, the signals connected to these jacks cannot be played. In addition, signals cannot be output from channels not connected to the input jacks.
- The external input mode can be set for any input source. To watch video while listening to sound, select the input source to which the video signal is connected, then set this mode.

■ Playback using the DENON LINK connector

Digital transfer and multi-channel playback of DVD-Audio discs and other multi-channel sources is possible by connecting the AVC-A1XVA to a Denon DVD player equipped with a DENON Link connector using the connection cable included with the DVD player.

With discs on which special copyright protection measures have been taken, however, the digital signals may not be output from the DVD player. In this case, connect the DVD player's analog multi-channel output to the AVC-A1XVA's EXT. IN-1 or EXT. IN-2 terminals for playback. Also refer to your DVD player's operating instructions.

Playing audio sources (CDs and DVDs)

The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with three 2-channel playback modes exclusively for music. Select the mode to suit your tastes.

1

PURE DIRECT mode

In this mode, the music is played with an extremely high level of sound quality.

When this mode is set, all the video-related circuits are turned off so that music signals can be reproduced with high quality. When an analog mode is selected, the digital processing circuitry is also turned off to achieve analog sound with even higher purity. (See NOTES page 132)

PURE
DIRECT



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

2

DIRECT mode

Use this mode to achieve good quality 2-channel sound while watching images. In this mode, the audio signals bypass such circuits as the tone circuit and are transmitted directly, resulting in good quality sound.

DIRECT/
STEREO



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

- The mode switches as shown below each time the DIRECT/STEREO button on the Main unit is pressed.

DIRECT ↔ STEREO

- ※ When press SURROUND PARAMETER:
The subwoofer output can be controlled directly.

3

STEREO mode

Use this mode to adjust the tone and achieve the desired sound while watching images.

DIRECT/
STEREO



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

4

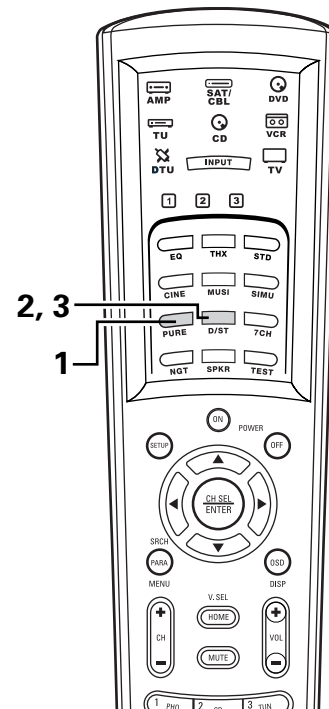
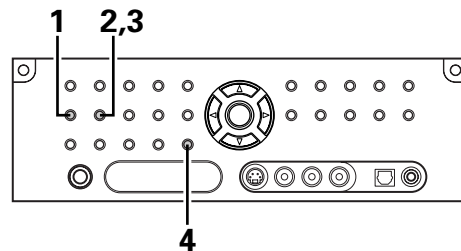
VIDEO ON/OFF button

When no video signals of a DVD, etc., are connected to the AVC-A1XVA and the DVD, etc., are connected directly to a TV, etc., the unneeded video circuitry can be turned off by selecting the "VIDEO OFF" setting.

VIDEO
ON/OFF



(Main unit)



NOTES:

- The system setup function cannot be used when the PURE DIRECT mode is set. To use the system setup function, cancel the PURE DIRECT mode.
- If the HDMI input terminal is selected, video outputs are outputted in the PURE DIRECT mode.
- The channel level and surround parameters in the PURE DIRECT mode are the same as in the DIRECT mode.

After starting playback

[1] Setting the Room EQ

- 1 The Room EQ switches as follows each time the ROOM EQ button is pressed.



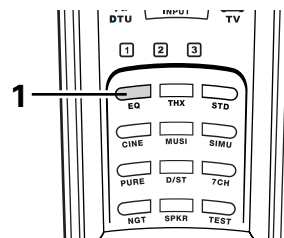
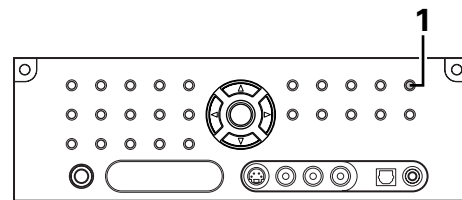
(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)



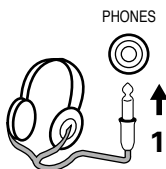
- ※ See page 43 for descriptions of the correction curves for the “Room EQ” function.
- ※ When “Audyssey” is selected, the MultEQ XT indicator lights green. If “Front” or “Flat” is selected, the MultEQ XT indicator lights red. The MultEQ XT indicator also lights red if the “Speaker Configuration”, “Delay Time”, “Channel Level” or “Crossover Frequency” is set manually after conducting the Auto Setup procedure.



[2] Listening over headphone

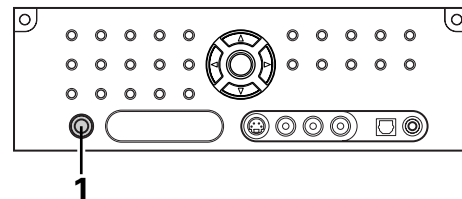
- 1 Plug the headphone plug into the jack.

- ※ Connect the headphone to the PHONES jack. The pre-out output (including the speaker output) is automatically turned off when headphones are connected.



NOTE:

- To prevent hearing loss, be careful not to raise the volume level excessively when using headphones.



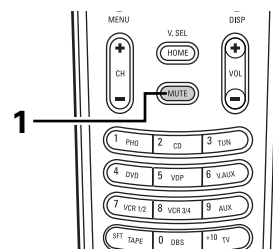
[3] Turning the sound off temporarily (MUTING)

- 1 Use this to mute the audio output temporarily. Press the MUTE button.



(Remote control unit)

- ※ Muting level is the same level as set with “7-3. Volume Control” (See page 105).
- ※ Cancelling MUTING mode. Press the MUTING button again, or press the volume up or down buttons on the Remote control, or adjust the volume up or down via the front panel volume control knob.

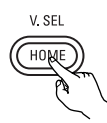


[4] Combining the currently playing sound with the desired image (VIDEO SELECT)

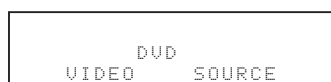
- 1 Press the Remote control unit or Main unit's VIDEO SELECT button until the desired image appears. The video source selected with the video select function is stored in the memory for the different input sources.



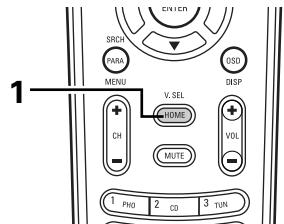
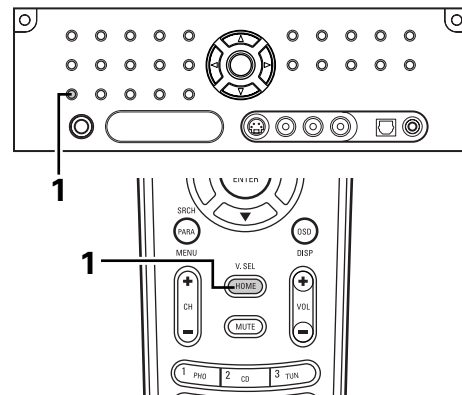
(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)



- ※ Cancelling simulcast playback.
 - Select “SOURCE” using the VIDEO SELECT button.



[5] Checking the currently playing program source, etc.

1

① On screen display

Each time an operation is performed, a description of that operation appears on the display connected to AVC-A1XVA's VIDEO MONITOR OUT jack. Also, the unit's operating status can be checked during playback by pressing the Remote control unit's ON SCREEN button.



Such information as the position of the input selector and the surround parameter settings is output in sequence.

② Front panel display

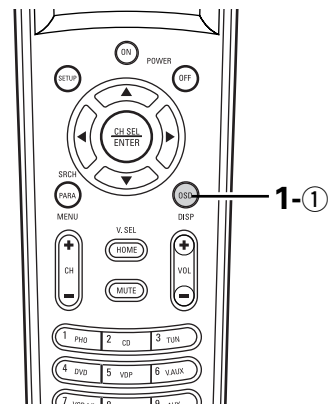
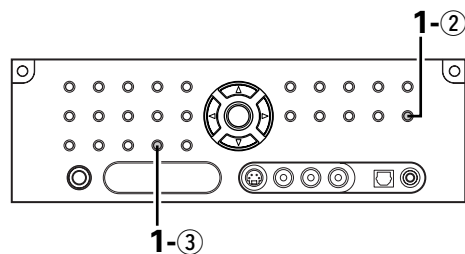
Descriptions of the unit's operations are also displayed on the front panel display. In addition, the display can be switched to check the unit's operating status while playing a source by pressing the STATUS button.



③ Using the dimmer function

Use this to change the brightness of the display.

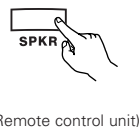
The display brightness changes in four steps (bright, medium, dim and off) by pressing the Main unit's DIMMER button repeatedly.



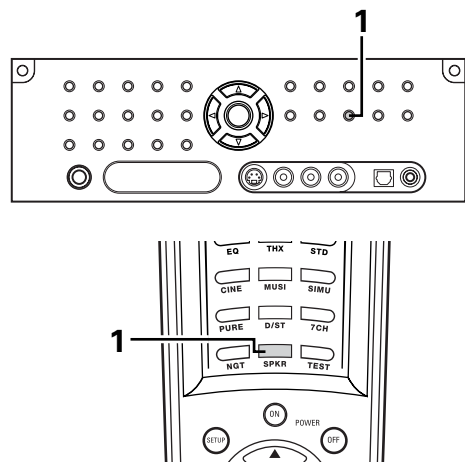
[6] Switching the surround speakers

1

The surround speakers switch as shown below each time the SPEAKER button is pressed.



※ This operation is possible when the setting for using both surround speakers A and B is made at "2-1. Speaker Configuration" (See pages 49, 50).



[7] Switching between HDMI and DVI monitor output

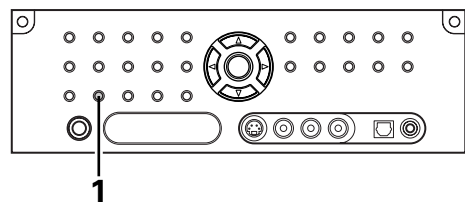
1

The monitor out terminal switch as shown below each time the MONITOR SELECT button is pressed.

HDMI ↔ DVI



※ This operation is possible when the HDMI or DVI input terminal is assigned to be input source at "4-1. HDMI / DVI In Assignment" (See pages 69, 70).

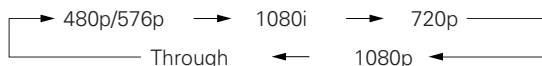


[8] Selection of resolution setting (SCALE)

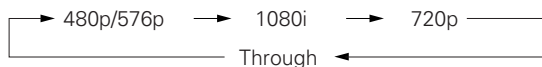
- 1 The resolution switches as follows each time the SCALE button is pressed.



When "HDMI" is selected for the "Scaler" setting:

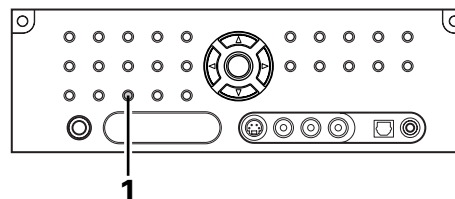


When "Component" is selected for the "Scaler" setting:



※ When the SCALE button is pressed, the current setting is shown on the display. If the SCALE button is pressed while the current setting is displayed, the "Resolution" setting can be changed.

※ See pages 73, 74 for descriptions of the different resolution settings.



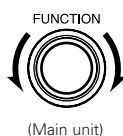
Multi-source recording/playback

[1] Playing one source while recording another (REC OUT mode)

- 1 Press the ZONE3/4/REC SELECT button until "ZONE3 SOURCE" appears on the display.

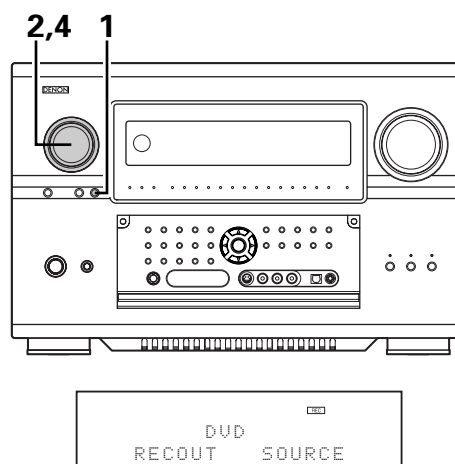
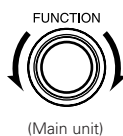


- 2 With "ZONE3 SOURCE" displayed, turn the FUNCTION knob until "RECOUT SOURCE" appears on the display. With "RECOUT SOURCE" displayed, turn the FUNCTION knob to select the source you wish to record.
 - The "REC" indicator lights.



- 3 Set the recording mode.
 - For operating instructions, refer to the manual of the component on which you want to record.

- 4 To cancel, turn the function knob and select "SOURCE".



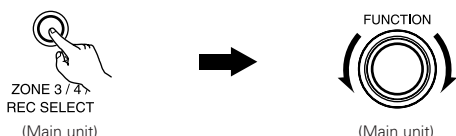
NOTES:

- Recording sources other than digital inputs selected in the REC OUT mode are also output to the ZONE3 audio output jacks.
- When the REC OUT mode is selected, the ZONE3 button on the Remote control unit cannot be operated.

[2] Recording Dolby Digital and DTS multichannel sources

- With this set it is possible to record Dolby Digital and DTS multichannel signals converted into 2-channel analog signals.
- The recording signals are output to the TAPE and VCR output terminals.
- Down-mixed analog signals converted into digital signals are output from the OPTICAL 3, 4 and 5 digital output terminals at this time.

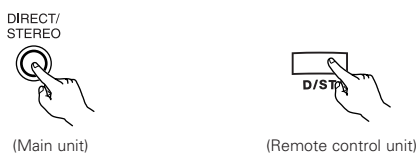
- 1 Press the ZONE3/4/REC SELECT button until "RECOUT ***" (ZONE3 ***) appears on the display. Then select "RECOUT SOURCE".



- 2 Set the input mode according to the source to be played.

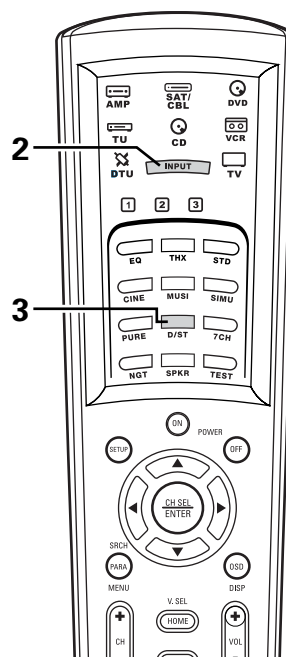
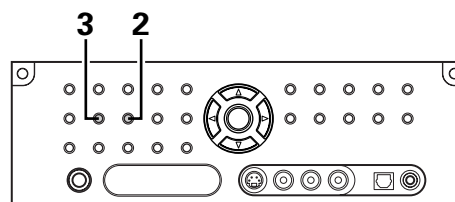
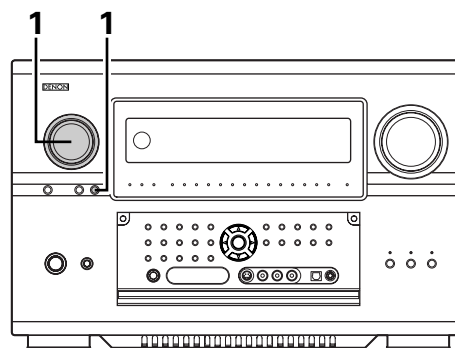


- 3 Set the surround mode by pressing the DIRECT/STEREO button.
 - The multichannel digital signals are down-mixed and output to the TAPE and VCR output terminals.



- 4 Set the recording mode.

※ This function does not work when "5.2 ch / 5.3 ch" is set for the MAIN ZONE's channel setup.



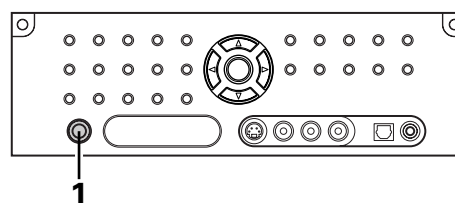
[3] Dolby Headphone recording

- When RECOUT mode is set to "source", with the AVC-A1XVA it is possible to output signals encoded in the Dolby Headphone mode from the recording output terminal and record them on a separate recorder.

- 1 The Dolby Headphone play mode is set when headphones are connected to the PHONES jack during playback in the DOLBY/DTS surround mode.

- 2 When this is done, signals encoded in the Dolby Headphone mode are automatically output from the recording output terminals (analog and digital) and can be recorded.

- 3 Select the parameters and set the desired mode, then record. (Refer to the 10 SURROUND "Dolby Headphone" pages 149, 150.)



NOTE:
Do not disconnect the headphones during recording.

10 SURROUND


Adjustment steps that need to be performed prior to surround sound playback

※ If the Auto Setup procedure has not been performed or the channel level has not been adjusted at the System Setup Menu, the settings below cannot be made.

[1] Test Tone

- Before playing with the surround function, be sure to use the test tones to adjust the playback level from the different speakers. This adjustment can be performed with the system setup (See pages 53, 54) or from the Remote control unit, as described below.
- Adjusting with the Remote control unit using the test tones is only possible in the "Auto" mode and only effective in the STANDARD (DOLBY/DTS SURROUND) and HOME THX CINEMA modes. The adjusted levels for the different modes are automatically stored in the memory.

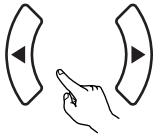
1



(Remote control unit)

Press the TEST TONE button.


2



(Remote control unit)

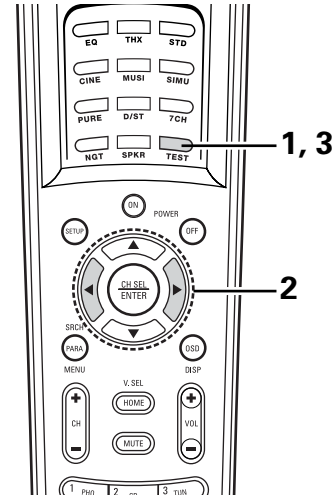
Test tones are output from the different speakers. Use the cursor left and right button to adjust the channel level so that the volume of the test tones is the same for all the speakers.

3



(Remote control unit)

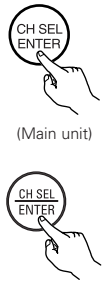
After completing the adjustment, press the TEST TONE button again.



[2] Channel Level

- After adjusting using the test tones, adjust the channel levels either according to the playback sources or to suit your tastes, as described below.

1



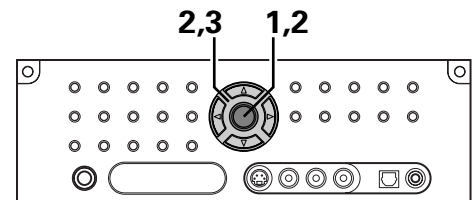
(Main unit)
(Remote control unit)

Press the ENTER button on the Main unit or Remote control unit. The screen below appears.

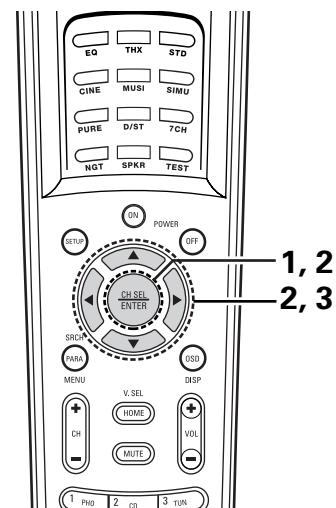
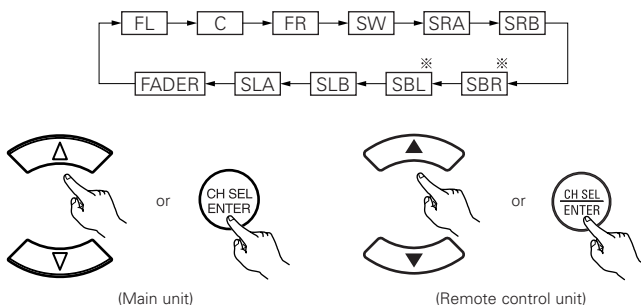
Channel Vol.

FL	◀ 0.0dB	SR A	0.0dB
C	0.0dB	SR B	0.0dB
FR	0.0dB	SBR	0.0dB
SW	0.0dB	SBL	0.0dB
		SL B	0.0dB
		SL A	0.0dB
		Fader	
		FRONT	▶ REAR

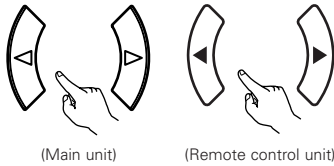
※ Channels which is not used are not displayed.



- 2** Select the speaker level you want to adjust.
- When pressing the ENTER button, the channel switches as shown below each time the ENTER button is pressed.



3



Adjust the level of the selected speaker.

- The adjustment range for the different channels is +12 dB to -12 dB in step of 0.5 dB.
- The sound from the subwoofer can be completely cut by lowering the SW (subwoofer) setting one additional from -12 dB (setting it to "OFF").

※ When the surround back speaker setting is set to "1spkr" for "2-1. Speaker Configuration" (See pages 49, 50), this is set to "SB".

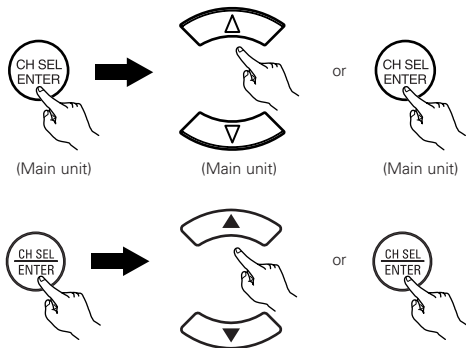
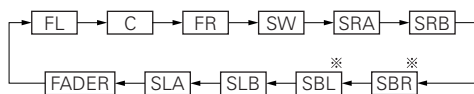
Fader function

- This function makes it possible to lower the volume of the front channels (FL, C and FR) or the rear channels (SL, SR, SBL and SBR) together. Use it for example to adjust the balance of the sound from each position when multi-channel music sources are played.

1

Press the ENTER button then select "Fader".

- When pressing the ENTER button, the channel switches in the order shown below each time the ENTER button is pressed.



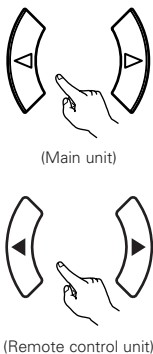
Channel Vol.					
FL	0. 0dB	SR A	0. 0dB		
C	0. 0dB	SR B	0. 0dB		
FR	0. 0dB	SBR	0. 0dB		
SW	0. 0dB	SBL	0. 0dB		
		SL B	0. 0dB		
		SL A	0. 0dB		
		Fader			
		FRONT ◀: ▶REAR			

※ When the surround back speaker setting is set to "1spkr" for "2-1. Speaker Configuration" (See pages 49, 50), this is set to "SB".

2

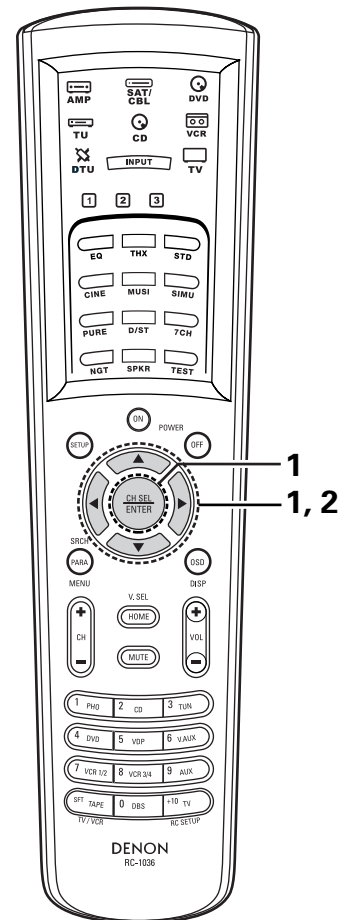
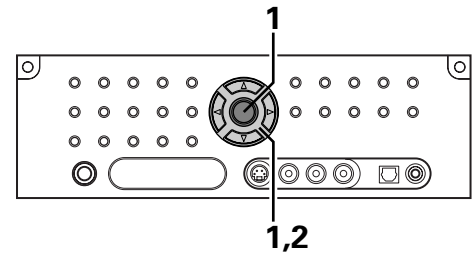
Press the cursor left button to reduce the volume of the front channels, the cursor right button to reduce the volume of the rear channels.

※ The fader function does not affect the subwoofer channel.



Channel Vol.					
FL	- 1. 0dB	SR A	0. 0dB		
C	- 1. 0dB	SR B	0. 0dB		
FR	- 1. 0dB	SBR	0. 0dB		
SW	0. 0dB	SBL	0. 0dB		
		SL B	0. 0dB		
		SL A	0. 0dB		
		Fader			
		FRONT ◀: ▶REAR			

Example: When "FRONT" is selected

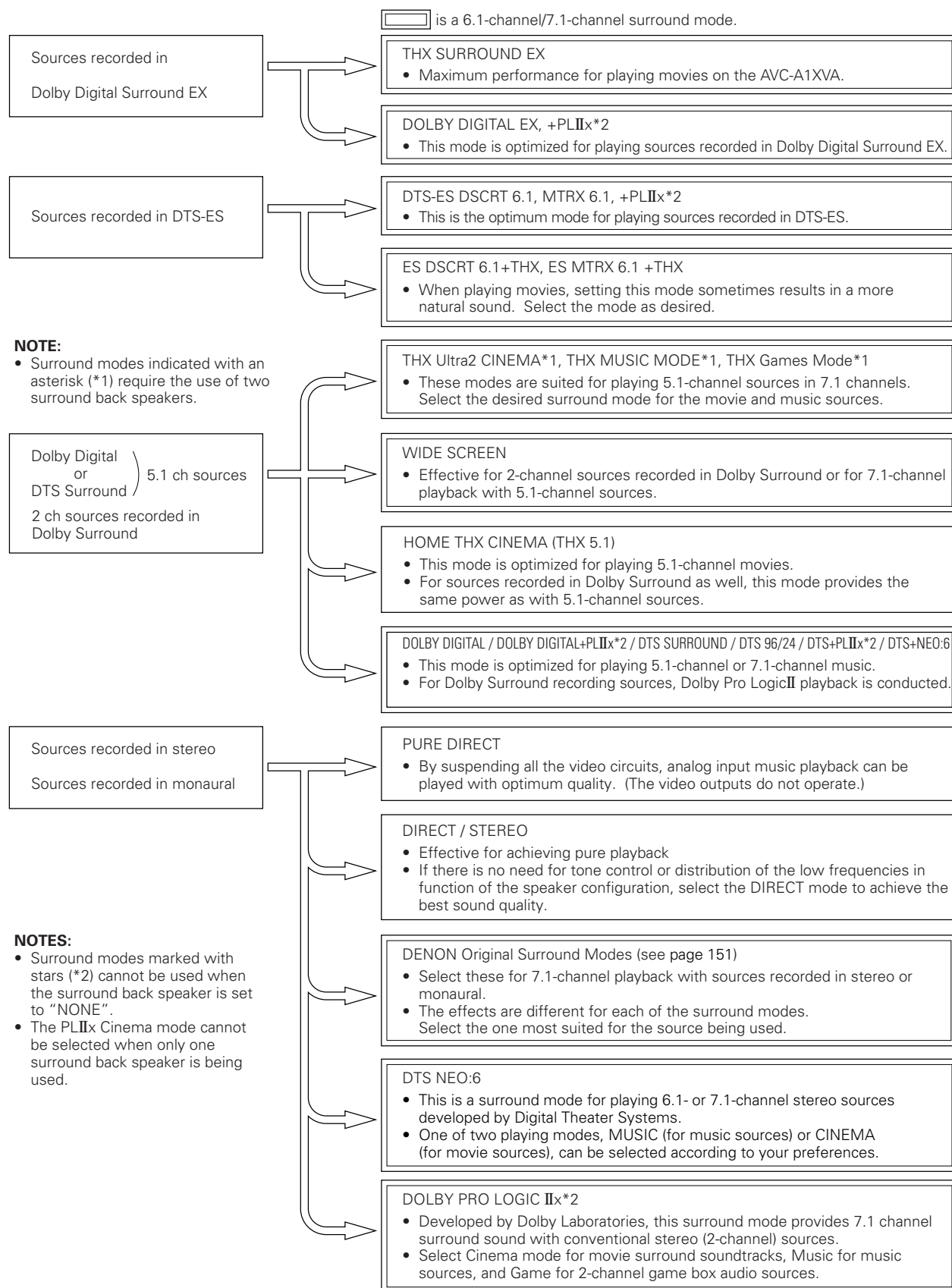


※ The channel whose channel level is adjusted lowest can be faded to -12 dB using the fader function.

※ If the channel levels are adjusted separately after adjusting the fader, the fader adjustment values are cleared, so adjust the fader again.

Playing modes for different sources

The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with many surround modes. We recommend using the surround modes as described below in order to achieve the maximum effect for the specific signal source.



• Though we recommend selecting the surround mode as described above, other surround modes can also be selected.

THX Surround EX / Home THX Cinema mode

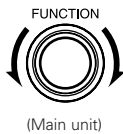
When the HOME THX CINEMA button is pressed, the surround mode is set as follows according to the signal that is played:

- ① THX Surround EX (THX Ultra2 Cinema)
- ② Home THX CINEMA
- ③ THX 5.1
- ④ ES DSCRT 6.1+THX, ES MTRX 6.1 +THX

When the HOME THX CINEMA mode is set when a DVD is played, check the DVD player's digital output setting and change the setting to one for which Dolby Digital and DTS bit stream signals can be output ("bit stream", for example).

[1] Playing sources recorded in Dolby Surround in the Home THX Cinema surround mode

- 1** ① Select the input source.



(Main unit)

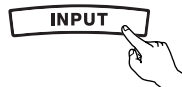


(Remote control unit)

- ② Set the input mode to "AUTO".



(Main unit)

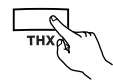


(Remote control unit)


- 2** Select the Home THX Cinema mode.



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

- 3** Play a program source with the  **DOLBY SURROUND** mark.

- For operating instructions, refer to the manuals of the respective components.

- 4** Adjust volume.



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

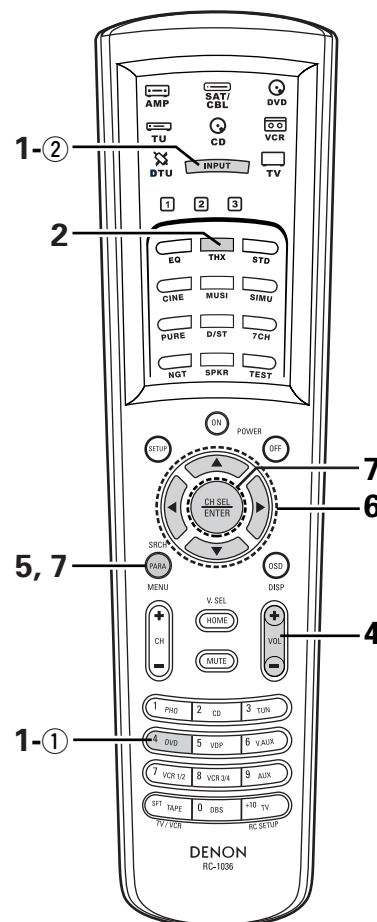
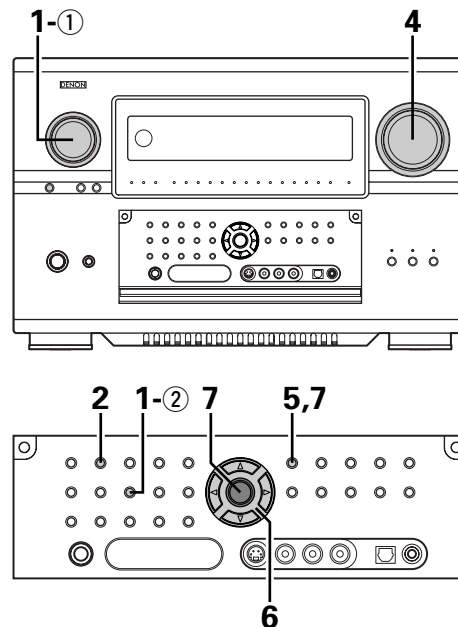
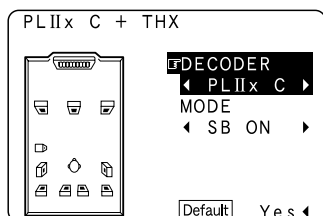
- 5** Display the Surround Parameter menu and set the parameters according to the source.



(Main unit)



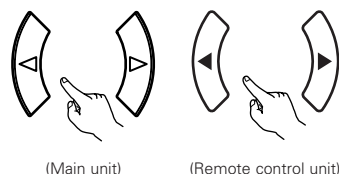
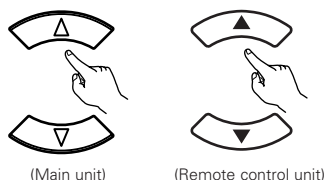
(Remote control unit)



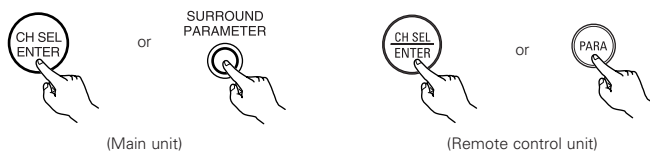
6

① Select the parameter.

② Select the setting.



7



Press the ENTER or SURROUND PARAMETER button to complete the setting.

Surround parameters ①

DECODER:

Select the decoder to be used when playing 2-channel sources in the Home THX Cinema mode.

PLIIx C.....The signals are decoded in the Dolby Pro Logic IIx Cinema mode before undergoing THX processing.

PLII C.....The signals are decoded in the Dolby Pro Logic II Cinema mode before undergoing THX processing.

PL.....The signals are decoded in the Dolby Pro Logic mode before undergoing THX processing.

NEO:6 C..The signals are decoded in the NEO:6 Cinema mode before undergoing THX processing.

MODE/SB CH OUT:

Select the surround back channel playback method or mode.

ON.....This is the recommended play mode for using the surround back channel when DTS NEO:6 is selected.

OFF.....This is the recommended play mode when Dolby Pro Logic II is selected. The surround back channel is not played.

Checking the input signal

The input signal can be checked by pressing the Remote control unit's ON SCREEN button. (See page 134)



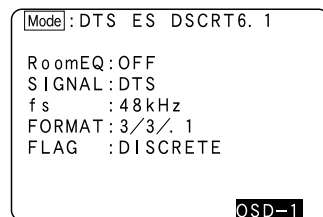
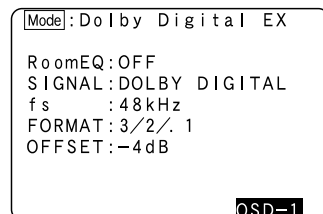
- SIGNAL: Displays the type of signal (DTS, DOLBY DIGITAL, PCM, etc.).
- fs: Displays the input signal's sampling frequency.
- FORMAT: Displays the input signal's number of channels.
"Number of front channels/Number of surround channels/LFE on/off"
"SURROUND" is displayed for 2-channel signal sources recorded in Dolby Surround.
- OFFSET: Displays the dialog normalization offset value. (See page 145)
- FLAG: Displays the special identification signal recorded in the input signal. (See page 142)
"MATRIX" is displayed if the input signal has undergone matrix processing,
"DISCRETE" is displayed if the input signal has undergone discrete processing.
Not displayed when no identification signal is recorded.

In addition, screen information is displayed in the following order when the ON SCREEN button is pressed repeatedly:

- OSD-1 Audio input signal
- OSD-2 Video information
- OSD-3 Input/output
- OSD-4 Auto surround mode
- OSD-5 USER MODE 1
- OSD-6 USER MODE 2
- OSD-7 USER MODE 3

NOTES:

- OSD-4: This is displayed when the auto surround mode is set to "ON" (see page 80) and the input mode is set to "Auto". It is not displayed when the input mode is set to "Analog" or "EXT. IN-1,-2".
- OSD-2: This is not displayed on ZONE2 MONITOR OUT when ZONE2 ON SCREEN button is pressed.



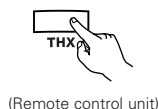
[2] To play in the THX Surround EX/Home THX Cinema Surround mode for sources recorded in Dolby Digital or DTS

- 1 Select the program source.

Selecting a digital input source

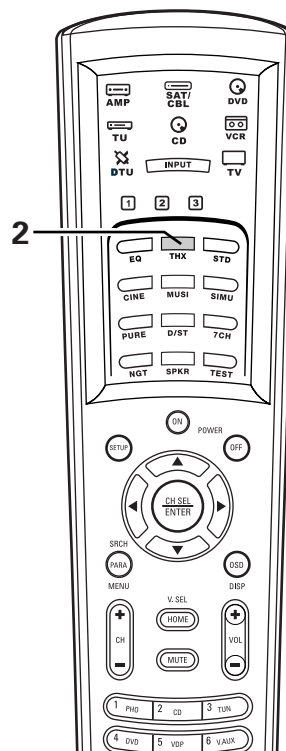
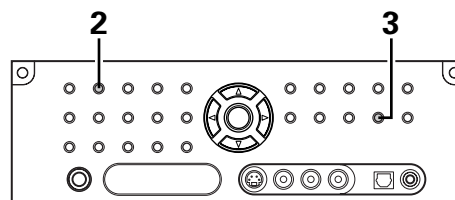
 Perform step 1 under "Dolby Digital mode and DTS Surround" (See page 143).

- 2 Select the Home THX Cinema mode.



- 3 Play a program source with the mark.
 For operating instructions, refer to the manuals of the respective components.
 The channel status information during playback of Dolby Digital and DTS sources can be checked using the STATUS button on the Main unit.

- DIGITAL** — Light
 - The Dolby Digital indicator lights when playing Dolby Digital sources.
- Light
 - The DTS indicator lights when playing DTS sources.
- Light
 - Press the SURROUND BACK button. Lights when the Surround Back CH is on.



Surround parameters ②

For instructions on setting the surround parameters, see page 140.

MODE/SB CH OUT:

Select the surround back channel playback method or mode.

(1) (Multi channel source)

- THX Surround EX.....Dolby Digital signals are played in the THX Surround EX mode.
- Ultra2 Cinema.....The signals are played in the THX Ultra2 Cinema mode.
- Music ModeThe signals are played in the THX Music mode.
- Games Mode.....The signals are played in the THX Games mode.
- NON MTRX.....The same signals as those of the surround channels are output from the surround back channels.
- MTRX ON.....The surround channel signals undergo digital matrix processing and are output from the surround back channels.
- SB OFF (OFF)No signal is played from the surround back channels.
- ES MTRXWhen playing DTS signals, the surround back signals undergo digital matrix processing for playback.
- ES DSCRT.....When a signal identifying the source as a discrete 6.1-channel source is included in the DTS signals, the surround back signals included in the source are played.
- PLIIx CinemaProcessing is performed with the Cinema mode of the PLIIx decoder and the Surround Back channel is reproduced.
- PLIIx Music.....Processing is performed with the Music mode of the PLIIx decoder and the Surround Back channel is reproduced.

(2) (2ch source)

- OFF.....Playback is conducted without using the surround back speaker.
- ON.....Playback is conducted using the surround back speaker.

※ This operation can be performed directly using the SURROUND BACK button on the Main unit or Remote control unit.

AFDM (Auto Flag Detect Mode):

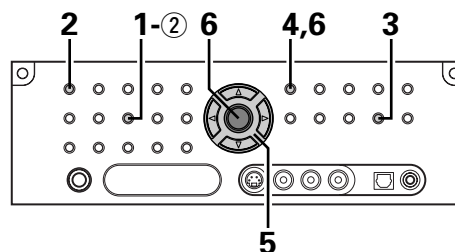
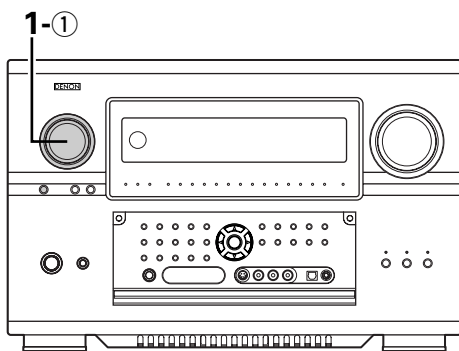
ONThis function only works with software on which a special identification signal is recorded. This software is scheduled to go on sale in the future.

This is a function for automatically playing in the 6.1-channel mode using the surround back speakers if the software is recorded in THX Surround EX or DTS-ES or in the normal 5.1-channel mode without using the surround back speakers when the software is not recorded in THX Surround EX or DTS-ES.

OFF.....Set the "OFF" mode to perform 6.1-channel playback with conventional 5.1-channel sources or sources on which the identification signal described below is not recorded.

※ Some discs recorded in Dolby Digital EX do not include EX flag. If the playing mode does not switch automatically when the AFDM turns "ON" during playback, manually set "SB CH OUT" to "PLIIx Cinema" or "MTRX ON".

Dolby Digital mode (only with digital input) and DTS Surround (only with digital input)

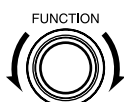


1

Select the input source.

Playback with digital input

- ① Select an input source set to digital (COAXIAL/OPTICAL) (see pages 60, 61).



(Main unit)

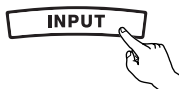


(Remote control unit)

- ② Set the input mode to "AUTO".



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

2

Select the STANDARD (Dolby/DTS Surround) mode.





(Main unit)




(Remote control unit)

3

Play a program source with the   mark.

 Light

- The Dolby Digital indicator lights when playing Dolby Digital sources.

 Light

- The DTS indicator lights when playing DTS sources.

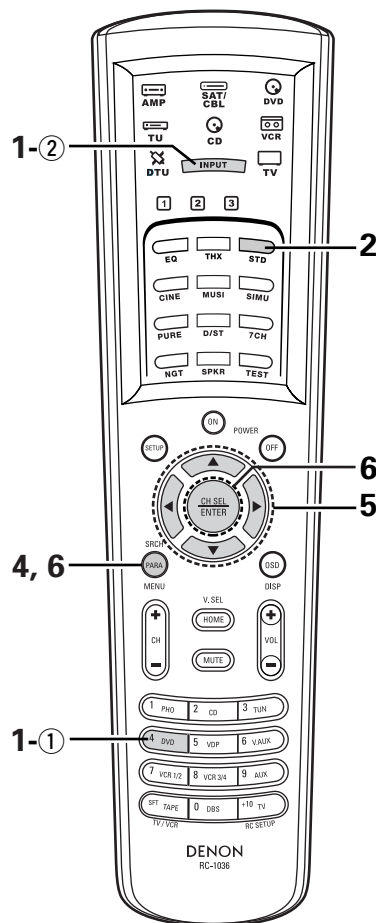
 Light

- Press the SURROUND BACK button. Lights when the Surround Back CH is on.

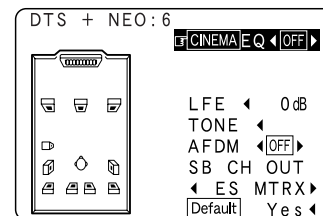
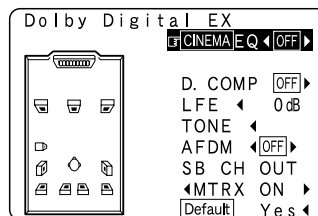
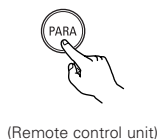
 Light



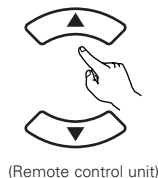
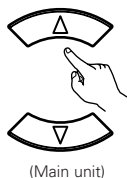
(Main unit)



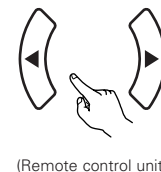
4 Display the Surround Parameter menu.



5 ① Select the parameter.



② Select the setting.



6 Press the ENTER or SURROUND PARAMETER button to complete the setting.



or



or



NOTE:

- When "Default" is selected and the cursor left button is pressed, "CINEMA EQ." and "D.COMP." are automatically turned off, "LFE" is reset, and "Tone" is set to the default value.

Surround parameters ③

CINEMA EQ. (Cinema Equalizer):

The Cinema EQ function gently decreases the level of the extreme high frequencies, compensating for overly-bright sounding motion picture soundtracks. Select this function if the sound from the front speakers is too bright.

This function only works in the Dolby Pro Logic IIx, Dolby Pro Logic, Dolby Digital, DTS Surround, DTS NEO:6 and WIDE SCREEN modes.

D.COMP. (Dynamic Range Compression):

Motion picture soundtracks have tremendous dynamic range (the contrast between very soft and very loud sounds). For listening late at night, or whenever the maximum sound level is lower than usual, the Dynamic Range Compression allows you to hear all of the sounds in the soundtrack (but with reduced dynamic range). (This only works when playing program sources recorded in Dolby Digital or DTS.) Select one of the four parameters ("OFF", "LOW", "MID" (middle) or "HI" (high)). Set to OFF for normal listening.

This parameter is displayed only when playing compatible sources in DTS mode.

LFE (Low Frequency Effect):

This sets the level of the LFE (Low Frequency Effect) sounds included in the source when playing program sources recorded in Dolby Digital, DTS, DVD-Audio or Super Audio CD.

Program source and adjustment range:

1. Dolby Digital: -10 dB to 0 dB
2. DTS Surround: -10 dB to 0 dB

※ When DTS encoded movie software is played, it is recommended that the LFE LEVEL be set to 0 dB for correct DTS playback.

※ When DTS encoded music software is played, it is recommended that the LFE LEVEL be set to -10 dB for correct DTS playback.

TONE:

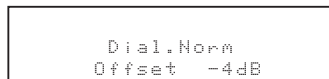
This adjusts the tone control. (See pages 153, 154)

This can be set individually for the separate surround mode other than PURE DIRECT, DIRECT and Home THX Cinema mode.

■ Dialogue Normalization

Dialogue Normalization (Dial Norm) is a feature of Dolby Digital, which is used to keep the programs at the same average listening level so the user does not have to change the volume control between Dolby Digital programs. When playing back software which has been encoded in Dolby Digital, sometimes you may see a brief message in the front panel display which will read "Dial Norm X dB" (X being a numeric value). The display is showing how the program level relates with THX calibration level. If you want to play the program at calibrated theatrical levels, you may wish to adjust the volume. For example, if you see the following message: "Dial Norm +4 dB" in the front panel display, to keep the overall output level at THX calibrated loudness, just turn down the volume control by 4 dB. However, unlike a movie theater where the playback loudness is preset, you can choose your preferred volume setting for best enjoyment.

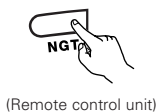
Display



Night mode

When listening at night or at lower volumes, the night mode improves listenability.

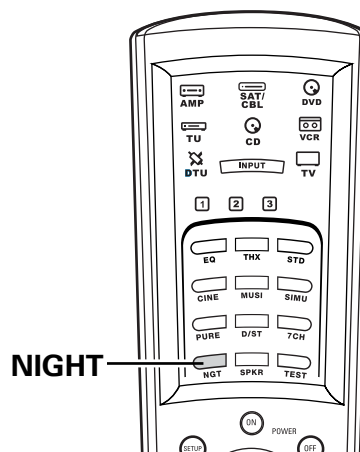
Press the NIGHT button on the remote control unit.



※ Canceling Night mode:
Press the NIGHT button again.

NOTES:

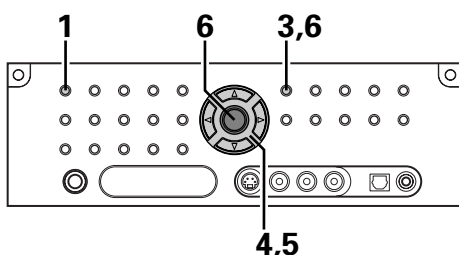
- The Night mode only works when playing program sources recorded in Dolby Digital.
- When the Night mode is set to "ON", the "D.COMP" surround parameter can not be selected.



Dolby Pro Logic IIx (Pro Logic II) mode

To play in the PLIIx mode, set "Sp.Back" at the Speaker Configuration setting to "1spkr" or "2spkr".

To play in the PLII mode, set "Surround Back" at the Power Amp Assign setting.



- 1 Select the Dolby Pro Logic IIx mode using the STANDARD button.



(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

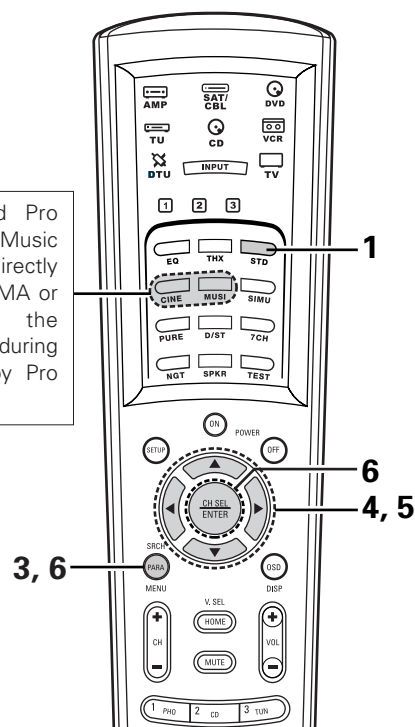
- The mode switches as shown below each time the STANDARD button is pressed.

DOLBY PLIIx ↔ DTS NEO:6



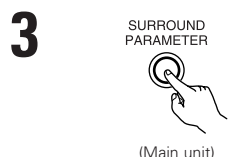
- The Dolby Pro Logic indicator lights.

The Dolby Surround Pro Logic IIx Cinema or Music mode can be chosen directly by pressing the CINEMA or MUSIC button on the Remote control unit during playback in the Dolby Pro Logic IIx mode.



- 2 Play a program source with the DOLBY SURROUND mark.

- For operating instructions, refer to the manuals of the respective components.



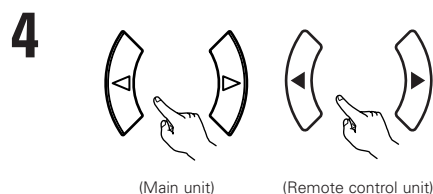
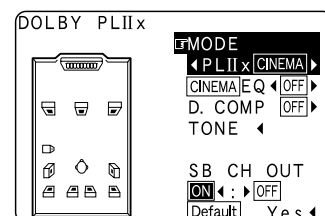
(Main unit)



(Remote control unit)

Display the Surround Parameter menu.

*Surr Parameter
MODE: ◀ PLIIx C ▶



(Main unit)

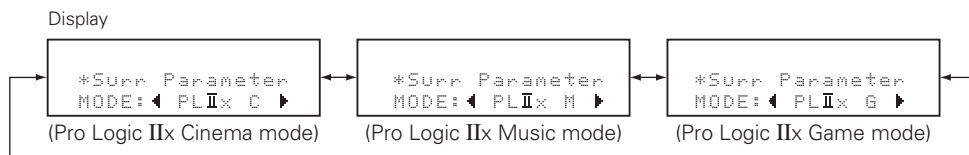
(Remote control unit)

Select the play mode.

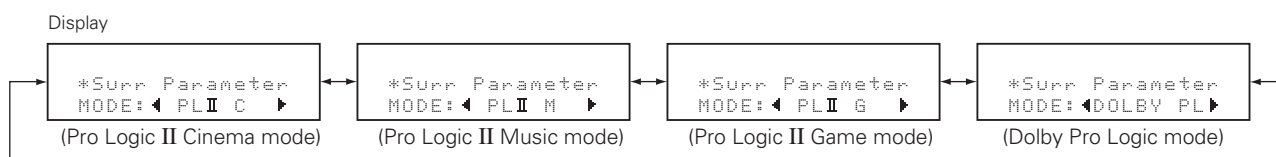
NOTE:

- The PLIIx mode is set when the "SB CH OUT" surround parameter is set to "ON", and the PLII mode is set when this parameter is set to "OFF".

- When the "SB CH OUT" parameter is set to "ON". (Set "SP.Back" at the System Setup to "1spkr" or "2spkr").



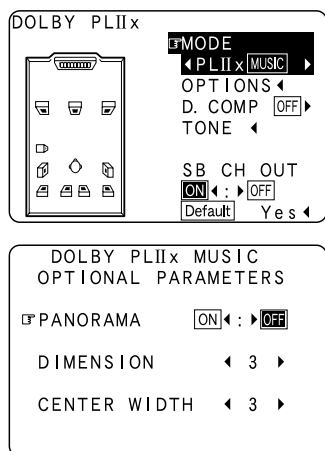
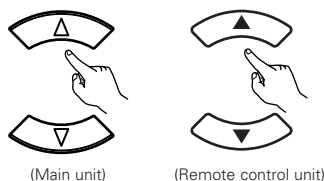
- When the "SB CH OUT" parameter is set to "OFF". (Set "SP.Back" at the System Setup to "None").



5

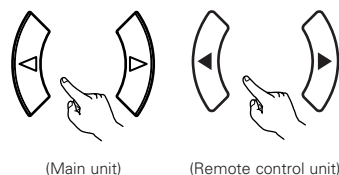
① Select the various surround parameters.

② Adjust the parameters setting.



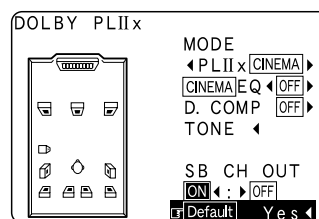
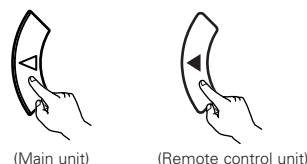
Example: DOLBY PLIIx Music mode screen.

- ※ When set with the on screen display using the Remote control unit while in the MUSIC mode, set the “☐” mark to “OPTION ◀” using the cursor up and down buttons, then press the cursor left button. Press the ENTER button to return to the previous screen.

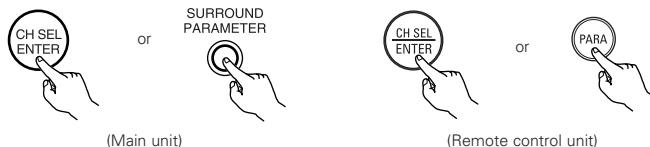


• DEFAULT setting

Select “Default Yes ◀”, then parameters set to default setting.



6



Press the ENTER or SURROUND PARAMETER button to complete the setting.

Surround parameters ④

Pro Logic IIx and Pro Logic II Mode:

- Select one of the modes (“Cinema”, “Music”, “Pro Logic” or “Game”).
- The Cinema mode is for use with stereo television shows and all programs encoded in Dolby Surround.
- The Music mode is recommended for stereo music and surround-encoded stereo music sources.
- The Pro Logic mode emulates Dolby Laboratories’ original Dolby Pro Logic surround decoding, and may provide better results with older, legacy surround-encoded program material.
- The Game mode is optimized for computer and/or dedicated game box consoles, that feature stereo analog or digital outputs. It can only be used with 2-channel stereo sources.

Panorama Control:

This mode extends the front stereo image to include the surround speakers for an exciting “wraparound” effect with side wall imaging. Select “OFF” or “ON”.

Dimension Control:

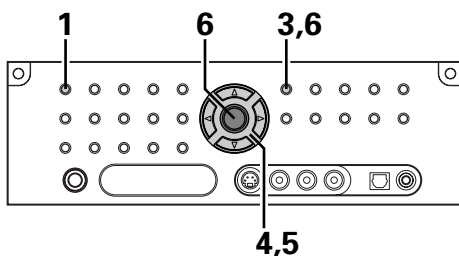
This control gradually adjust the soundfield either towards the front or towards the rear. The control can be set in 7 steps from 0 to 6.

Center Width Control:

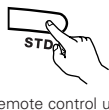
This control adjust the center image so it may be heard only from the center speaker; only from the left/right speakers as a phantom image; or from all three front speakers to varying degrees. The control can be set in 8 steps from 0 to 7.

DTS NEO:6 mode

- Surround playback can be performed for the analog input and digital input 2-channel signals.



1 Select the DTS NEO:6 mode.



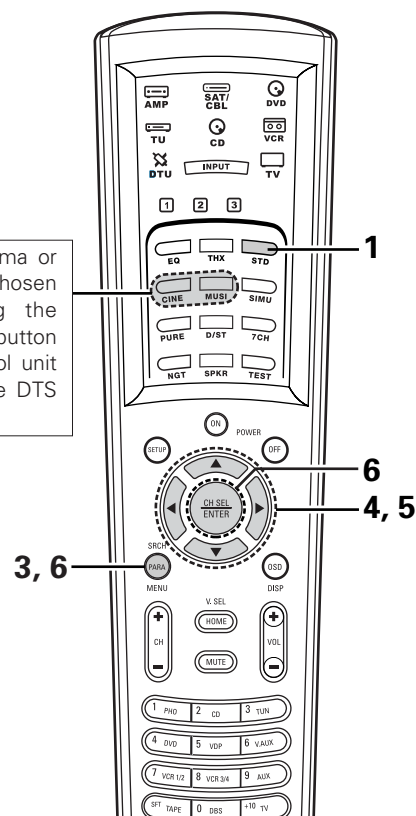
- The mode switches as shown below each time the STANDARD button is pressed.

DOLBY PLIIx ←→ DTS NEO:6

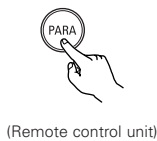
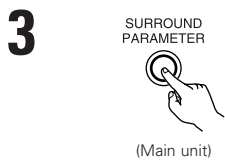
Light
DTS
NEO:6

- The DTS NEO:6 indicator lights.

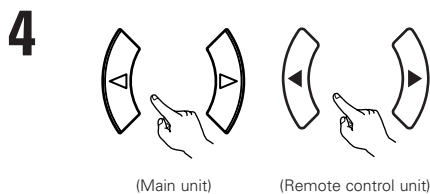
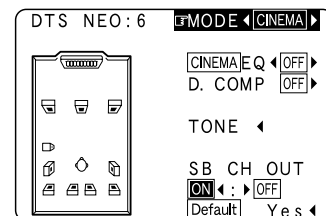
The DTS NEO:6 Cinema or Music mode can be chosen directly by pressing the CINEMA or MUSIC button on the Remote control unit during playback in the DTS NEO:6 mode.



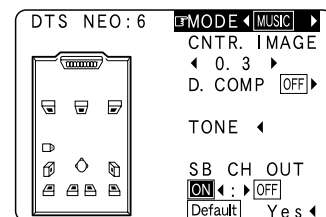
2 Play a program source.



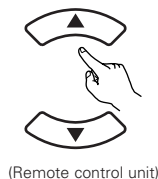
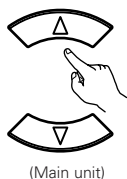
Display the Surround Parameter menu.



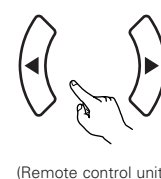
Select the play mode.



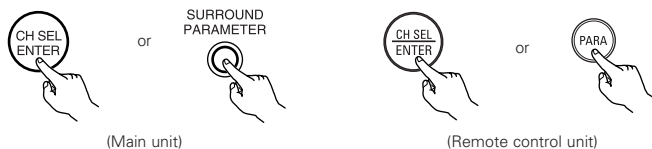
5 ① Select the various surround parameters.



② Adjust the parameters setting.



6



Press the ENTER or SURROUND PARAMETER button to complete the setting.

NOTE:

- When "Default" is selected and the cursor left button is pressed, "MODE" and "TONE" are automatically reset to the default values and "CINEMA EQ" is set to "OFF".

Surround parameters ⑤**DTS NEO:6 Mode:**• **Cinema**

This mode is optimum for playing movies. Decoding is performed with emphasis on separation performance to achieve the same atmosphere with 2-channel sources as with 6.1-channel sources.

This mode is effective for playing sources recorded in conventional surround formats as well, because the in-phase component is assigned mainly to the center channel (C) and the reversed phase component to the surround (SL, SR and SB channels).

• **Music**

This mode is suited mainly for playing music. The front channel (FL and FR) signals bypass the decoder and are played directly so there is no loss of sound quality, and the effect of the surround signals output from the center (C) and surround (SL, SR and SB) channels add a natural sense of expansion to the sound field.

CENTER IMAGE (0.0 to 1.0: default 0.3):

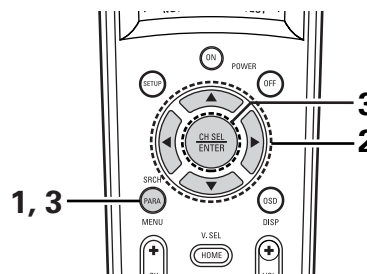
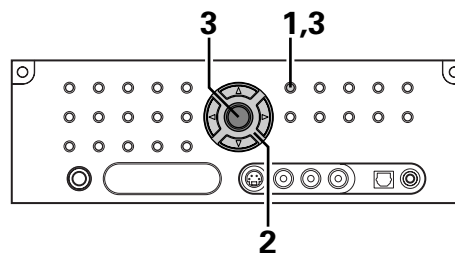
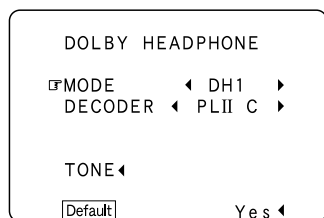
The center image parameter for adjusting the expansion of the center channel in the DTS NEO:6 MUSIC mode has been added.

The Dolby Headphone

The Dolby Headphone mode is set when headphones are connected to the PHONES jack while in the DOLBY/DTS SURROUND mode.

1

When the SURROUND PARAMETER button is pressed, the parameter selection screen appears.



2

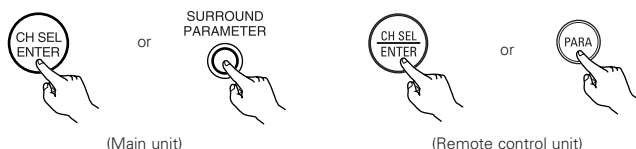
① Select the parameters.



② Select the settings.



3



Press the ENTER or SURROUND PARAMETER button to complete the setting.

Parameters

MODE:

- DH1Reference room (small room with weak reverberations)
- DH2Live room (room with a bit stronger reverberations than DH1)
- DH3Large room (larger room than DH1, offers a sense of distance and sound diffusion effects)
- BYPASSStereo sound.

DECODER:

Select this when playing analog, PCM or other 2-channel sources.

The signals are converted into multichannel signals using the decoders shown below and played in the Dolby Headphone mode.

- PLII C.....Dolby Pro Logic II Cinema mode
- PLII M.....Dolby Pro Logic II Music mode
- NEO:6 C.....DTS NEO:6 Cinema mode
- NEO:6 M.....DTS NEO:6 Music mode
- OFF.....The signals are played in the Dolby Headphone mode as such (2 channels).

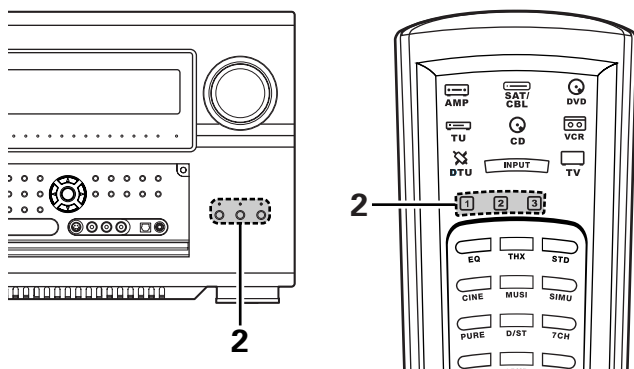
– Recording –

When RECOUT mode is set to “SOURCE”, with this amplifier signals encoded in the Dolby Headphone mode can be output from the recording output terminals and recorded on another recorder. (See page 136)

Memory and call-out functions (USER MODE function)

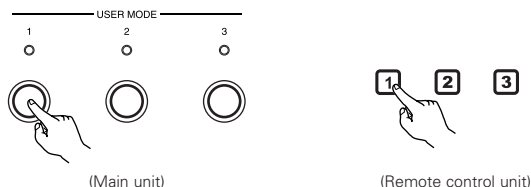
- The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with a function for storing the selected input source, the auto surround mode and input mode in the memory and selecting these settings when you want to use them.
- Three patterns of settings can be stored in the memory using the USER MODE 1, 2 and 3 buttons.

■ Storing the settings in the memory

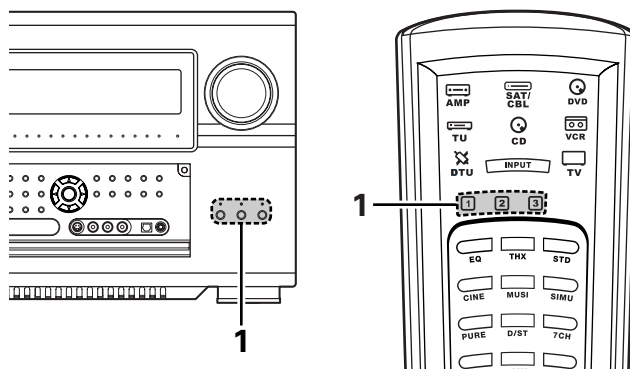


- 1** The following are stored in the memory:
- ① Currently set input source
 - ② Currently set auto surround mode
 - ③ Currently set input mode

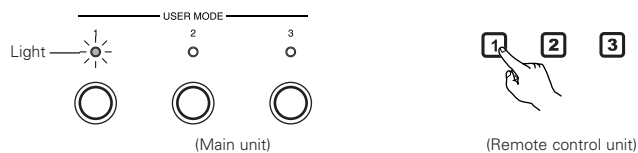
- 2** Press and hold the USER MODE button at which you want to store the settings.
In this case, press the button and hold it in until the LED of the selected USER MODE button lights.



■ Calling the settings out



- 1** Press the USER MODE button at which the settings you want to call out are stored.
- The LED for the selected USER MODE button lights.
 - This LED turns off if you perform any operations that change the settings stored at the USER MODE buttons.



11 DENON ORIGINAL SURROUND MODES

- The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with a high performance DSP (Digital Signal Processor) which uses digital signal processing to synthetically recreate the sound field. One of ten preset surround modes can be selected according to the program source and the parameters can be adjusted according to the conditions in the listening room to achieve a more realistic, powerful sound.

Surround modes and their features

1	WIDE SCREEN	Select this to achieve an atmosphere like that of a movie theater with a large screen. In this mode, all signal sources are played in the 7.1-channel mode, including Dolby Pro Logic and Dolby Digital 5.1-channel sources. Effects simulating the multi surround speakers of movie theaters are added to the surround channels.
2	SUPER STADIUM	Select this when watching baseball or soccer programs to achieve a sound as if you were actually at the stadium. This mode provides the longest reverberation signals.
3	ROCK ARENA	Use this mode to achieve the feeling of a live concert in an arena with reflected sounds coming from all directions.
4	JAZZ CLUB	This mode creates the sound field of a live house with a low ceiling and hard walls. This mode gives jazz a very vivid realism.
5	CLASSIC CONCERT	Select this for the sound of a concert hall rich in reverberations.
6	MONO MOVIE (NOTE 1)	Select this when watching monaural movies for a greater sense of expansion.
7	VIDEO GAME	Use this to enjoy video game sources.
8	MATRIX	Select this to emphasize the sense of expansion for music sources recorded in stereo. Signals consisting of the difference component of the input signals (the component that provides the sense of expansion) processed for delay are output from the surround channel.
9	VIRTUAL	Select this mode to enjoy a virtual sound field, produced from the front 2-channel speakers. ※ This mode can be selected when surround playback is being performed in ZONE2.
10	9CH STEREO	The front left channel signals are output to the surround and surround back signal left channels, the front right channel signals are output to the surround and surround back signal right channels, and the in-phase component of the left and right channels is output to the center channel. Use this mode to enjoy stereo sound.

※ Depending on the program source being played, the effect may not be very noticeable.

In this case, try other surround modes, without worrying about their names, to create a sound field suited to your tastes.

(NOTE 1): When playing sources recorded in monaural, the sound will be one-sided if signals are only input to one channel (left or right), so input signals to both channels. If you have a source component with only one audio output (monophonic camcorder, etc.) obtain a "Y" adaptor cable to split the mono output to two outputs, and connect to the L and R inputs.

Personal Memory Plus

This set is equipped with a personal memorize function that automatically memorizes the surround modes and input modes selected for the input different sources. When the input source is switched, the modes set for that source last time it was used are automatically recalled.

※ The surround parameters, tone control settings and playback level balance for the different output channels are memorized for each surround mode.

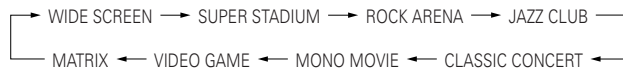
DSP surround simulation

1

Select the surround mode for each input channel.



The surround mode switches in the following order each time the DSP SIMULATION button is pressed:



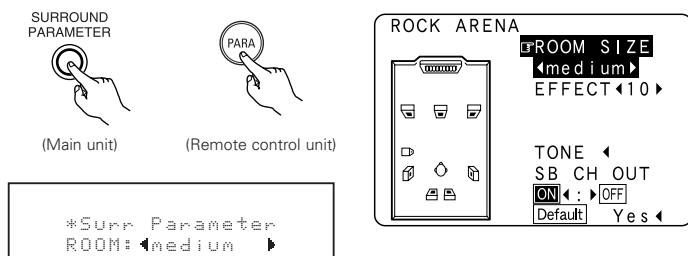
※ The 9CH STEREO mode can be selected directly by pressing the 7CH STEREO button on the remote control unit.

2

Press the SURROUND PARAMETER button.

Display the Surround Parameter menu.

※ The screen for the selected surround mode appears.



3

① Select the various surround parameters.

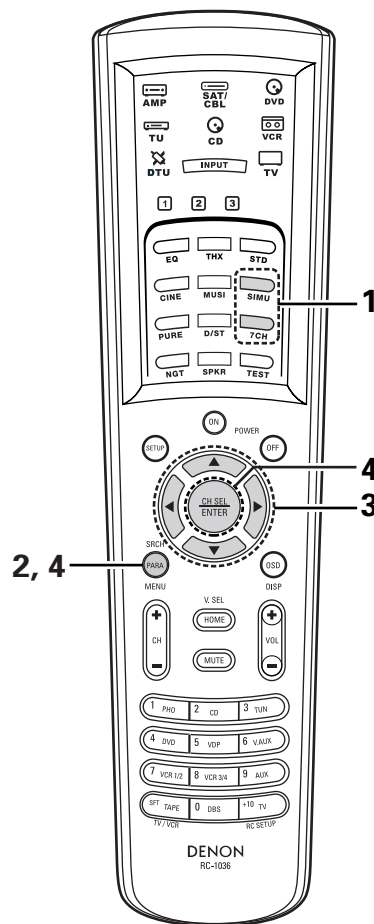
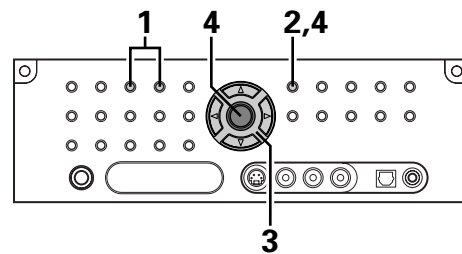
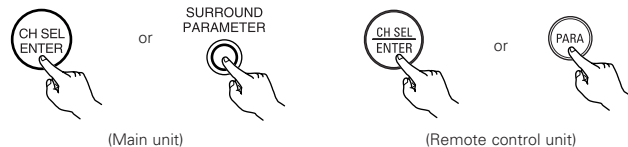


② Adjust the parameters setting.



4

Press the ENTER or SURROUND PARAMETER button to complete the setting.



※ The "9CH STEREO" display changes as shown below according to the surround back speaker setting and the surround speaker setting.

SURROUND BACK SPEAKER	SURROUND SPEAKER SETTING	DISPLAY
ON	A + B	9 CH STEREO
	A or B	7 CH STEREO
OFF	A + B	7 CH STEREO
	A or B	5 CH STEREO

NOTES:


- The surround speaker setting can also be changed with the SPEAKER button on the Main unit or Remote control unit.
- When "Default" is selected and the cursor left button is pressed, "CINEMA EQ." and "D.COMP." are automatically turned off, "ROOM SIZE" is set to "medium", "EFFECT LEVEL" to "10", "DELAY TIME" to "30ms" and "LFE" to "0dB".
- The "ROOM SIZE" expresses the expansion effect for the different surround modes in terms of the size of the sound field, not the actual size of the listening room.
- When playing PCM digital signals or analog signals in the DOLBY PRO LOGIC II, DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx, DTS NEO:6 modes and the input signal switches to a digital signal encoded in Dolby Digital, the Dolby Surround mode switches automatically. When the input signal switches to a DTS signal, the mode automatically switches to DTS surround.

Tone control setting

- Use the tone control setting to adjust the bass and treble as desired.
- The tone control function will not work in the PURE DIRECT, DIRECT or Home THX Cinema mode.

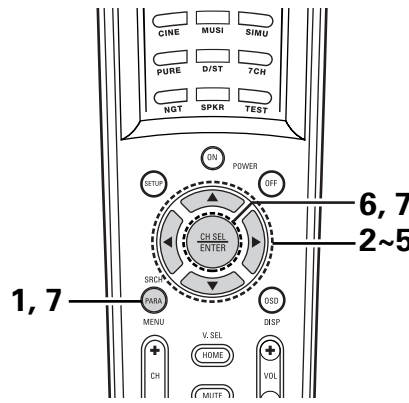
[1] Adjusting the tone using the Remote control unit

1

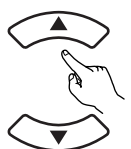


(Remote control unit)

Press the SURROUND PARAMETER button.
Display the Surround Parameter menu.
※ The screen selected surround mode appears.

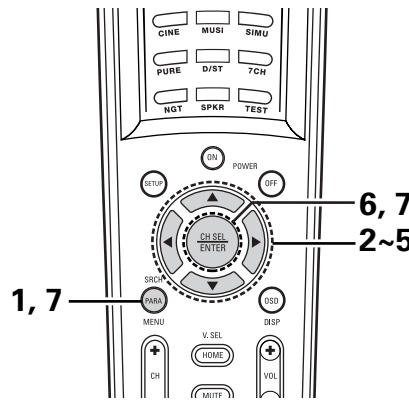


2




(Remote control unit)

Select "TONE".

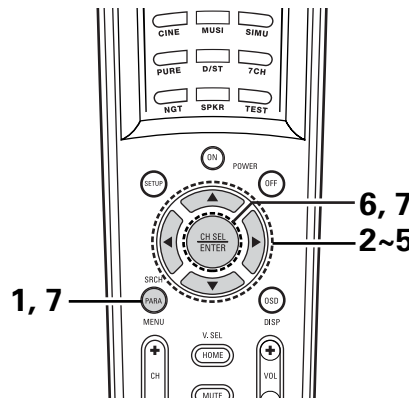


3




(Remote control unit)

Switch to Tone Control screen.

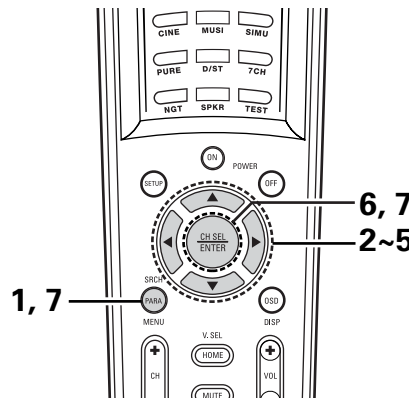


4




(Remote control unit)

Select Tone Defeat OFF.

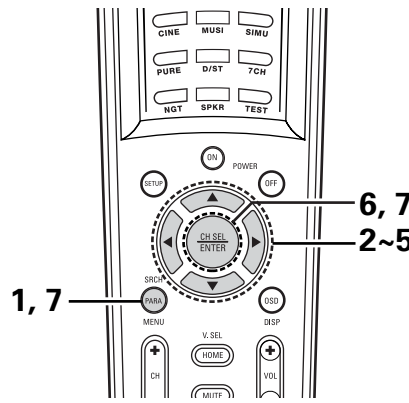


5




(Remote control unit)

Switch to Individual Ch Control screen.

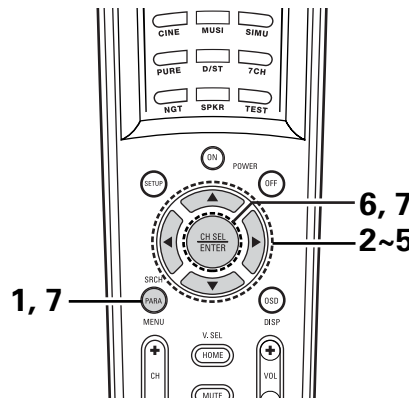


6

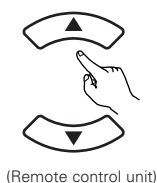


(Remote control unit)

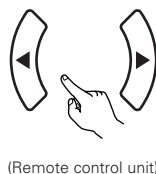
Switch to Surround Parameter menu.



5



① Select Bass or Treble.



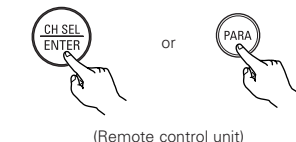
② Set the level.

6



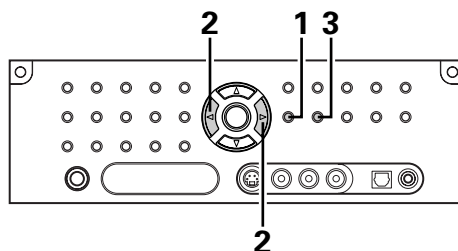
Enter the setting.
The Surround Parameter menu screen re-appears.

7



Press the ENTER or SURROUND PARAMETER button to complete the setting.

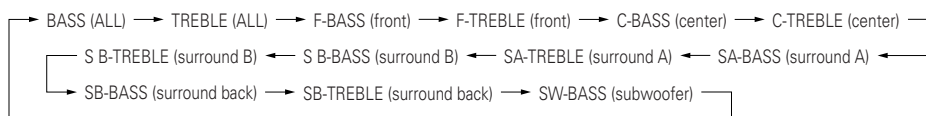
[2] Adjusting the tone from the Main unit



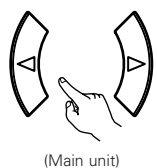
1



The tone switches as follows each time the TONE CONTROL button is pressed.



2



Select with the name of the volume to be adjusted and adjust the level.

- To increase the bass or treble:
The bass or treble sound can be increased to up to +6 dB in steps of 1 dB.
- To decrease the bass or treble:
The bass or treble sound can be decreased up to -6 dB in steps of 1 dB.

3



If you do not want the bass and treble to be adjusted, turn on the tone defeat mode.

※ The signals do not pass through the bass and treble adjustment circuits, providing higher quality sound.

Surround parameters ⑥

EFFECT:

This parameter turns the effect signals with multi surround mode speaker effects on and off in the WIDE SCREEN mode. When this parameter is turned off, the SBL and SBR channel signals are equivalent to the SL and SR channels, respectively.

LEVEL:

This parameter sets the strength of the effect signals in the WIDE SCREEN mode. It can be set in 15 steps, from "1" to "15". Set this to a low level if the positioning or phase of the surround signals sounds unnatural.

SB CH OUT:

"ON"Playback is conducted using the surround back speaker.

"OFF"Playback is conducted without using the surround back speaker.

NOTE: This operation can be performed directly using the SURROUND BACK button on the Main unit's panel.

ROOM SIZE:

This sets the size of the sound field.

There are five settings: "small", "med.s" (medium-small), "medium", "med.l" (medium-large) and "large". "small" recreates a small sound field, "large" a large sound field.

EFFECT LEVEL:

This sets the strength of the surround effect.

The level can be set in 15 steps from 1 to 15. Lower the level if the sound seems distorted.

DELAY TIME:

In the matrix mode only, the delay time can be set within the range of 0 to 300 ms.

12 USING THE NETWORK AUDIO FUNCTION

The AVC-A1XVA can be connected to a network by cable to listen to Internet radio or music files stored on computers.

Internet radio function

Internet radio refers to radio programs broadcast over the Internet.

There are many stations throughout the world broadcasting Internet radio programs. These stations are of all sizes and types, some run by individuals, others by ground wave broadcast stations.

While ground wave radio stations can only be listened to within the range in which the waves reach, Internet radio can be listened to anywhere in the world.

The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with the following Internet radio functions:

- Stations can be selected by genre and region.
- Up to 56 Internet radio stations can be preset.
- MP3 format Internet radio programs can be listened to.
- Your favorite radio stations can be registered by accessing the exclusive DENON Internet radio URL using a computer's browser. (The AV amplifier automatically downloads the registration settings (approximately once every other day).) (This is managed separately for each unit, so a MAC address or e-mail address must be registered.) (See page 115)
 - ※ Exclusive URL : <http://www.radiodenon.com> (accessible after connection to an Internet radio station.)

■ vTuner

The AVC-A1XVA's Internet radio station list uses "vTuner", a radio station database service. This database service is edited and prepared for the AVC-A1XVA.

Music server function

The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with a network audio playback function allowing music files stored on a computer to be played via a LAN (Local Area Network).

The AVC-A1XVA's network audio playback function connects to servers using the following technologies:

- Windows Media Connect
- Windows Media DRM 10 (for network devices)

System requirements

The preparations described below must be made in order to use the Internet radio and music server functions.

■ Broadband Internet connection

A broadband connection to the Internet is necessary in order to use the AVC-A1XVA's Internet radio function.

NOTE:

- **You must have a contract with an Internet Service Provider (ISP) in order to connect to the Internet.** For instructions on connecting to the Internet, contact your ISP or a computer store.
If you already have a broadband Internet connection there is no need to take out another contract.

■ Modem

A modem is a device for exchanging signals over the Internet using a broadband connection. Some are integrated into routers. For instructions on connecting to the Internet, contact your ISP or a computer store.

■ Router

A router is a device for connecting multiple pieces of equipment (computers, the AVC-A1XVA, etc.) to the Internet simultaneously. When using the AVC-A1XVA, we recommend a router equipped with the following functions:

- Built-in DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) server.
Function for automatically assigning the device's IP address on the LAN.
- Built-in 100BASE-TX switch
When connecting multiple devices, it is recommended to have a built-in switching hub with a speed of 100 Mbps or greater.

NOTE:

- The type of router that can be used differs for different ISPs. For details, contact your ISP or a computer store.

■ Ethernet cable (CAT-5)

The AVC-A1XVA does not come with an Ethernet cable. Purchase one of the required length.
Some flat type Ethernet cables are easily affected by noise. We recommend using a normal type cable.
If the sound skips, etc., try using a shielded type Ethernet cable. This could solve the problem.

■ Personal Computer

Install "Windows Media Connect" on your computer.
The required system for forming a music server is as described below.

- 1) OS (Operating System):
Windows® XP Service pack2
- 2) Processor:
Intel Pentium®II or AMD processor, etc..
We recommend 1 GHz or greater.
- 3) RAM:
Min. 128 MB, we recommend 256 MB or greater.
- 4) Software:
.NET Framework 1.1
- 5) Internet browser:
Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.01 or later

- LAN port required
- 300 MB or greater free hard disc space required

※ Extra free space is necessary to store music files.
The following table gives an approximate estimate of the required free space.

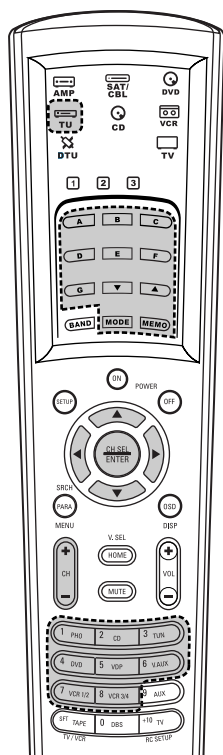
Format	Bit rate	Per one minute	Per one hour
MP3 / WMA	128 kbps	1 MB	60 MB
	192 kbps	1.5 MB	90 MB
	256 kbps	2 MB	120 MB
	392 kbps	3 MB	180 MB
WAV (LPCM)	1400 kbps	10 MB	600 MB

■ Others

- When the contract with your provider is of the type by which the network settings are made manually, you must make the "Network Setup" (See pages 111 ~ 115).
- The AVC-A1XVA is not compatible with PPPoE. If your contract is of the PPPoE setting type, you need a PPPoE-compatible router.
- For some ISPs (Internet Service Providers), you may have to make proxy server settings in order to use the Internet radio function. If proxy server settings for connecting to the Internet have been made on the computer, make the same settings on the AVC-A1XVA.
- The AVC-A1XVA is designed to make the network settings automatically using the DHCP and Auto IP functions.

■ TU (Tuner) system buttons

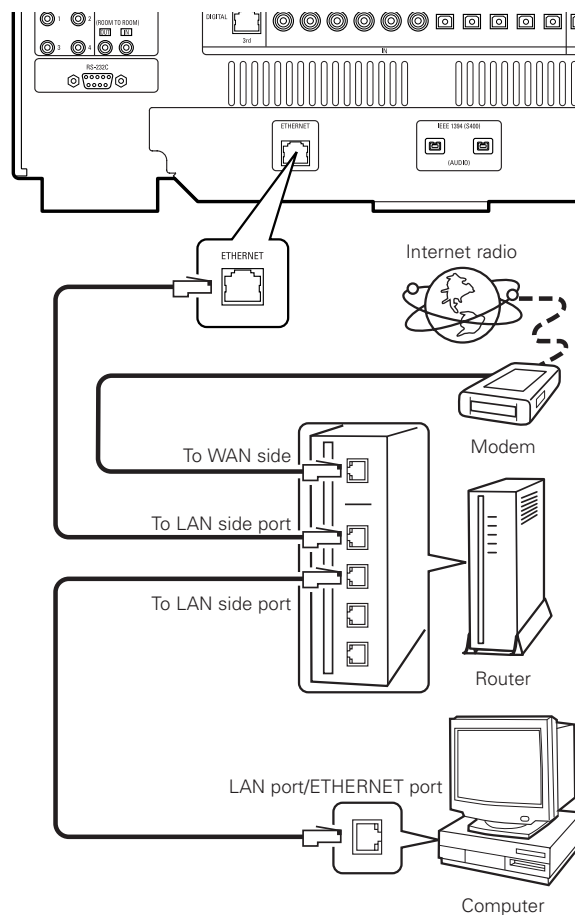
The tuner system buttons shown on the diagram below are used for Network Audio operations.



- A ~ G** : Preset memory blocks
- ▲, ▼** : Character search
- MODE** : Configuration mode selection
- MEMO** : Preset and favorite registration
- ▲, ▼, ◀, ▶** : Cursor up, down, left and right
- ENTER** : Enter settings
- CH +, -** : Preset channel selection
- 1 ~ 8** : Preset numbers

■ Connections

Connect one side of the Ethernet cable (CAT-5) to the ETHERNET terminal on the AVC-A1XVA's rear panel, the other side to the router.



■ Network settings

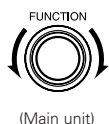
When using a broadband router (DHCP function), the network settings are made automatically, so there is no need to make the settings from the setup menu.

If the broadband router's DHCP function is turned off, make the "Network Setup" (See pages 111, 112).

Listening to Internet radio

The required system connections and settings must be made in order to listen to Internet radio.
 "Update?" appears on the display when connecting to an Internet radio station for the first time.

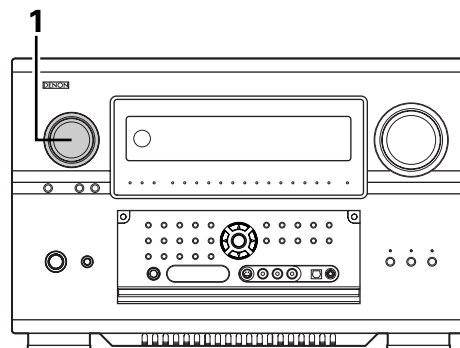
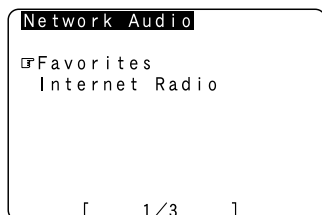
- 1 Select the input source to "AUX".
 - The "Network Audio" menu screen appears.



(Main unit)



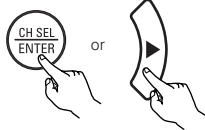
(Remote control unit
in the AMP mode)



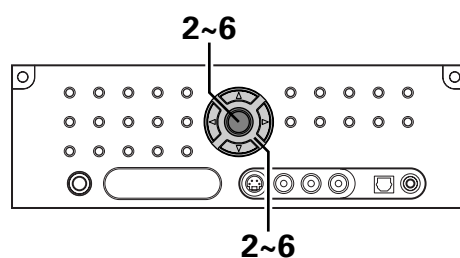
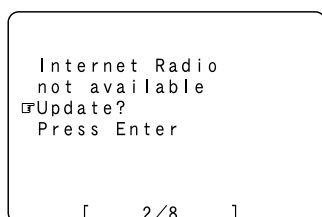
- 2 Press the cursor up or down button to select "Internet Radio", then press the ENTER or cursor right button.
 - The initial screen when not connected to the Internet is displayed.



(Remote control unit)



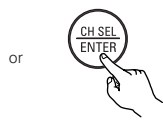
(Remote control unit)



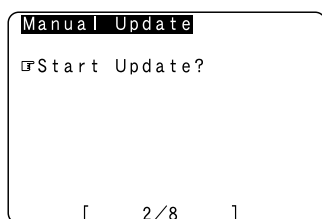
- 3 Connecting to an Internet radio station for the first time:
Press the ENTER or cursor right button.
 - The update screen appears.



(Remote control unit)



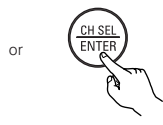
(Remote control unit)



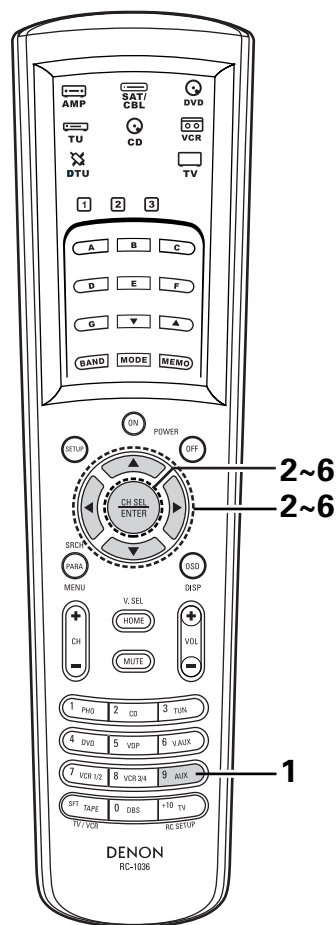
- 4 Press the ENTER or cursor right button once again.
 - The latest list of radio stations is downloaded from the vTuner site. (Several minutes are required for this download.)



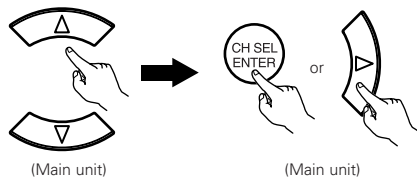
(Remote control unit)



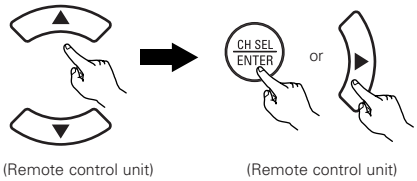
(Remote control unit)



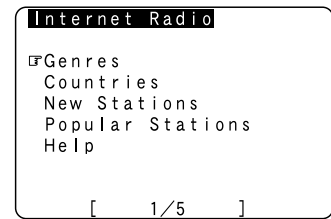
5



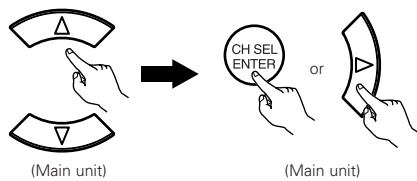
Press the cursor up or down button to select the desired setting item, then press the ENTER or cursor right button.



※ Finally, the list of Internet radio stations is displayed and those that can be played are indicated by the “*” mark in front of them.



6

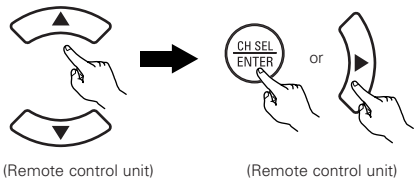


Cursor up or down button to select the desired radio station, then press the ENTER or cursor right button.

• Connection starts, and the station starts playing once the buffer reaches “100%”.

※ During playback, press the ENTER button once to pause playback, then press ENTER button again to resume playback.

※ If the ENTER button is pressed and held in for more than two seconds when in the play or pause mode, playback stops and the previous menu window reappears.



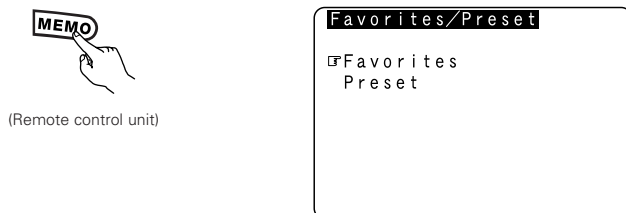
NOTES:

- There are many Internet radio stations on the Internet. The programs they broadcast and their bit rates vary widely. Generally, the higher the bit rate, the higher the sound quality, but streamed music or sound may be broken if the communication lines or servers are busy. Inversely, programs with low bit rates have lower sound quality but tend to be more stable.
- “Server Full” or “Connection Down” is displayed if the station is congested or if it is not broadcasting.
- If you do not want the OSD to be displayed while playing Network Audio (internet radio, music server), set “Function/Mode Status” at “Setting the On Screen Display” to “OFF” (See page 76).

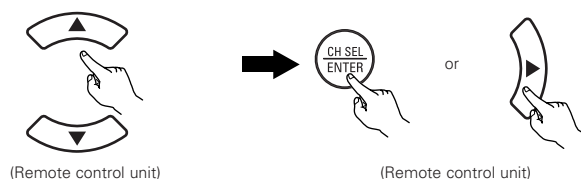
Presetting (registering) Internet radio stations

There are two ways to register stations: by presetting them or by storing them in your favorites. Stations that are preset can be tuned in directly from the remote control unit.

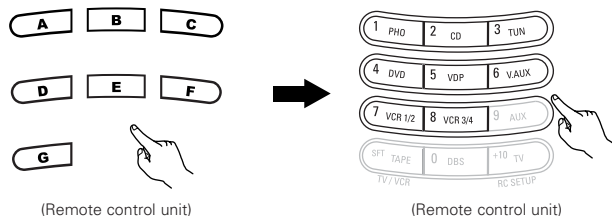
- 1 Press the MEMORY button on the remote control unit while playing the Internet radio station you want to register.
 - The registration menu screen appears.



- 2 Press the cursor up or down button to select "Preset", then press the ENTER or cursor right button.
 - The preset registration screen appears.



- 3 Press a memory block (A ~ G) button on the remote control unit, then press a number (1 ~ 8) button on the remote control unit to register the station at the desired preset channel.
 - This completes registration.



- ※ If no button is operated for approximately ten seconds, the regular display reappears.
- ※ Registered presets can be checked on the on screen display. The presets can only be displayed with the on screen display when the "AUX" function is selected.

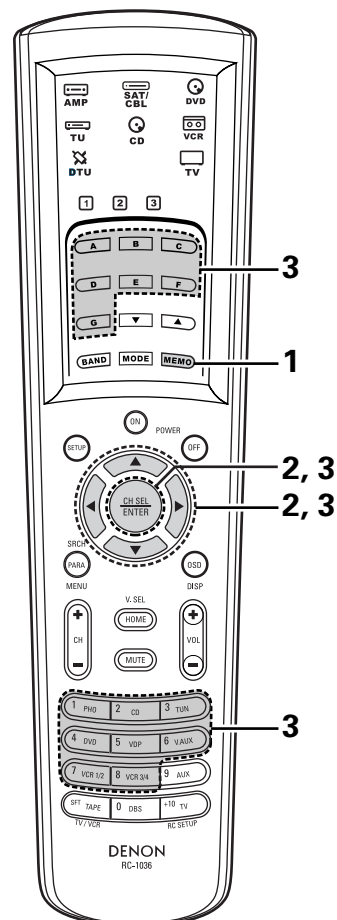
NOTE:

- Registered presets are deleted when they are overwritten.

■ Listening to preset Internet radio stations

When the "AUX" function is selected, press a memory block (A ~ G) button on the remote control unit, then press a number (1 ~ 8) button on the remote control unit.

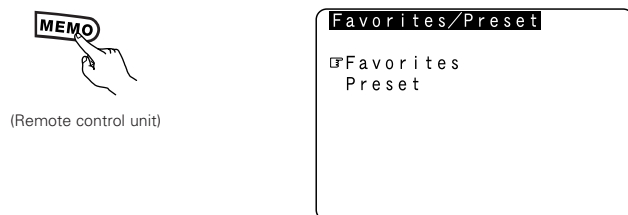
- The connection is made automatically and playback starts.



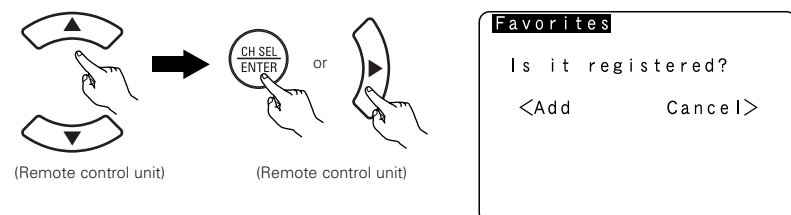
Registering Internet radio stations in your favorites

Your favorites are listed at the top of the menu screen, so registered stations can be tuned in easily.

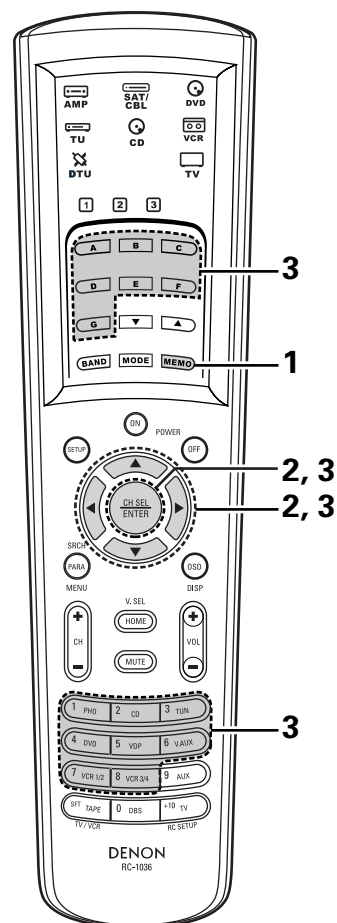
- 1 Press the MEMORY button on the remote control unit while playing the Internet radio station you want to register.
 - The registration menu screen appears.



- 2 Press the cursor up or down button to select "Favorites", then press the ENTER or cursor right button.
 - The favorites registration screen appears.

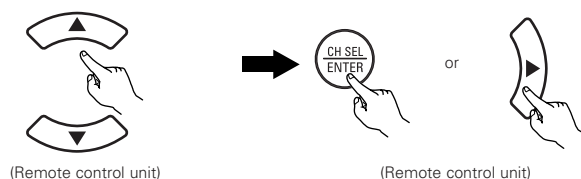


- 3 Press the cursor left button to register the station.
 - ※ To cancel without registering, press the cursor right button.

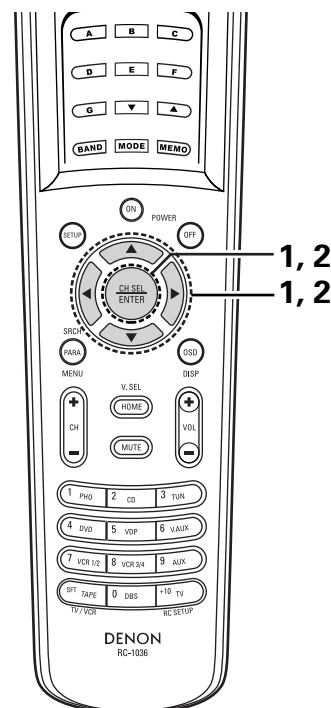
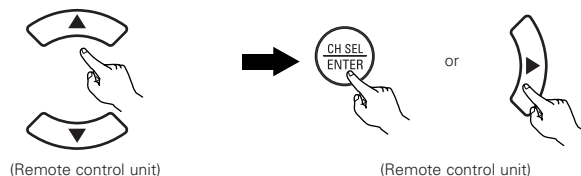


■ Listening to Internet radio stations registered in your favorites

- 1 When the "AUX" function is selected, press the cursor up or down button to select "Favorites", then press the ENTER or cursor right button.
 - The Internet radio stations registered in your favorites are displayed.



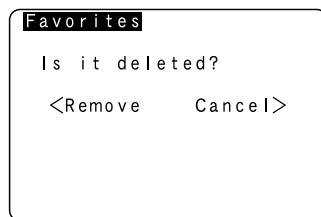
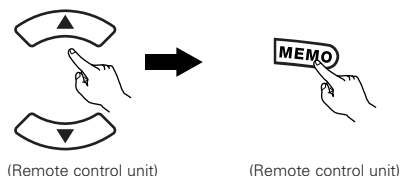
- 2 Press the cursor up or down button to select the desired radio station, then press the ENTER or cursor right button.
 - Playback starts.



■ Deleting radio stations from your favorites

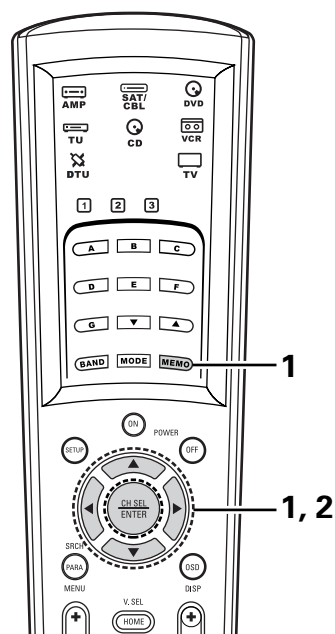
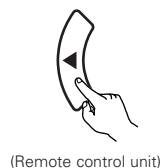
- At the screen on which the Internet radio stations registered in your favorites are displayed, press the cursor up or down button to choose the radio station you want to delete, then press the MEMORY button on the remote control unit.

- The delete screen appears.



- Press the cursor left button to delete the station.

- ※ To cancel without deleting, press the cursor right button.

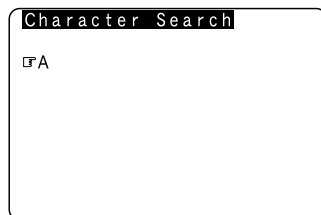
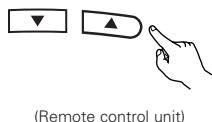


Character search function (searching by first letter)

The character search function (searching by first letter) can be used to select the desired item from the menu screen displaying the list of Internet radio stations or music files stored on the computer.

- While the menu screen is displayed, press the tuning up or down button on the remote control unit.

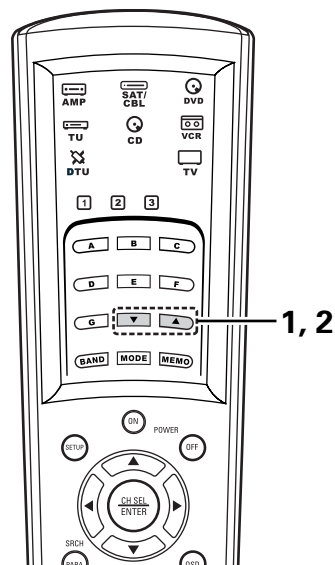
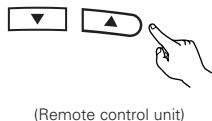
- The character search screen appears.



- Press the tuning up or down button on the remote control unit to select the first letter of the item you want to search for.

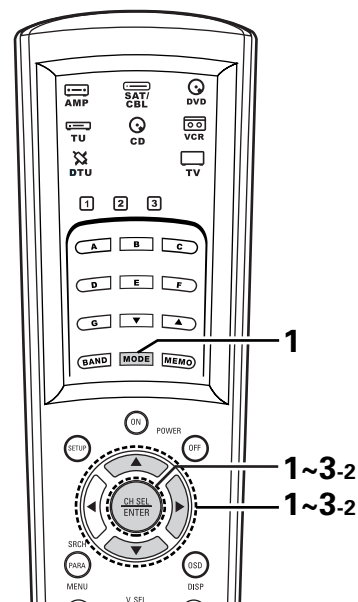
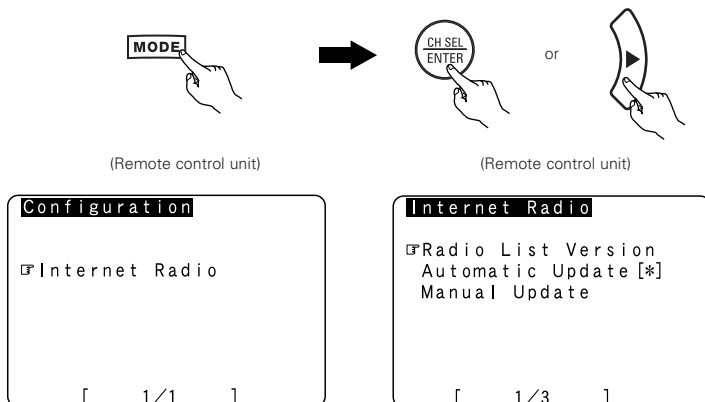
- After several seconds, the menu screen is displayed with the cursor set to the item starting with the letter selected in step 2.

- ※ If there is more than one item starting with the letter selected in step 2, the items are displayed in alphabetical order.

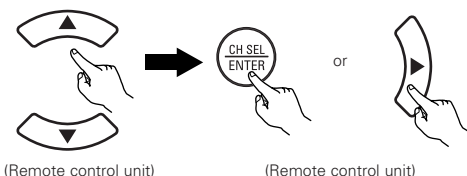


Updating the list of radio stations

- 1 Press the MODE button on the remote control unit to select the configuration mode, then press the ENTER or cursor right button.
 - The settings screen appears.

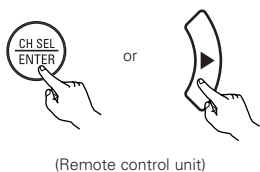


- 2 Press the cursor up or down button to select "Automatic Update" or "Manual Update", then press the ENTER or cursor right button.
 - The update screen appears.

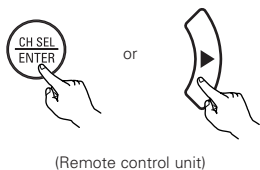


※ Select "Radio List Version" to display the current version.

- 3-1 When "Automatic Update" is selected:
 - Press the ENTER or cursor right button to select "Yes".
 - The list of radio stations is updated approximately once every other day.



- 3-2 When "Manual Update" is selected:
 - Press the ENTER or cursor right button.
 - The list of radio stations is updated this one time.



- 4 Enter the setting.



(Remote control unit)

NOTE:

- When "Yes" is set for "Automatic Update", set "Power Saving" in the "Network Setup" to "OFF" (See page 114).
- When used with "Power Saving" set to "ON", we recommend performing the "Manual Update" procedure periodically (about once a week).

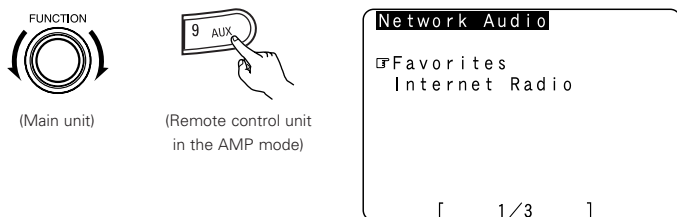
Playing music files stored on the computer (music server)

The necessary system connections and settings must be made in order to play music files.

This procedure is used to play music files (in WMA, MP3 and WAV format) stored on computers (music servers) connected to the AVC-A1XVA via the network.

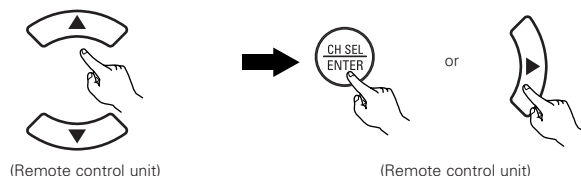
The computer's server program must be launched before using this function. For details, refer to the server program's operating instructions.

- 1 Select the input source to "AUX".
 - The "Network Audio" menu screen appears.

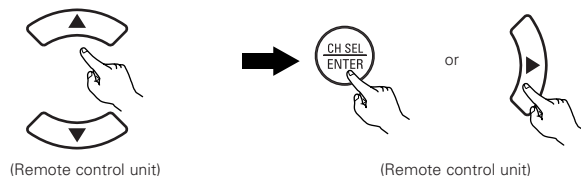


※ The host names of the computer(s) (music server(s)) on the network are displayed.

- 2 Press the cursor up or down button to select the host name of the computer (music server) on which the music file you want to play is located, then press the ENTER or cursor right button.



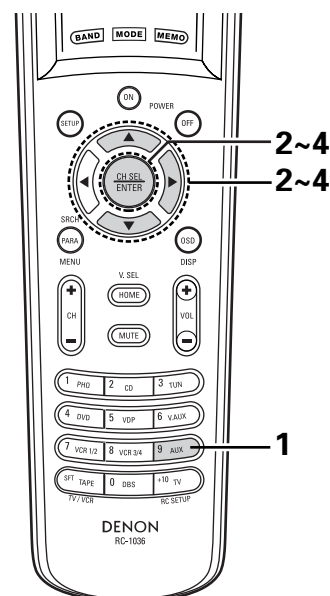
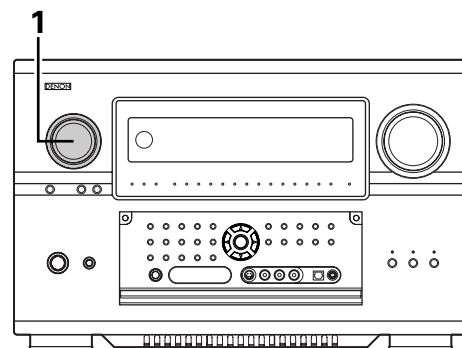
- 3 Press the cursor up or down button to select the search item or the desired folder, then press the ENTER or cursor right button.



※ Playable music files are indicated by the "*" mark in front of them.

- 4 Press the cursor up or down button to select the music file, then press the ENTER or cursor right button.
 - Connection starts, and playback starts once the buffer reaches "100%".

※ Press the cursor down button to select the next file, the cursor up button to select the previous file.
 ※ During playback, press the ENTER button once to pause playback, then press the ENTER button again to resume playback.
 ※ If the ENTER button is pressed and held in for more than 2 seconds when in the play or pause mode, playback stops and the previous menu screen reappears.



■ Playing music files that have been preset or registered in your favorites

The same operations as for Internet radio stations can be used to preset music files or register them in your favorites and play them.

NOTES:

- Registered presets are deleted when they are overwritten.
- When the operations described below are performed, the music server database is updated and it may no longer be possible to play the music files that have been preset or registered in your favorites:
 - When the music server is stopped and restarted.
 - When music files are deleted from or added to the music server.

Operating the AVC-A1XVA using a browser

Internet Explorer can be used on the computer connected to the AVC-A1XVA over the network to operate the AVC-A1XVA. Check the AVC-A1XVA's IP address (See page 111) beforehand and input this IP address in Internet Explorer to display the AVC-A1XVA's control panel.

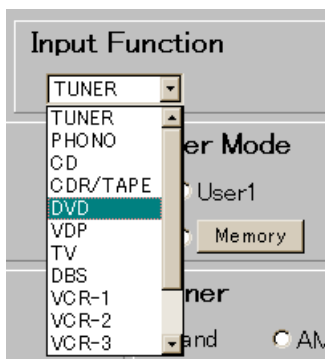
Operate in the same way as with normal Internet browsing to control the AVC-A1XVA.

■ Examples of web control operation screens

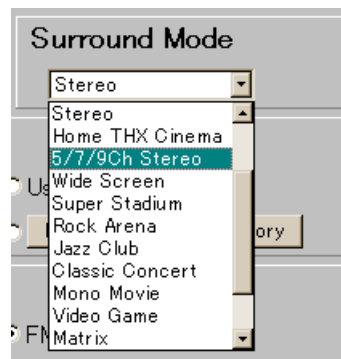
The settings of the setup items are the same as with normal operations. Refer to "System Setup" (See pages 28 ~ 115).

Below are some examples of operation screens.

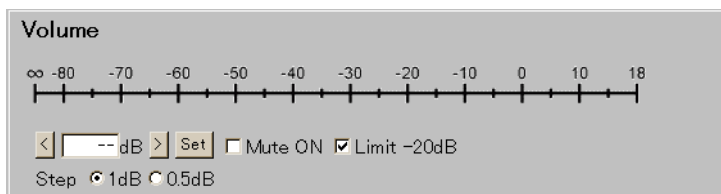
Function selection screen



Surround mode selection screen



Volume control screen



NOTES:

- To use this function, set "Power Saving" at "Network Option" under "Network Setup" to "OFF" (See page 114).

13 MULTI ZONE

Multi-zone playback with multi-source

MULTI ZONE MUSIC ENTERTAINMENT SYSTEM

- When the outputs of the "ZONE2 (ZONE3, ZONE4)" OUT terminals are wired and connected to power amplifiers installed in other rooms, different sources can be played in rooms other than the MAIN ZONE in which this unit and the playback devices are installed. (Refer to ZONE2 (ZONE3, ZONE4) on the diagram below.)
- Settings can be made at "7-2. Power Amp Assign" in the System Setup Menu so that the same source as the ZONE2 (ZONE3, ZONE4) pre-out terminals can be played from the speakers connected to the ZONE2 (ZONE3, ZONE4) speaker terminals. (See pages 100 ~ 104)
- ※ To control playback devices other than the ones above, either use that device's Remote control unit or preset a separately sold programmable Remote control unit.

NOTES:

- For the AUDIO output, use high quality pin-plug cords and wire in such a way that there is no humming or noise.
- For instructions on installation and operation of separately sold devices, refer to the devices' operating instructions.
- Video signals are output from the ZONE3 video output terminals even when the power of ZONE3 is turned off.

MULTI ZONE MUSIC ENTERTAINMENT SYSTEM

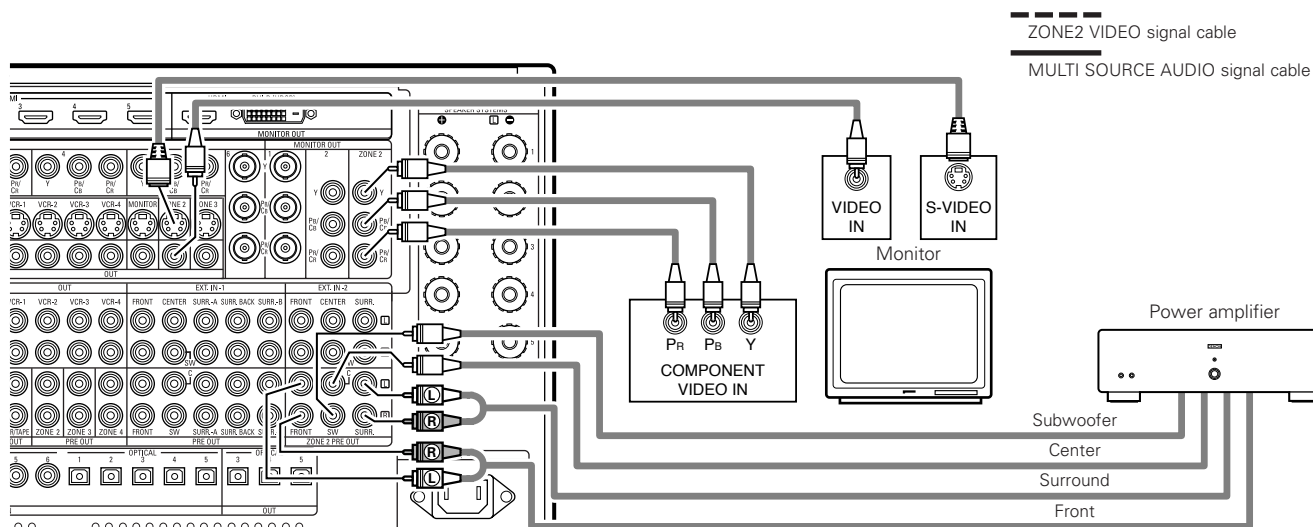
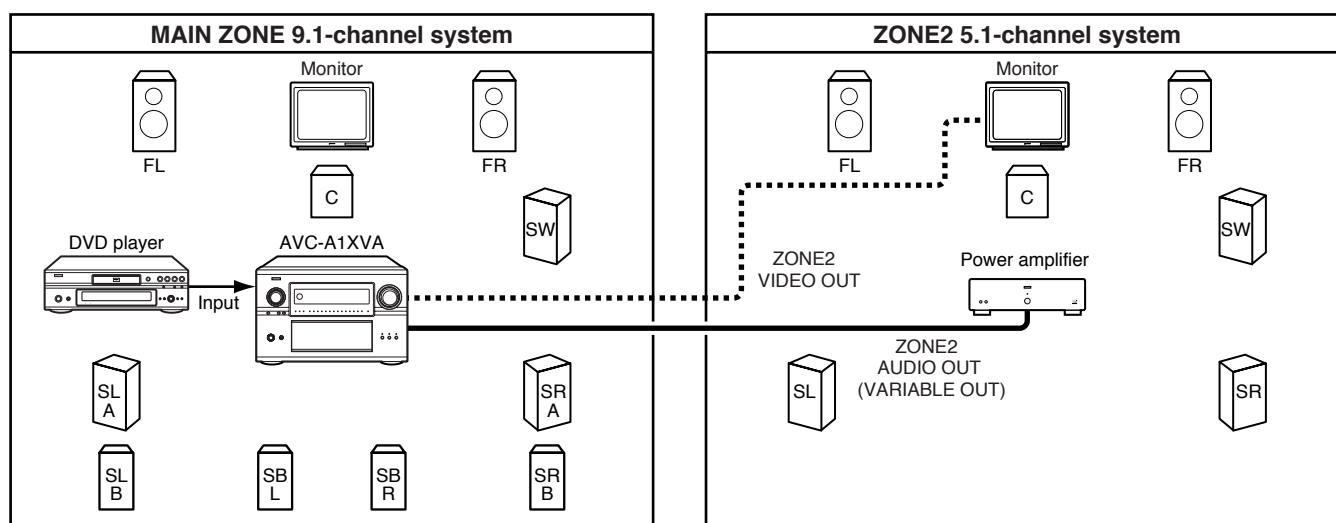
[1] ZONE2 playback

The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with pre-out terminals for which the volume is adjustable and video output terminals (composite, S-Video and component) as the ZONE2 output terminals.

A separately sold power amplifier or premain amplifier can be connected to enjoy ZONE2 playback.

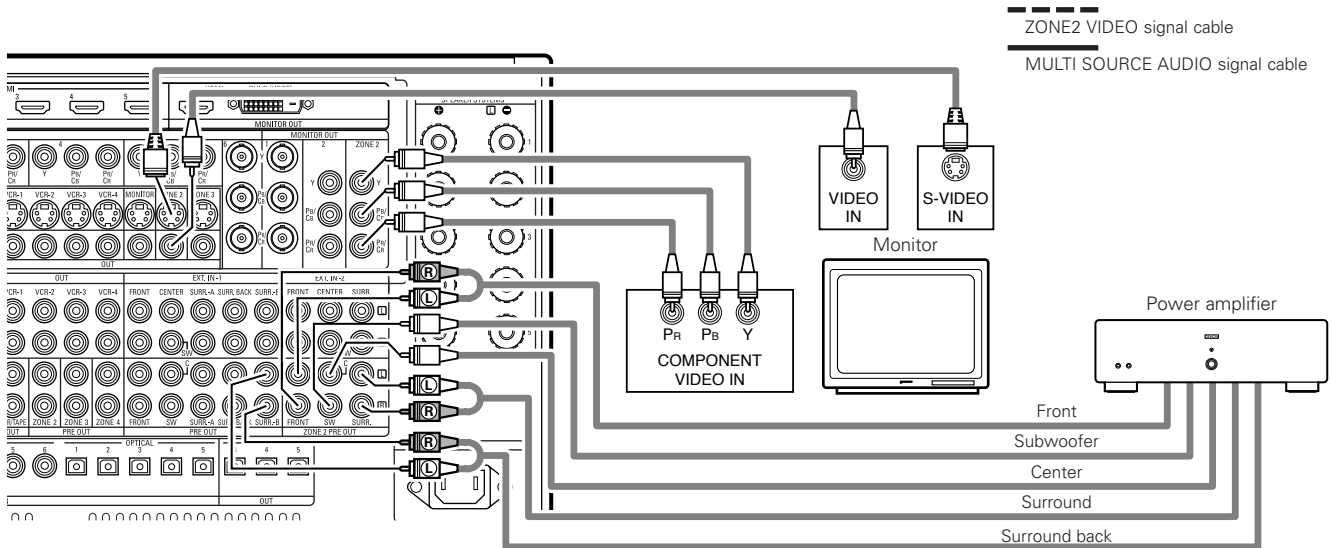
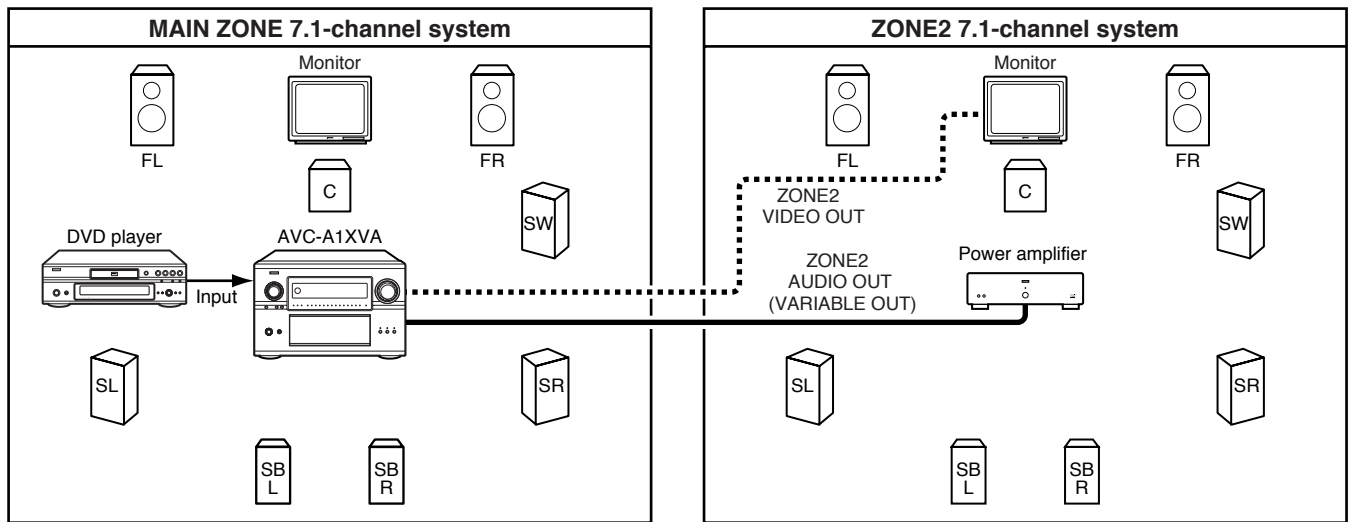
■ ZONE2 5.1-channel system

- 5.1 channel playback is possible in ZONE2 if "5.1CH" is selected for the ZONE2 playback channel setting at "7-1. Channel Setup" (See pages 96 ~ 99) in the System Setup Menu. (Default setting of ZONE2 channel is "5.1CH".)



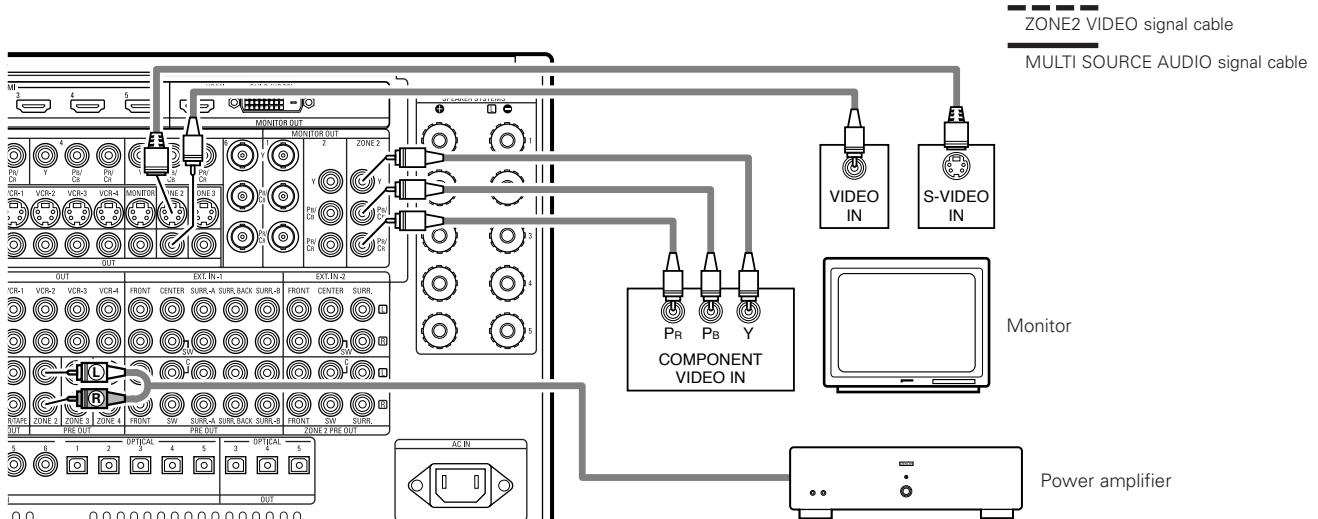
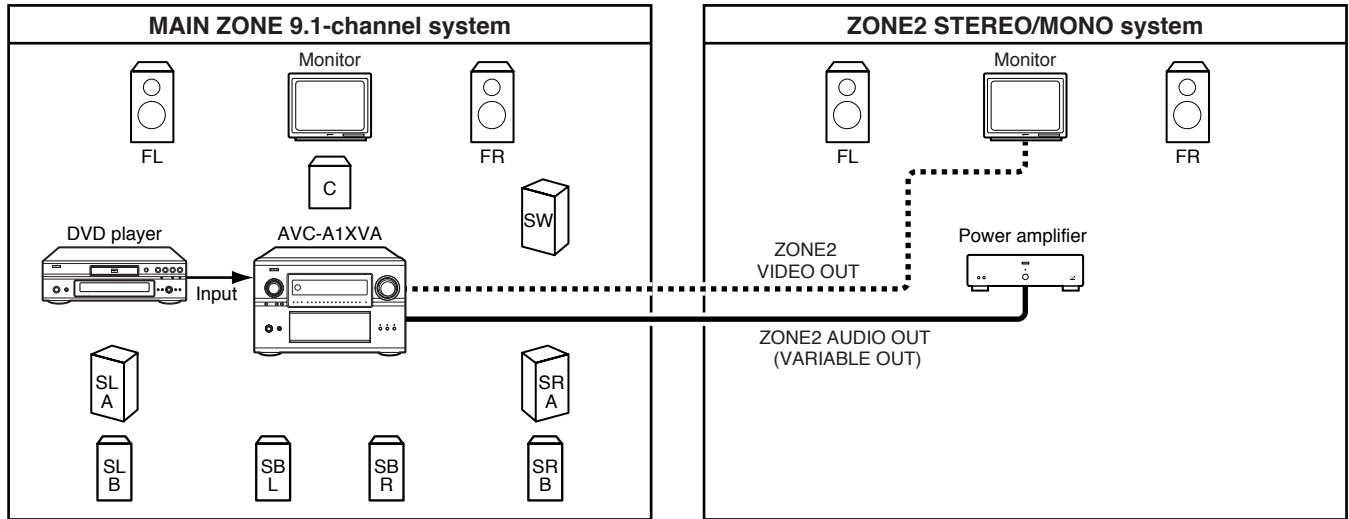
■ ZONE2 7.1-channel system

- 7.1 channel playback is possible in ZONE2 if "7.1CH" is selected for the ZONE2 channel setting at "7-1. Channel Setup" in the System Setup Menu.



■ ZONE2 STEREO/MONO system

- When two speakers are being used in ZONE2, select “STEREO” for the ZONE2 channel setting at “7-1. Channel Setup” in the System Setup Menu. Stereo sound can be enjoyed in ZONE2.
- When only one speaker is being used in ZONE2, select “MONO” for the ZONE2 channel setting at “7-1. Channel Setup” in the System Setup Menu. In this case, monaural sound can be enjoyed in ZONE2.

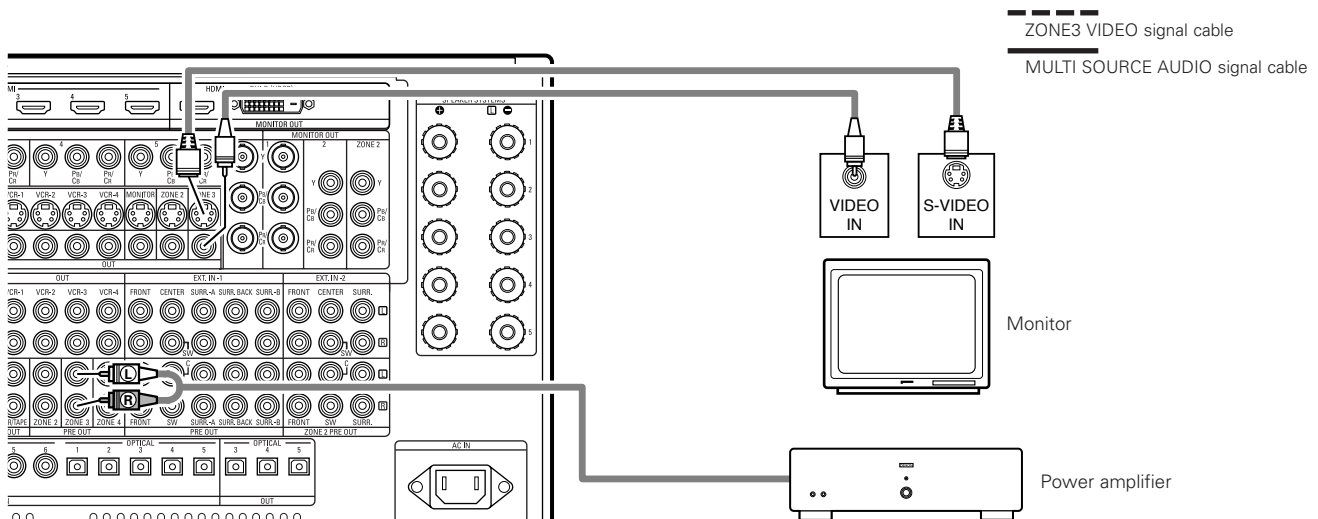
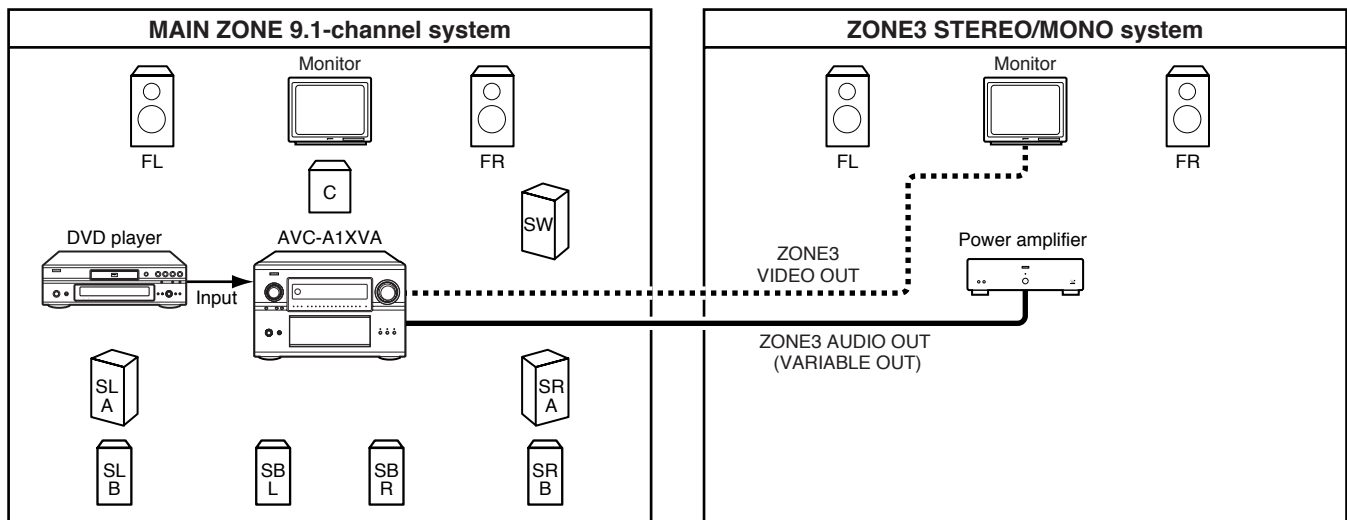


[2] ZONE3 playback

The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with pre-out terminals for which the volume is adjustable and video output terminals (composite and S-Video) as the ZONE3 output terminals.

■ ZONE3 STEREO/MONO system

- Stereo and monaural sound can be enjoyed in ZONE3. (By default, "STEREO" is selected.)
- When only one speaker is being used in ZONE3, select "MONO" for the ZONE3 channel setting at "7-1. Channel Setup" in the System Setup Menu.

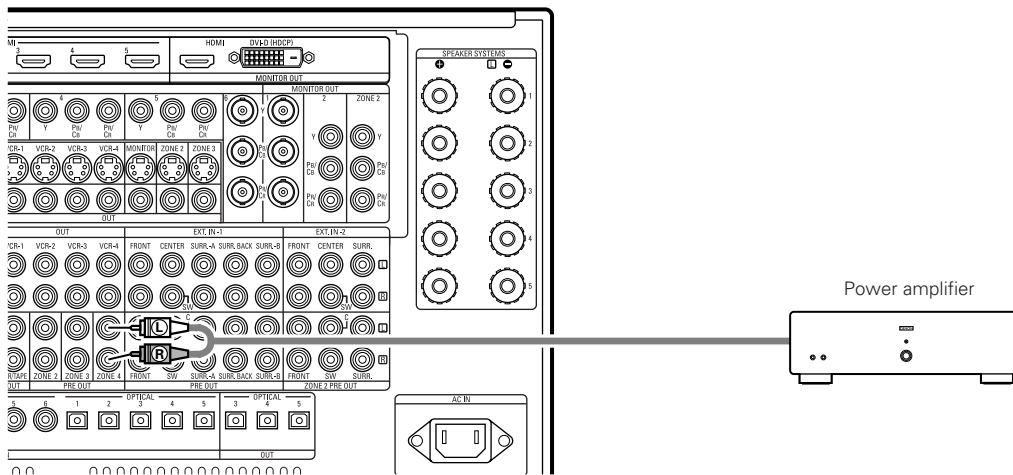
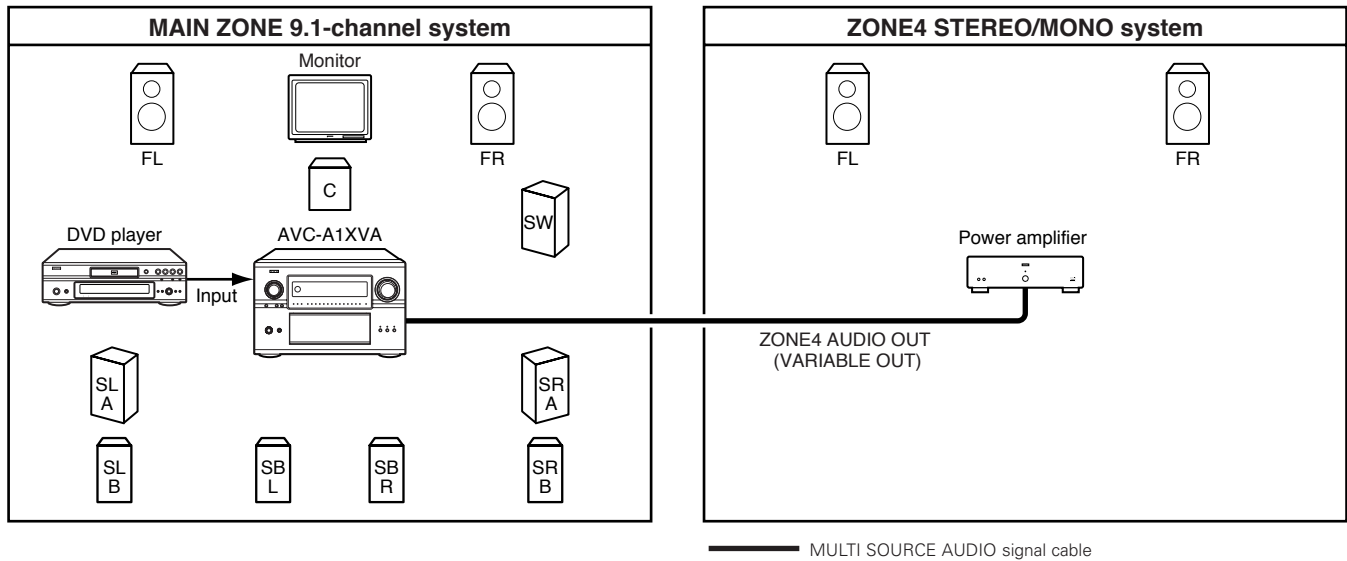


[3] ZONE4 playback


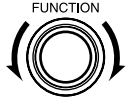
The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with pre-out terminals for which the volume is adjustable as the ZONE4 output terminals.

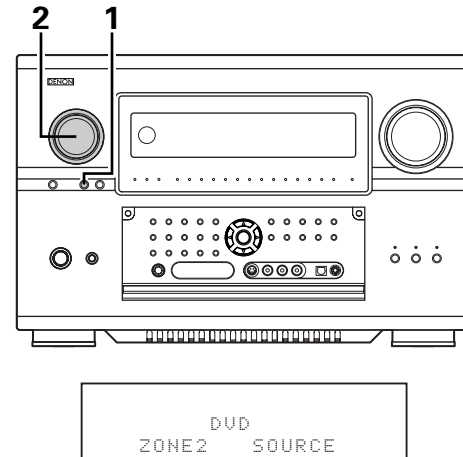
■ ZONE4 STEREO/MONO system

- Stereo and monaural sound can be enjoyed in ZONE4. (By default, "STEREO" is selected.)
- When only one speaker is being used in ZONE4, select "MONO" for the ZONE4 channel setting at "7-1. Channel Setup" in the System Setup Menu.





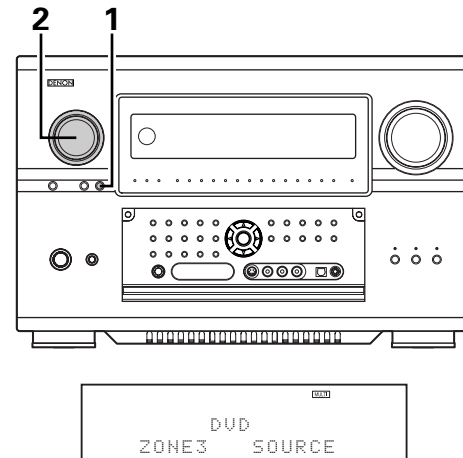
[4] Outputting a program source to an amplifier, etc., in a ZONE2 room (ZONE2 SELECT mode)

- 1** Press the ZONE2 SELECT button.

 ZONE 2
SELECT
(Main unit)
- 2** Select the source you want to output appears on the set's display.

 FUNCTION
(Main unit)
- 3** Start playing the source to be output.
 - For operating instructions, refer to the manuals of the respective components.



[5] Outputting a program source to an amplifier, etc., in a ZONE3 or ZONE4 room (ZONE3, ZONE4 SELECT mode)

- 1** Press the ZONE3/4/REC SELECT button.
 The display switches as follows each time the button is pressed.
 ZONE3 ↔ ZONE4
 (REC OUT)

 ZONE 3 / 4
REC SELECT
(Main unit)
- 2** With "ZONE3 SOURCE" displayed, turn the FUNCTION knob and select the source you wish to output.
 - The MULTI indicator light.
 - The display switches the selected source.
 FUNCTION
(Main unit)
- 3** Start playing the source to be output.
 - For operating instructions, refer to the manuals of the respective components.



※ The ZONE4 SELECT can also be set with a method similar to the above.

NOTES:

- The signals of the source selected in the ZONE3 mode are also output from the VCR-1, VCR-2, VCR-3, VCR-4 and CDR/TAPE recording output jacks.
- Digital signals are not output from the ZONE3 and ZONE4 audio output jacks.
- Refer to pages 166 ~ 170 about the MULTI ZONE connections.

Remote control unit operations during multi-source playback

- 1 Select the Zone which you want to operate using the mode selector buttons.

Example: ZONE2



(Remote control unit)

- 2 Select the input source you wish to output.



(Remote control unit)

- 3 Press the ZONE2 ON button to turn on the Zone power.

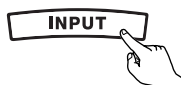


(Remote control unit)

• The multi zone power indicator on Main unit is light.

※ Press the OFF button to turn off the Zone power.
The multi zone power indicator on Main unit is off.

- 4 Select the input mode. (only ZONE2 mode)
Press the INPUT MODE button to switch to the input.



(Remote control unit)

AUTO ↔ ANALOG

- 5 The volume of the outputs of the different zones can be adjusted with the VOLUME + and – buttons on the Remote control unit.



(Remote control unit)

The output level can be controlled only if the zone volume level is set "variable" at "7-3. Volume Control" in the System Setup Menu. (See page 105)

※ DEFAULT VOLUME SETTING

ZONE2 : -40 dB

ZONE3 : -40 dB

ZONE4 : -40 dB

※ The Zone volume can be adjusted within the range of -80 to 18 dB, in steps of 1 dB.

However, when using with ZONE2 set to multi-channel (5.1- or 7.1-channel), the ZONE2 volume can be adjusted in steps of 0.5 dB. (See pages 96 ~ 99)

- 6 Use this to mute the audio temporarily.



(Remote control unit)

Press the MUTE button.

※ The Muting level is same as set with "7-3. Volume Level".

※ Cancelling MUTING mode.

Press the MUTE button again, or press the volume up or down buttons on the remote control.

- 7 To combine the sound being played in ZONE2 with the desired image:



(Remote control unit)

Press the Remote control unit's ZONE2 VIDEO SELECT button until the desired image appears on the ZONE2 monitor out.

The video source selected with the video select function is stored in the memory for the different ZONE2 input sources.

※ Canceling simulcast playback.

Select "SOURCE" using the ZONE2 VIDEO SELECT button.

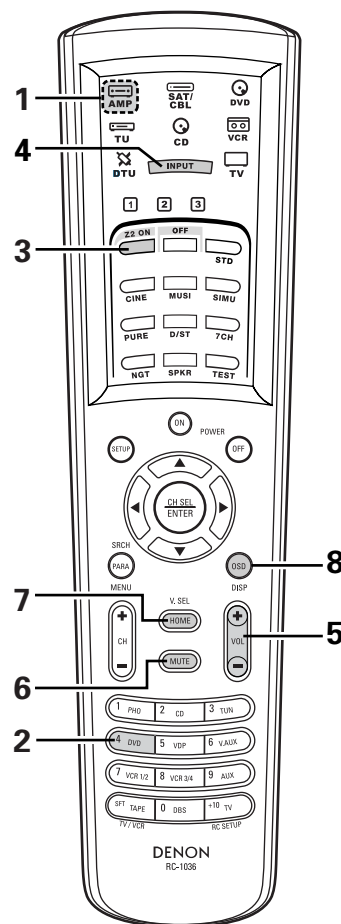
- 8 On screen display



(Remote control unit)


Each time an operation is performed, a description of that operation appears on the display connected to AVC-A1XVA's ZONE2 MONITOR OUT jack. Also, the unit's operating status can be checked during playback by pressing the Remote control unit's ON SCREEN button.

Such information as the position of the input selector and the surround parameter settings is output in sequence. For details, see page 141.




System setup for multi-zone

- This makes it possible to make the optimum setting for the speaker systems used in ZONE2.

- 

Select the ZONE2 mode using the AMP button.

(Remote control unit)
- 

Press the SYSTEM SETUP button and display the ZONE2 System Setup Menu.

※ The screen displayed depends on the settings made at "7-1. Channel Setup" (See pages 96 ~ 99).

6. Zone Setup

1. Speaker Config.

2. Subwoofer Mode

3. Delay Time

4. Channel Level

5. Crossover Frequency

6. Video Setup

7. Zone3/4 Tone/Ch Lev.

Exit

Example: 5.1 or 7.1-channel system

6. Zone Setup

1. Zone2 Tone/Ch Lev.

2. Zone3 Tone/Ch Lev.

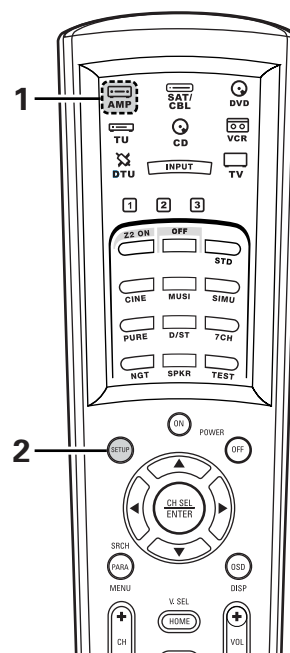
3. Zone4 Tone/Ch Lev.

4. Video Setup

Exit

Example: STEREO or MONO system


For instructions on making the settings, see pages 84 ~ 95.




Adjustment steps that need to be performed prior to surround sound playback in ZONE2

[1] Test Tone

- Before playing with the surround function, be sure to use the test tones to adjust the playback level from the different speakers. This adjustment can be performed with the system setup (see pages 89, 90) or from the Remote control unit, as described below.
- Adjusting with the Remote control unit using the test tones is only possible in the "Auto" mode and only effective in the STANDARD (DOLBY/DTS SURROUND) modes. The adjusted levels for the different modes are automatically stored in the memory.

- 

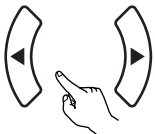
Select the ZONE2 mode using the AMP button.

(Remote control unit)
- 


Press the TEST TONE button. The Test Tone screen is displayed on the ZONE2 monitor out.

(Remote control unit)

TestTone Auto Zone-2

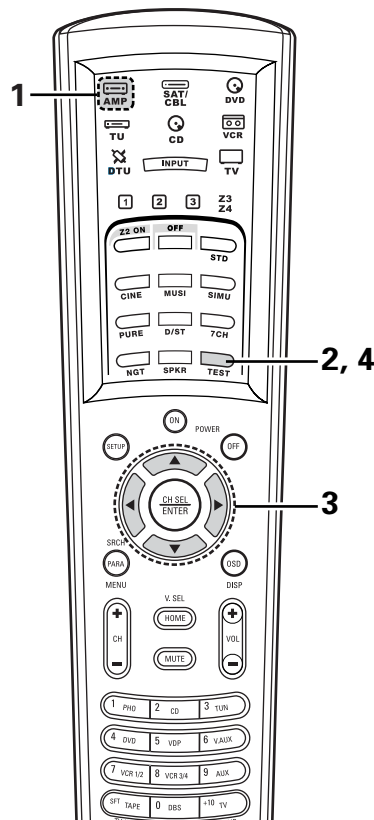
FL	◀	0.0dB	▶
C		0.0dB	
FR		0.0dB	
SR		0.0dB	
SL		0.0dB	
SW		0.0dB	
- 

Test tones are output from the different speakers used in ZONE2. Use the channel volume adjust buttons to adjust so that the volume of the test tones is the same for all the speakers.

(Remote control unit)
- 

After completing the adjustment, press the TEST TONE button again.

(Remote control unit)



[2] Channel Level

- After adjusting using the test tones, adjust the channel levels either according to the playback sources or to suit your tastes, as described below.

1



(Remote control unit)

Select the ZONE2 mode using the AMP button.

2

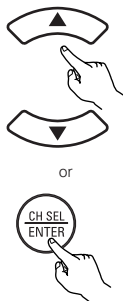


(Remote control unit)

The channel Volume is displayed at ZONE2 monitor out.

Channel Vol.					
FL	◀	0. 0dB	▶	SR	0. 0dB
C		0. 0dB		SBR	0. 0dB
FR		0. 0dB		SBL	0. 0dB
SW		0. 0dB		SL	0. 0dB
Fader					
FRONT ◀ : ▶ REAR					

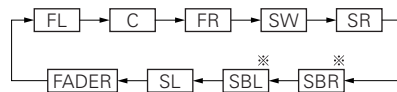
3



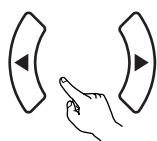
(Remote control unit)

Select the speaker level you want to adjust.

- When pressing the ENTER button, the channel switches as shown below each time the ENTER button is pressed.



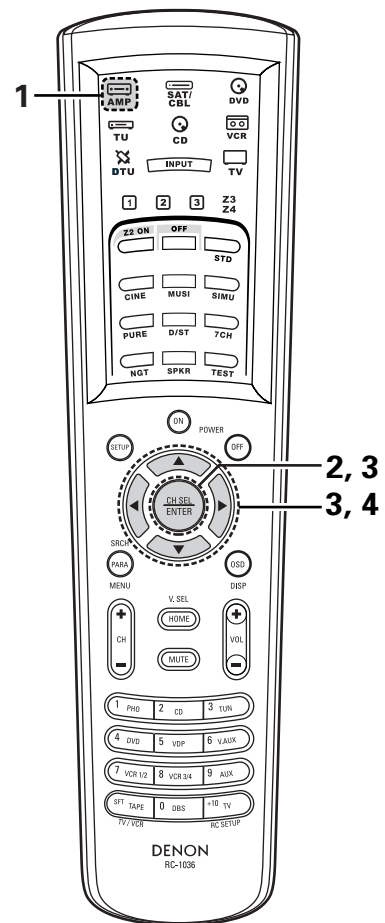
4



(Remote control unit)

Adjust the level of the selected speaker.

- The adjustment range for the different channels is +12 dB to -12 dB.
- The sound from the subwoofer can be completely cut by lowering the SW (subwoofer) setting one additional step from -12 dB (setting it to "OFF").



※ ZONE2 surround back speakers are only displayed when "7.1ch" is selected for the ZONE2 channel output setting at "7-1. Channel Setup".

※ When the ZONE2 surround back speaker setting is set to "1spkr" for "6-1. Speaker Configuration", this is set to "SB".

Fader function

- This function makes it possible to lower the volume of the front channels (FL, C and FR) or the rear channels (SL, SR, SBL and SBR) of ZONE2 together. Use it for example to adjust the balance of the sound from each position when multi-channel music sources are played.

1



(Remote control unit)

Select the ZONE2 mode using the AMP button.

2



(Remote control unit)

The Channel Volume screen is displayed at ZONE2 monitor out.

Channel Vol.					
FL	◀ 0.0dB	SR	0.0dB		
C	0.0dB	SBR	0.0dB		
FR	0.0dB	SBL	0.0dB		
SW	0.0dB	SL	0.0dB		
Fader					
FRONT ◀ : ▶ REAR					

3



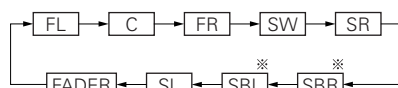
or



(Remote control unit)

Select "Fader".

- When pressing the ENTER button, the channel switches in order shown below each time the ENTER button is pressed.

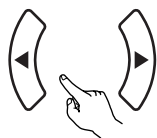


Channel Vol.					
FL	0.0dB	SR	0.0dB		
C	0.0dB	SBR	0.0dB		
FR	0.0dB	SBL	0.0dB		
SW	0.0dB	SL	0.0dB		
Fader					
FRONT ◀ : ▶ REAR					

※ ZONE2 surround back speakers are only displayed when "7.1ch" is selected for the ZONE2 channel output setting at "7-1. Channel Setup".

※ When the ZONE2 surround back speaker setting is set to "1spkr" for "6-1. Speaker Configuration", this is set to "SB".

4

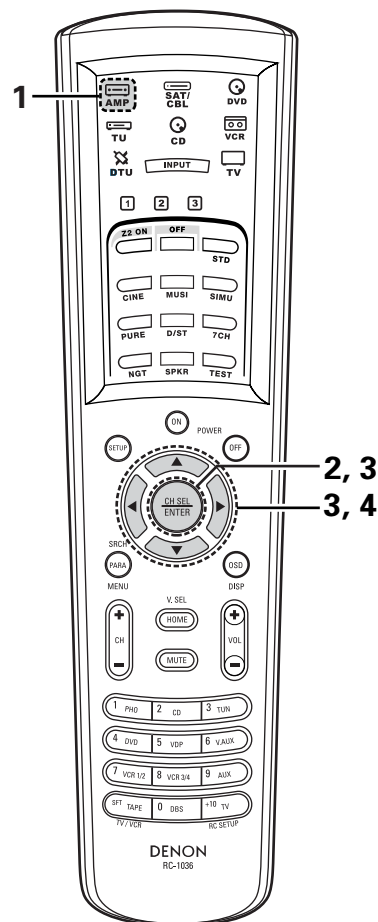


(Remote control unit)

Press the cursor left button to reduce the volume of the front channels, the cursor right button to reduce the volume of the rear channels.


※ The fader function does not affect the SW channel.

- The channel whose channel level is adjusted lowest can be faded to -12 dB using the fader function.
- If the channel levels are adjusted separately after adjusting the fader, the fader adjustment values are cleared, so adjust the fader again.



ZONE2 Surround

- When ZONE2 is used with a 5.1- or 7.1-channel system, various surround modes can be selected according to the program source being played.
- The desired sound field can be achieved by adjusting the parameters for the various surround modes.

1  Select the ZONE2 mode using the AMP button.

(Remote control unit)

2 Select the surround mode.

① Dolby Digital and DTS surround mode. ② DSP surround simulation mode.

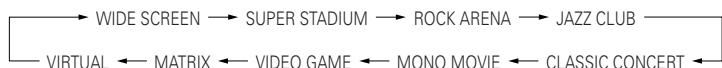


(Remote control unit)



(Remote control unit)

The surround mode switches in the following order each time the DSP SIMULATION button is pressed:



- ③ STEREO mode. ④ 5CH/7CH STEREO mode.



(Remote control unit)

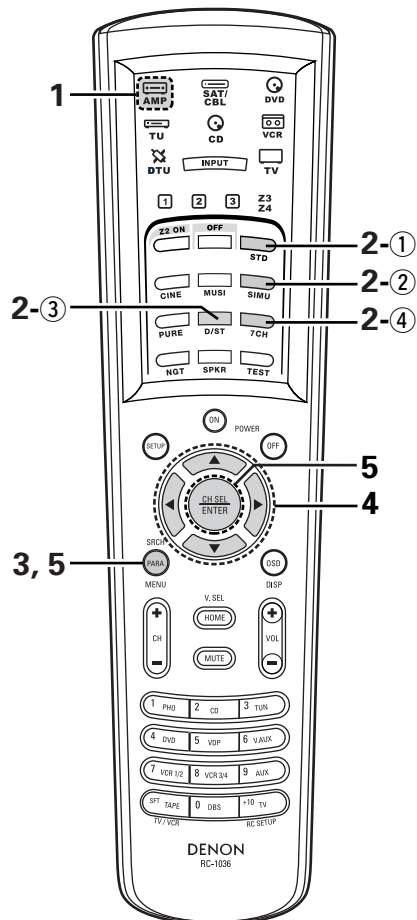



(Remote control unit)

※ See pages 132, 143 ~ 149, 151 for a description of the features of the various surround modes.


NOTE:

- The following surround modes can be selected in ZONE2: STEREO, DOLBY/DTS SURROUND, 5/7CH STEREO, WIDE SCREEN, SUPER STADIUM, ROCK ARENA, JAZZ CLUB, CLASSIC CONCERT, MONO MOVIE, VIDEO GAME, MATRIX and VIRTUAL.



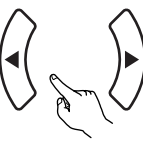
3  Press the SURROUND PARAMETER button.
Display the Surround Parameter menu.



(Remote control unit)

4  ① Select the various parameters.

(Remote control unit)

② Adjust the parameter settings.

 (Remote control unit)

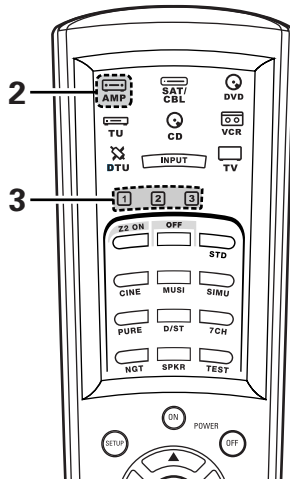
5  or  Press the ENTER or SURROUND PARAMETER button to complete the setting.

(Remote control unit)


Memory and call-out functions of ZONE2 (USER MODE function)


- The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with a function for storing the input source, auto surround mode and input mode settings selected for the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 in the memory so they can be used whenever desired.
- For ZONE2, three patterns of settings can be stored in the memory using the USER MODE 1, 2 and 3 buttons on the Remote control unit.
- See page 150 for a description of the MAIN ZONE's "USER MODE" function.

■ Storing the settings in the memory



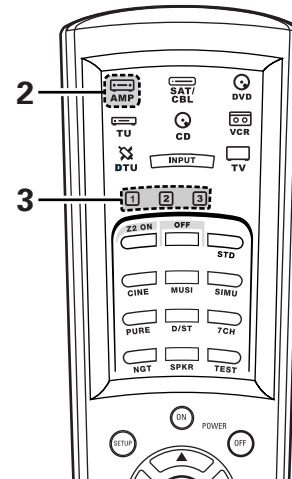
- 1** Set the following to the desired status:
- ① ZONE2 input source
 - ② ZONE2 auto surround mode
 - ③ ZONE2 input mode


- 2**  Select the ZONE2 mode using the AMP button.
- (Remote control unit)


- 3**  Press and hold the USER MODE button at which you want to store the settings.
- (Remote control unit)

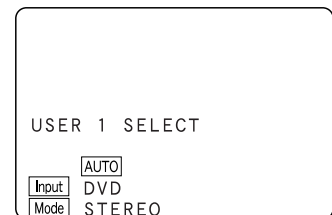


■ Calling the settings out



- 1**  Select the ZONE2 mode using the AMP button.
- (Remote control unit)

- 2**  Select the USER MODE button at which the settings you want to call out have been stored.
- (Remote control unit)



ZONE2 tone control setting

- This function allows you to adjust the bass and treble of the ZONE2 audio output during surround playback in ZONE2 to suit your tastes.

1 Select the ZONE2 mode using the AMP button.

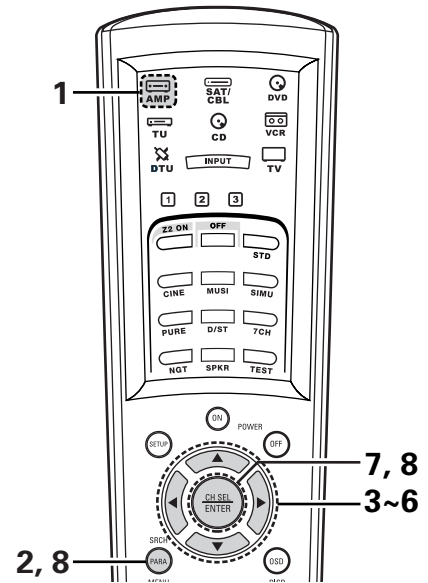
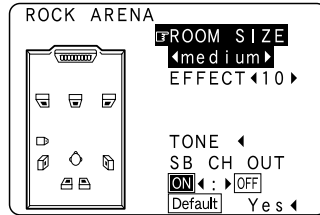


(Remote control unit)

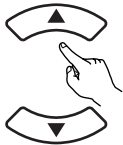
2 Press the SURROUND PARAMETER button.
Display the Surround Parameter menu on the ZONE2 monitor out.
※ The screen for the selected surround mode appears.



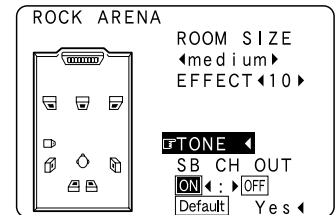
(Remote control unit)



3 Select "TONE".



(Remote control unit)



4 Display the Tone Control screen.



(Remote control unit)

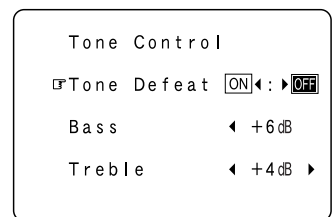


5 Display the Tone Control screen.
Select Tone Defeat OFF.



(Remote control unit)

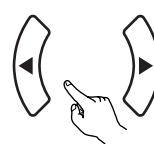
- ※ If you do not want the tone to be adjusted, set "Tone Defeat" to "ON".



6 ① Select Bass or Treble.



(Remote control unit)



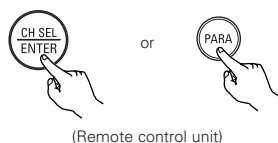
(Remote control unit)

② Select the level.

7 Enter the setting.
The Surround Parameter menu screen reappears.



(Remote control unit)



If the setting ends, press the ENTER or SURROUND PARAMETER button again.

14 LAST FUNCTION MEMORY

- This unit is equipped with a last function memory which stores the input and output setting conditions as they were immediately before the power is switched off. This function eliminates the need to perform complicated resetting when the power is switched on.
- The unit is also equipped with a back-up memory. This function provides approximately one week of memory storage from when the Main unit's power switch is off and with the power supply cord disconnected.

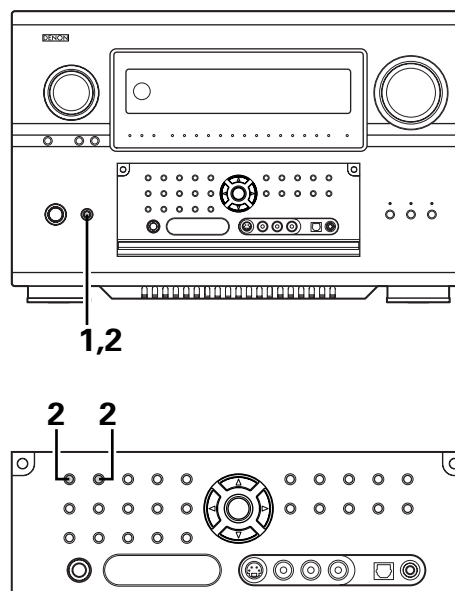
15 INITIALIZATION OF THE MICROPROCESSOR

In very rare instances, the AVC-A1XVA internal microprocessor might lock up, or otherwise cause mis-operation. This might be caused due to an AC line surge or line spike noise, or by static electric discharge on or nearby the unit, or to connected components. If the condition cannot be corrected by powering off the unit, including disconnection of the power supply cord for a period of ten minutes and subsequent re-connection, then the unit may have to be re-initialized. Doing so will restore the microprocessor to its original out-of-the-box state, with all custom memories and settings erased, and the original factory default settings restored. Only use this procedure if you are sure that the microprocessor requires re-initialization.

- 1 Switch off the unit using the Main unit's power operation switch.
- 2 Hold the following STANDARD button and HOME THX CINEMA button, and turn the Main unit's power operation switch on.
- 3 Check that the entire display is flashing with an interval of about 1 second, and release your fingers from the 2 buttons and the microprocessor will be initialized.

NOTES:

- If step 3 does not work, start over from step 1.
- If the microprocessor has been reset, all the settings are reset to the default values (the values set upon shipment from the factory).



16 TROUBLESHOOTING

If a problem should arise, first check the following.

1. Are the connections correct?
2. Have you operated the receiver according to the Operating Instructions?
3. Are the speakers, and other connected components operating properly?

If this unit is not operating properly, check the items listed in the table below. Should the problem persist, there may be a malfunction. Disconnect the power immediately and contact your store of purchase.

Symptom	Cause	Measures	Page
DISPLAY not lit and sound not produced when power switch set to on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power supply cord not plugged in securely. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the insertion of the power supply cord plug. 	11
DISPLAY lit but sound not produced.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Speaker cords not securely connected. FUNCTION knob position is not appropriate. Volume control set to minimum. MUTING is on. No digital signal is being input. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connect securely. Switch to the proper position. Turn volume up to suitable level. Switch off MUTING. Properly select a digital signal input source. 	22, 23 129 130 133 60, 61
Nothing is displayed on monitor.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> AVC-A1XVA's video output jacks and monitor's input jacks are not properly connected. Monitor's input setting is wrong. The VIDEO OFF mode is set. The PURE DIRECT mode is set. The resolution of the monitor device connected to the component monitor output connector does not match the AVC-A1XVA's resolution. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check that the connections are correct. Set the TV's input selector to the jacks to which video signals are connected. Set the VIDEO ON mode. Set a surround mode other than the PURE DIRECT mode. Use the SCALE button on the main unit or the remote control unit to check the resolution setting. 	11 ~ 16 — 132 132 135
No DTS sound is produced.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> DVD player's audio output setting is not set to bit stream. DVD player is not DTS-compatible. AVC-A1XVA's input setting is set to analog. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make the DVD player's initial settings. Use a DTS-compatible player. Set to AUTO or DTS. 	— — 129
Ultra2 Cinema / THX Music Mode / THX Games Mode cannot be set.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Surround back speaker set to 1. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connect two surround back speakers. 	32, 49, 50, 60
Copying from DVD to VCR is not possible.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Copying between a source such as DVD and a VCR is not usually possible, as DVDs are often encoded with copy-protection signals that prevent VCR recording. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Copying is not possible. 	—
No sound is produced from subwoofer.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Subwoofer's power is not on. Subwoofer's initial setting is set to "NO". Subwoofer's output is not connected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn on the power. Set the setting to "YES". Connect properly. 	— 49, 50 23, 98, 99
No test tones are produced.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Surround mode is set to a mode other than Dolby Surround. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to Dolby Surround. 	—
No sound is produced from surround speakers.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Surround mode is set to "STEREO". 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to a mode other than "STEREO". 	—
This unit does not operate properly when Remote control unit is used.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Batteries dead. Remote control unit too far from this unit. Obstacle between this unit and Remote control unit. Different button is being pressed. ⊕ and ⊖ ends of battery inserted in reverse. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace with new batteries. Move closer. Remove obstacle. Press the proper button. Insert batteries properly. 	116 116 116 — 116
An image is not projected with an HDMI/DVI-D connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> AVC-A1XVA's HDMI/DVI-D output jacks and monitor's input jacks are not properly connected. No HDMI/DVI-D signal is being input. The connected monitor equipment or other equipments do not support HDCP. The settings of "MONITOR SELECT" is not appropriate. The output format of the connected player (HDMI/DVI-D FORMAT) does not match the supported input format of connected monitor equipments. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the HDMI/DVI-D connection. Properly select HDMI or DVI-D signal input source. The AVC-A1XVA will not output video signal unless the other equipment supports HDCP. Check the settings of "MONITOR SELECT". Check whether the output format of the connected player (HDMI/DVI-D FORMAT) matches the supported input format of connected monitor equipments. 	15, 16 70, 71 15, 16 69, 70, 134 69, 70
The HDMI audio is not output.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The AVC-A1XVA does not play HDMI audio signals. The HDMI audio signals are not output from the connected monitor device. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set the HDMI audio playback setting at the "HDMI/DVI In Assign" settings to "AMP". Set the HDMI audio playback setting at the "HDMI/DVI In Assign" settings to "TV". 	69, 70 69, 70

17 ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

Optimum surround sound for different sources

There are currently various types of multi-channel signals (signals or formats with more than two channels).

■ Types of multi-channel signals

Dolby Digital (including Surround EX), DTS (including Surround ES), DVD-Audio, and Super Audio CD.

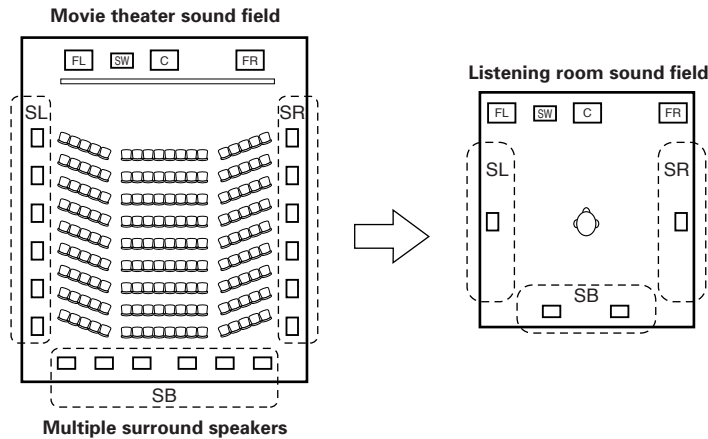
Note on the above: MUSE 3.1 and MPEG multi-channel audio are not available to North American consumers – same is true for Dolby's AAC.

"Source" here does not refer to the type of signal (format) but the recorded content. Sources can be divided into two major categories.

■ Types of sources

• Movie audio

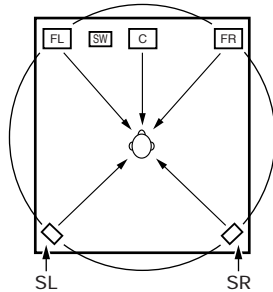
Signals created to be played in movie theaters. In general sound is recorded to be played in movie theaters equipped with multiple surround speakers, regardless of the format (Dolby Digital, DTS, etc.).



In this case it is important to achieve the same sense of expansion as in a movie theater with the surround channels. To do so, in some cases the number of surround speakers is increased (to four or eight) or speakers with bipolar or dipolar properties are used.

(SL: Surround L channel
SR: Surround R channel
SB: Surround B (back) channel

- **Other types of audio** These signals are designed to recreate a 360° sound field using three to five speakers.



In this case the speakers should surround the listener from all sides to create a uniform sound field from 360°. Ideally the surround speakers should function as "point" sound sources in the same way as the front speakers.

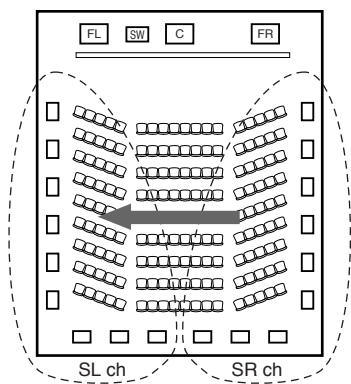
These two types of sources thus have different properties, and different speaker settings, particularly for the surround speakers, are required in order to achieve the ideal sound.

The AVC-A1XVA's surround speaker selection function makes it possible to change the settings according to the combination of surround speakers being used and the surrounding environment in order to achieve the ideal surround sound for all sources. This means that you can connect a pair of bipolar or dipolar surround speakers (mounted on either side of the prime listening position), as well as a separate pair of direct radiating (monopolar) speakers placed at the rear corners of the listening room.

Surround back speakers

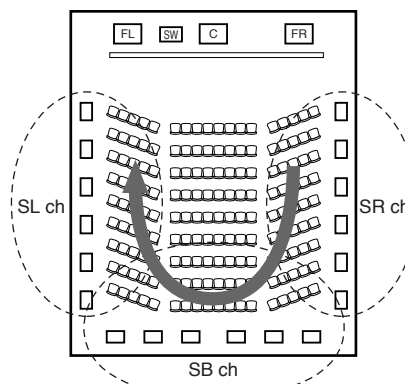
The THX Surround EX format adds new “Surround Back” (SB) channels to the conventional 5.1-channel system. This makes it easy to achieve sound positioned directly behind the listener, something that was previously difficult with sources designed for conventional multi surround speakers. In addition, the acoustic image extending between the sides and the rear is narrowed, thus greatly improving the expression of the surround signals for sounds moving from the sides to the back and from the front to the point directly behind the listening position.

Change of positioning and acoustic image with 5.1-channel systems



Movement of acoustic image from SR to SL

Change of positioning and acoustic image with THX Surround EX system



Movement of acoustic image from SR to SB to SL

Speaker(s) for one or two channels are required in order to achieve a THX Surround EX system with the AVC-A1XVA. Adding these, however, allows you to achieve stronger surround effects not only with sources recorded in THX Surround EX, but also with conventional 2- to 5.1-channel sources. The WIDE SCREEN mode is a mode for achieving surround sound with up to 7.1 channels using surround back speakers, for sources recorded in conventional Dolby Surround as well as Dolby Digital 5.1-channel and DTS Surround 5.1-channel sources. Furthermore, all the Denon original surround modes (see page 151) are compatible with 7.1-channel playback, so you can enjoy 7.1-channel sound with any signal source.

■ Number of surround back speakers

With THX Surround EX, the surround back channel consists of one channel of playback signals, but we recommend using two speakers. The modes that use the new ASA technology from THX (See page 189) are most effective when using two monopole type surround back speakers placed close together.

Using two speakers results in a smoother blend with the sound of the surround channels and better sound positioning of the surround back channel when listening from a position other than the center.

■ Placement of the surround left and right channels when using surround back speakers

Using surround back speakers greatly improves the positioning of the sound at the rear. Because of this, the surround left and right channels play an important role in achieving a smooth transition of the acoustic image from the front to the back. As shown on the diagram above, in a movie theater the surround signals are also produced from diagonally in front of the listeners, creating an acoustic image as if the sound were floating in space.

To achieve these effects, we recommend placing the speakers for the surround left and right channels slightly more towards the front than with conventional surround systems. Doing so sometimes increases the surround effect when playing conventional 5.1-channel sources in the THX Surround EX mode. Check the surround effects of the various modes before selecting the surround mode.

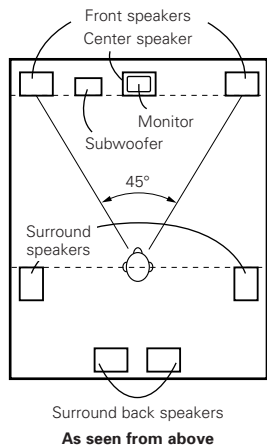
Speaker setting examples

Here we describe a number of speaker settings for different purposes. Use these examples as guides to set up your system according to the type of speakers used and the main usage purpose.

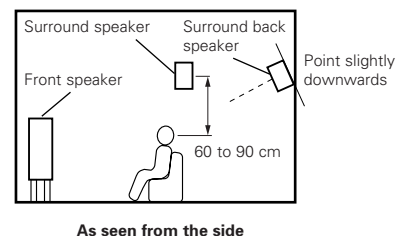
[1] For THX Surround EX systems (using surround back speakers)

① Basic setting for primarily watching movies

This is recommended when mainly playing movies and using regular single way or 2-way speakers for the surround speakers.



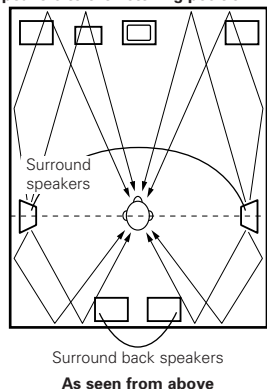
- Set the front speakers with their front surfaces as flush with the TV or monitor screen as possible. Set the center speaker between the front left and right speakers and no further from the listening position than the front speakers.
- Consult the owner's manual for your subwoofer for advice on placing the subwoofer within the listening room.
- If the surround speakers are direct-radiating (monopolar) then place them slightly behind and at an angle to the listening position and parallel to the walls at a position 60 to 90 cm (2 to 3 feet) above ear level at the prime listening position.
- When using two surround back speakers, set them at the back facing front and with both speakers at the same distance from the listening point. When using one surround back speaker, place it at the rear center facing the front at a slightly higher position (0 to 20 cm) than the surround speakers.
- We recommend installing the surround back speaker(s) at a slightly downward facing angle. This effectively prevents the surround back channel signals from reflecting off the monitor or screen at the front center, resulting in interference and making the sense of movement from the front to the back less sharp.
- Connect the surround speakers to the surround speaker A jacks on the AVC-A1XVA and set settings on the setup menu to "A". (This is the factory default setting. For details, see page 29.)



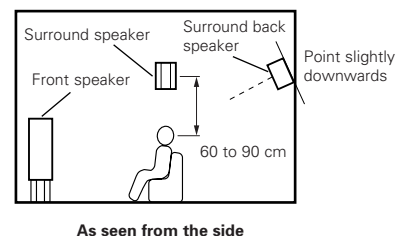
② Setting for primarily watching movies using diffusion type speakers for the surround speakers

For the greatest sense of surround sound envelopment, diffuse radiation speakers such as bipolar types, or dipolar (THX) types, provide a wider dispersion than is possible to obtain from a direct radiating speaker (monopolar). Place these speakers at either side of the prime listening position, mounted above ear level.

Path of the surround sound from the speakers to the listening position



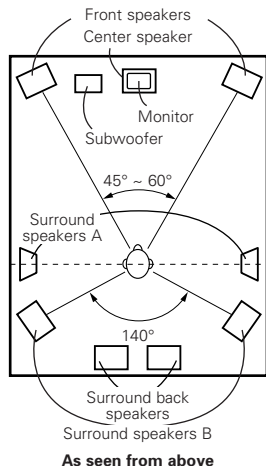
- Set the front speakers, center speaker and subwoofer in the same positions as in example (1).
- It is best to place the surround speakers directly at the side or slightly to the front of the viewing position, and 60 to 90 cm above the ears.
- Same as surround back speaker installation method (1).
- Connect the surround speakers to the surround speaker A jacks on the AVC-A1XVA and set settings on the setup menu to "A". (This is the factory default setting. For details, see page 29.)



- The signals from the surround channels reflect off the walls as shown on the diagram at the left, creating an enveloping and realistic surround sound presentation. For multi-channel music sources however, the use of bipolar or dipolar speakers mounted at the sides of the listening position may not be satisfactory in order to create a coherent 360 degree surround sound field. Connect another pair of direct radiating speakers as described in example (3) and place them at the rear corners of the room facing towards the prime listening position.

③ When using different surround speakers for movies and music

To achieve more effective surround sound for both movies and music, use different sets of surround speakers and different surround modes for the two types of sources.



- Set the front speakers slightly wider apart than the setup for watching movies only and point them toward the listening position in order to assure clear positioning of the sound.
- Set the center speaker in the same positions as in example (1).
- Set surround speakers A for watching movies in the positions described in example (1) or (2), depending on the types of speakers used.
- Set surround speakers B for playing multi-channel music at the same height as the front speakers and slightly at an angle to the rear of the listening position, and point them toward the listening position.
- Connect the surround speakers for watching movies to the surround speaker A jacks on the AVC-A1XVA, the surround speakers for playing multi-channel music to the surround speaker B jacks. Set the surround speaker selection on the setup menu. (For instructions, see page 57.)
- To activate the appropriate speakers for movies and music, we suggest that during setup, choose Dolby Digital/DTS with THX and Surround Speakers A (the bipolar or dipolar speakers mounted at the sides of the listening position).

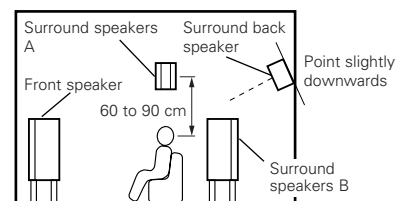
Choose Dolby Digital/DTS without THX and Surround Speakers B (the direct radiating speakers mounted at the rear corners of the listening room). Then, by simply activating the THX function (used during movie playback, the Surround A speakers are automatically activated. For multi-channel music listening (Dolby Digital or DTS music programs), turn off the THX enhancements by touching the THX button on the remote control, and the Surround B speakers will be automatically activated.

Example: Movie sources (Dolby, DTS surround, etc.)

"THX" or "THX 5.1" mode: Speakers A

Music sources (DVD-Video, DTS CD, etc.)

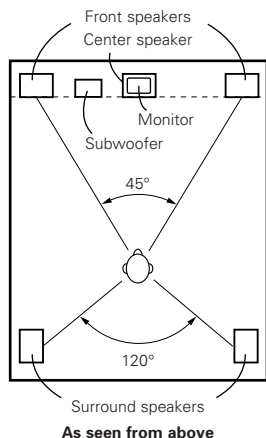
"Dolby/DTS surround": Speakers B



As seen from the side

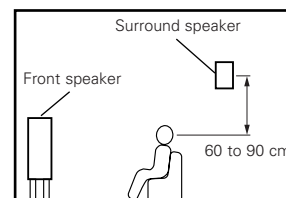
※ The speakers can be switched at the touch of a button by turning HOME THX CINEMA on when playing movies and off when playing multi-channel music.

[2] When not using surround back speakers



As seen from above

- Set the front speakers with their front surfaces as flush with the TV or monitor screen as possible. Set the center speaker between the front left and right speakers and no further from the listening position than the front speakers.
- Consult the owner's manual for your subwoofer for advice on placing the subwoofer within the listening room.
- If the surround speakers are direct-radiating (monopolar) then place them slightly behind and at an angle to the listening position and parallel to the walls at a position 60 to 90 centimeters (2 to 3 feet) above ear level at the prime listening position.
- Connect the surround speakers to the surround speaker A jacks on the AVC-A1XVA and set settings on the setup menu to "A". (This is the factory default setting. For details, see page 29.)



As seen from the side

The surround speakers can be switched freely during playback with the surround parameter adjustment. (For instructions, see page 134.)

Surround

The AVC-A1XVA is equipped with a digital signal processing circuit that lets you play program sources in the surround mode to achieve the same sense of presence as in a movie theater.

[1] Dolby Surround

① Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is the multi-channel digital signal format developed by Dolby Laboratories.


Dolby Digital consists of up to “5.1” channels - front left, front right, center, surround left, surround right, and an additional channel exclusively reserved for additional deep bass sound effects (the Low Frequency Effects – LFE – channel, also called the “.1” channel, containing bass frequencies of up to 120 Hz).

Unlike the analog Dolby Pro Logic format, Dolby Digital’s main channels can all contain full range sound information, from the lowest bass, up to the highest frequencies – 22 kHz. The signals within each channel are distinct from the others, allowing pinpoint sound imaging, and Dolby Digital offers tremendous dynamic range from the most powerful sound effects to the quietest, softest sounds, free from noise and distortion.

■ Dolby Digital and Dolby Pro Logic

Comparison of home surround systems	Dolby Digital	Dolby Pro Logic
No. recorded channels (elements)	5.1 ch	2 ch
No. playback channels	5.1 ch	4 ch
Playback channels (max.)	L, R, C, SL, SR, SW	L, R, C, S (SW - recommended)
Audio processing	Digital discrete processing Dolby Digital (AC-3) encoding/decoding	Analog matrix processing Dolby Surround
High frequency playback limit of surround channel	20 kHz	7 kHz

■ Dolby Digital compatible media and playback methods

Marks indicating Dolby Digital compatibility:  .

The following are general examples. Also refer to the player’s operating instructions.

Media	Dolby Digital output jacks	Playback method (reference page)
DVD	Optical or coaxial digital output (same as for PCM) ※ 1	Set the input mode to “AUTO”. (See page 129)
Others (satellite broadcasts, CATV, etc.)	Optical or coaxial digital output (same as for PCM)	Set the input mode to “AUTO”. (See page 129)

※ 1 Some DVD digital outputs have the function of switching the Dolby Digital signal output method between “bit stream” and “(convert to) PCM”. When playing in Dolby Digital surround on the AVC-A1XVA, switch the DVD player’s output mode to “bit stream”. In some cases players are equipped with both “bit stream + PCM” and “PCM only” digital outputs. In this case connect the “bit stream + PCM” jacks to the AVC-A1XVA.

② Dolby Pro Logic IIx

- Dolby Pro Logic IIx furthers the matrix decoding technology of Dolby Pro Logic II to decode audio signals recorded on two channels into up to 7.1 playback channels, including the surround back channel. Dolby Pro Logic IIx also allows 5.1-channel sources to be played in up to 7.1 channels.

The mode can be selected according to the source. The Music mode is best suited for playing music, the Cinema mode for playing movies, and the Game mode for playing games. The Game mode can only be used with 2-channel audio sources.

③ Dolby Pro Logic II

- Dolby Pro Logic II is a new multi-channel playback format developed by Dolby Laboratories using feedback logic steering technology and offering improvements over conventional Dolby Pro Logic circuits.
- Dolby Pro Logic II can be used to decode not only sources recorded in Dolby Surround (※) but also regular stereo sources into five channels (front left, front right, center, surround left and surround right) to achieve surround sound.
- Whereas with conventional Dolby Pro Logic the surround channel playback frequency band was limited, Dolby Pro Logic II offers a wider band range (20 Hz to 20 kHz or greater). In addition, the surround channels were monaural (the surround left and right channels were the same) with previous Dolby Pro Logic, but Dolby Pro Logic II they are played as stereo signals.
- Various parameters can be set according to the type of source and the contents, so it is possible to achieve optimum decoding (see page 147).

※ Sources recorded in Dolby Surround

These are sources in which three or more channels of surround have been recorded as two channels of signals using Dolby Surround encoding technology.


Dolby Surround is used for the sound tracks of movies recorded on DVDs, LDs and video cassettes to be played on stereo VCRs, as well as for the stereo broadcast signals of FM radio, TV, satellite broadcasts and cable TV.

Decoding these signals with Dolby Pro Logic makes it possible to achieve multi-channel surround playback. The signals can also be played on ordinary stereo equipment, in which case they provide normal stereo sound.

There are two types of DVD Dolby surround recording signals.

- ① 2-channel PCM stereo signals
- ② 2-channel Dolby Digital signals

■ Sources recorded in Dolby Surround are indicated with the logo mark shown below.

Dolby Surround support mark: 

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby", "Pro Logic", "Surround EX" and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

④ Dolby Headphone

- This is a three-dimensional sound technology developed jointly by Dolby Laboratories and Lake Technology Ltd. of Australia for achieving surround sound using regular headphones.
- Previously, when using headphones all the sounds resonated inside the head and it was uncomfortable to listen with headphones for long periods of time. Dolby Headphone simulates speaker playback in a room and places the sound at the front or the sides, outside the head, to achieve a powerful sound like the sound of movie or home theaters. This technology is mainly for multichannel audio/video equipment with Dolby Digital or Dolby Pro Logic Surround decoding functions and works with a high performance digital signal processing (DSP) chip.
- Dolby Headphone is effective not only for multichannel sources but also for stereo programs.
- On the AVC-A1XVA, it is possible to output signals encoded in the Dolby Headphone mode from the recording output terminal and record them on a separate recorder.

[2] DTS Digital Surround

DTS Digital Surround (also called simply DTS) is a multi-channel digital signal format developed by Digital Theater Systems.

DTS offers the same "5.1" playback channels as Dolby Digital (front left, front right and center, surround left and surround right) as well as the stereo 2-channel mode. The signals for the different channels are fully independent, eliminating the risk of deterioration of sound quality due to interference between signals, crosstalk, etc.

DTS features a relatively higher bit rate as compared to Dolby Digital (1234 kbps for CDs and LDs, 1536 kbps for DVDs) so it operates with a relatively low compression rate. Because of this the amount of data is great, and when DTS playback is used in movie theaters, a separate CD-ROM synchronized with the film is played.

With LDs and DVDs, there is of course no need for an extra disc; the pictures and sound can be recorded simultaneously on the same disc, so the discs can be handled in the same way as discs with other formats.

There are also music CDs recorded in DTS. These CDs include 5.1-channel surround signals (compared to two channels on current CDs). They do not include picture data, but they offer surround playback on CD players that are equipped with digital outputs (PCM type digital output required).

DTS surround track playback offers the same intricate, grand sound as in a movie theater, right in your own listening room.

■ DTS compatible media and playback methods

Marks indicating DTS compatibility:  and .

The following are general examples. Also refer to the player's operating instructions.

Media	DTS Digital output jacks	Playback method (reference page)
CD	Optical or coaxial digital output (same as for PCM) ※ 2	Set the input mode to "AUTO" or "DTS" (See page 129). Never set the mode to "ANALOG" or "PCM". ※ 1
DVD	Optical or coaxial digital output (same as for PCM) ※ 3	Set the input mode to "AUTO" or "DTS" (See page 129).

- ※ 1 DTS signals are recorded in the same way on CDs and LDs as PCM signals. Because of this, the un-decoded DTS signals are output as random “hissy” noise from the CD or LD player’s analog outputs. If this noise is played with the amplifier set at a very high volume, it may possibly cause damage to the speakers. To avoid this, be sure to switch the input mode to “AUTO” or “DTS” before playing CDs or LDs recorded in DTS. Also, never switch the input mode to “ANALOG” or “PCM” during playback. The same holds true when playing CDs or LDs on a DVD player or LD/DVD compatible player. For DVDs, the DTS signals are recorded in a special way so this problem does not occur.
- ※ 2 The signals provided at the digital outputs of a CD or LD player may undergo some sort of internal signal processing (output level adjustment, sampling frequency conversion, etc.). In this case the DTS-encoded signals may be processed erroneously, in which case they cannot be decoded by the AVC-A1XVA, or may only produce noise. Before playing DTS signals for the first time, turn down the master volume to a low level, start playing the DTS disc, then check whether the DTS indicator on the AVC-A1XVA (see page 143) lights before turning up the master volume.
- ※ 3 A DVD player with DTS-compatible digital output is required to play DTS DVDs. A DTS Digital Output logo is featured on the front panel of compatible DVD players. Recent DENON DVD player models feature DTS-compatible digital output – consult the player’s owner’s manual for information on configuring the digital output for DTS playback of DTS-encoded DVDs.

MANUFACTURED UNDER LICENSE FROM DIGITAL THEATER SYSTEMS, INC.
 U.S. PAT. NO’S. 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,226,616; 6,487,535 AND OTHER U.S. AND WORLD-WIDE PATENTS
 ISSUED AND PENDING.
 “DTS”, “DTS-ES”, “Neo:6”, AND “DTS 96/24” ARE TRADEMARKS OF DIGITAL THEATER SYSTEMS, INC. © 1996, 2003 DIGITAL
 THEATER SYSTEMS, INC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

[3] DTS-ES™

DTS-ES is a new multi-channel digital signal format developed by Digital Theater Systems Inc. While offering high compatibility with the conventional DTS Digital Surround format, DTS-ES greatly improves the 360-degree surround impression and space expression thanks to further expanded surround signals. This format has been used professionally in movie theaters since 1999.

In addition to the 5.1 surround channels (FL, FR, C, SL, SR and LFE), DTS-ES also offers the SB (Surround Back, sometimes also referred to as “surround center”) channel for surround playback with a total of 6.1 channels. DTS-ES includes two signal formats with different surround signal recording methods, as described below.

■ DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1

DTS-ES Discrete 6.1 is the newest recording format. With it, all 6.1 channels (including the SB channel) are recorded independently using a digital discrete system. The main feature of this format is that because the SL, SR and SB channels are fully independent, the sound can be designed with total freedom and it is possible to achieve a sense that the acoustic images are moving about freely among the background sounds surrounding the listener from 360 degrees.

Though maximum performance is achieved when sound tracks recorded with this system are played using a DTS-ES decoder, when played with a conventional DTS decoder the SB channel signals are automatically down-mixed to the SL and SR channels, so none of the signal components are lost.

■ DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1

With this format, the additional SB channel signals undergo matrix encoding and are input to the SL and SR channels beforehand. Upon playback they are decoded to the SL, SR and SB channels. The performance of the encoder used at the time of recording can be fully matched using a high precision digital matrix decoder developed by DTS, thereby achieving surround sound more faithful to the producer’s sound design aims than with conventional 5.1- or 6.1-channel systems.

In addition, the bit stream format is 100% compatible with conventional DTS signals, so the effect of the Matrix 6.1 format can be achieved even with 5.1-channel signal sources. Of course it is also possible to play DTS-ES Matrix 6.1 encoded sources with a DTS 5.1-channel decoder.

When DTS-ES Discrete 6.1 or Matrix 6.1 encoded sources are decoded with a DTS-ES decoder, the format is automatically detected upon decoding and the optimum playing mode is selected. However, some Matrix 6.1 sources may be detected as having a 5.1-channel format, so the DTS-ES Matrix 6.1 mode must be set manually to play these sources.

(For instructions on selecting the surround mode, see page 142.)

The DTS-ES decoder includes another function, the DTS Neo:6 surround mode for 6.1-channel playback of digital PCM and analog signal sources.

■ DTS Neo:6™ surround

This mode applies conventional 2-channel signals to the high precision digital matrix decoder used for DTS-ES Matrix 6.1 to achieve 6.1-channel surround playback. High precision input signal detection and matrix processing enable full band reproduction (frequency response of 20 Hz to 20 kHz or greater) for all 6.1 channels, and separation between the different channels is improved to the same level as that of a digital discrete system.

DTS Neo:6 surround includes two modes for selecting the optimum decoding for the signal source.

• DTS Neo:6 Cinema

This mode is optimum for playing movies. Decoding is performed with emphasis on separation performance to achieve the same atmosphere with 2-channel sources as with 6.1-channel sources.

This mode is effective for playing sources recorded in conventional surround formats as well, because the in-phase component is assigned mainly to the center channel (C) and the reversed phase component to the surround (SL, SR and SB channels).

• DTS Neo:6 Music

This mode is suited mainly for playing music. The front channel (FL and FR) signals bypass the decoder and are played directly so there is no loss of sound quality, and the effect of the surround signals output from the center (C) and surround (SL, SR and SB) channels add a natural sense of expansion to the sound field.

[4] DTS 96/24

The sampling frequency, number of bits and number of channels used for recording of music, etc., in studios has been increasing in recent years, and there are a growing number of high quality signal sources, including 96 kHz/24 bit 5.1-channel sources.

For example, there are high picture/sound quality DVD-Video sources with 96 kHz/24 bit stereo PCM audio tracks.

However, because the data rate for these audio tracks is extremely high, there are limits to recording them on two channels only, and since the quality of the pictures must be restricted it is common to only include still pictures.

In addition, 96 kHz/24 bit 5.1-channel surround is possible with DVD-Audio sources, but DVD-Audio players are required to play them with this high quality.

DTS 96/24 is a multi-channel digital signal format developed by Digital Theater Systems Inc, in order to deal with this situation.

Conventional surround formats used sampling frequencies of 48 or 44.1 kHz, so 20 kHz was about the maximum playback signal frequency. With DTS 96/24, the sampling frequency is increased to 96 or 88.2 kHz to achieve a wide frequency range of over 40 kHz.

In addition, DTS 96/24 has a resolution of 24 bits, resulting in the same frequency band and dynamic range as 96 kHz/24 bit PCM.

As with conventional DTS Surround, DTS 96/24 is compatible with a maximum of 5.1 channels, so sources recorded using DTS 96/24 can be played in high sampling frequency, multiple channel audio with such normal media as DVD Videos and CDs.

Thus, with DTS 96/24, the same 96 kHz/24 bit multi-channel surround sound as with DVD-Audio can be achieved while viewing DVD-Video images on a conventional DVD-Video player (*1). Furthermore, with DTS 96/24 compatible CDs, 88.2 kHz/24 bit multi-channel surround can be achieved using normal CD/LD players (*1).

Even with the high quality multi-channel signals, the recording time is the same as with conventional DTS surround sources.

What's more, DTS 96/24 is fully compatible with the conventional DTS surround format, so DTS 96/24 signal sources can be played with a sampling frequency of 48 kHz or 44.1 kHz on conventional DTS or DTS-ES surround decoders (*2).

*1: A DVD player with DTS digital output capabilities (for CD/LD players, a player with digital outputs for conventional DTS CDs/LDs) and a disc recorded in DTS 96/24 are required.

*2: The resolution is 24 or 20 bits, depending on the decoder.

[5] Home THX Cinema Surround

THX is an exclusive set of standards and technologies established by the world-renowned film production company, Lucasfilm Ltd. THX grew from George Lucas' personal desire to make your experience of the film soundtrack, in both movie theaters and in your home theater, as faithful as possible to what the director intended.

Movie soundtracks are mixed in special movie theaters called dubbing stages and are designed to be played back in movie theaters with similar equipment and conditions. The soundtrack created for movie theaters is then transferred directly onto Laserdisc, VHS tape, DVD, etc., and is not changed for playback in a small home theater environment.

THX engineers developed patented technologies to accurately translate the sound from the movie theater environment into the home, correcting the tonal and spatial errors that occur. On the AVC-A1XVA, when the Home THX Cinema mode is on, THX post-processing is automatically added after the Dolby Pro Logic, Dolby Digital or DTS decoder:

Re-EQ™

The tonal balance of a film soundtrack will be excessively bright and harsh when played back over audio equipment in the home because film soundtracks are designed to be played back in large movie theaters using very different professional equipment. Re-Equalization restores the correct tonal balance for listening to a movie soundtrack in a normal home environment.

Timbre Matching™

The human ear changes our perception of a sound depending on the direction from which the sound is coming. In a movie theater, there is an array of surround speakers so that the surround information is all around you. In a home theater, only two speakers located to the side of your head are used. The Timbre Matching feature filters the information going to the surround speakers so that they more closely match the tonal characteristics of the sound coming from the front speakers. This ensures seamless panning between the front and surround speakers.

Adaptive Decorrelation™

In a movie theater, a large number of surround speakers help create an enveloping surround sound experience, while in a home theater there are usually only two speakers. This can make the surround speakers sound like headphones that lack spaciousness and envelopment. The surround sounds will also collapse into the closest speaker as you move away from the middle seating position. Adaptive Decorrelation slightly changes one surround channel's time and phase relationship with respect to the other surround channel. This expands the listening position and creates—with only two speakers—the same spacious surround experience as in a movie theater.

THX Ultra2™

Before any home theater component can be THX Ultra2 certified, it must incorporate all the features above and also pass a rigorous series of quality and performance tests. Only then can a product feature the THX Ultra2 logo, which is your guarantee that the Home Theater products you purchase will give you superb performance for many years to come. THX Ultra2 requirements cover every aspect of the product including power amplifier performance, pre-amplifier performance and operation, as well as hundreds of other parameters in both the digital and analog domain.

In addition to improvements to the power amplifier with respect to previous THX Ultra standards, three surround modes have been added: the THX Ultra2 Cinema mode, THX Music Mode and THX Games Mode

THX Ultra2 Cinema

THX Ultra2 Cinema mode plays 5.1 movies using all 8 speakers giving you the best possible movie watching experience. In this mode, new THX processing blends the side surround speakers and back surround speakers providing the optimal mix of ambient and directional surround sounds.

DTS-ES (Matrix and 6.1 Discrete) and Dolby Digital Surround EX encoded soundtracks will be automatically detected in Ultra2 Cinema mode if the appropriate flag has been encoded.

Some Dolby Digital Surround EX soundtracks are missing the digital flag that allows automatic switching. If you know that the movie that you are watching is encoded in Surround EX, you can manually select the THX Surround EX playback mode, otherwise THX Ultra2 Cinema mode will apply processing to provide optimum replay.

THX Music Mode

For the replay of 5.1 multi-channel music the THX Music Mode should be selected. In this mode new THX processing is applied to the surround channels of all 5.1 encoded music sources such as DTS and Dolby Digital to provide a wide stable rear soundstage.

THX Games Mode

For the replay of stereo and multi-channel game audio the THX Games Mode should be selected. In this mode THX ASA processing is applied to the surround channels of all 5.1 and 2.0 encoded game sources such as analog, PCM, DTS and Dolby Digital. This accurately places all game audio surround information, providing a full 360 degree playback environment. THX Games Mode is unique as it gives you a smooth transition of audio in all points of the surround field.

Advanced Speaker Array™ (ASA)

ASA is a proprietary THX technology which processes the sound fed to 2 side and 2 back surround speakers to provide the optimal surround sound experience. When you set up your home theater system using all eight speaker outputs (Left, Center, Right, Surround Right, Surround Back Right, Surround Back Left, Surround Left and Subwoofer) placing the two Surround Back speakers close together facing the front of the room as shown in the diagram will provide the largest sweet spot. If for practical reasons you have to place the Surround Back speakers apart, you will need to go THX Audio Set-up screen and choose the setting that most closely corresponds to the speaker spacing, which will re-optimize the surround sound-field.

ASA is used in three new modes; THX Ultra2 Cinema, THX MusicMode and THX Games Mode.

Boundary Gain Compensation

If your chosen listening room layout (for practical or aesthetic reasons) results in the most of the listeners being close to the rear wall, the resulting bass level can be sufficiently reinforced by the boundary that the overall sound quality becomes “boomy”. THX Ultra2 receivers and controllers contain the BGC (Boundary Gain Compensation) feature to provide an improved bass balance. BGC can be selected by choosing “THX Ultra2 Subwoofer-Yes” from the “Boundary Gain Compensation” section of the THX Audio setup menu.

THX and Re-EQ, THX Timbre Matching, THX Adaptive Decorrelation, and THX Advanced Speaker Array are trademarks of THX Ltd. THX may be registered in some jurisdictions. All rights reserved.

[6] THX™ Surround EX™

In 1999, a new surround system was launched simultaneously with the release of the movie “Star Wars Episode I”. “Dolby Digital Surround EX” is a new movie sound track that greatly enhances the sense of spatial expression and the positioning of the surround channel sound. The result is 360 degrees of movement and moving sound effects that seem to pass right over the listener’s head.

This system was developed jointly by THX and Dolby Laboratories, fusing THX’s idea of improving spatial expression and achieving a uniform 360 degree sound positioning with Dolby Laboratories’ matrix encoding technology. Emphasis was placed on compatibility with the existing system Dolby Digital 5.1-channel, and the new “surround back (SB) channel” was added to achieve improvements over the conventional 5.1-channel system in terms of the positioning of the sound at the rear, the acoustic image of sound moving from the two sides to the back as well as sound moving from the front to the center rear with the multi surround speaker systems used in movie theaters, thereby enabling various types of surround sound.

The surround back channel signal is a matrix-encoded signal inserted into both the Dolby Digital SL (surround left) and SR (surround right) channels. Upon playback, the signals are decoded by a high precision digital matrix decoder within the Dolby Digital decoder into the SL, SR and SB channels and output as 6.1 channels of signals. With the AVC-A1XVA, the signals further undergo Home THX Cinema processing to achieve a THX Surround EX system.

Even without the proper environment for playing the SB channel, Dolby Digital Surround EX signals are 100% compatible with existing 5.1-channel playback systems, so they can be played as such. In this case, the SB channel signal is produced as a monaural signal from both the SL and SR channels, so none of the signal components are missing. The effects specific to THX Surround EX (the sense of spatial expression and the positioning of the sound), however, are the same as with conventional 5.1-channel surround systems.

THX and Ultra2 are trademarks of THX Ltd. THX may be registered in some jurisdictions. All rights reserved. Surround EX is a trademark of Dolby Laboratories. Used with permission.

Audyssey MultEQ XT

There are several factors that can degrade the sound from even the best loudspeakers in a listening room. One of the most important is the interaction of sound from the loudspeakers with large surfaces such as walls, the floor, and the ceiling in the room. Even with careful loudspeaker placement and acoustical treatments, there are significant problems that are caused by room acoustics. These include reflections from nearby surfaces and standing waves that are created between large parallel surfaces in the room.

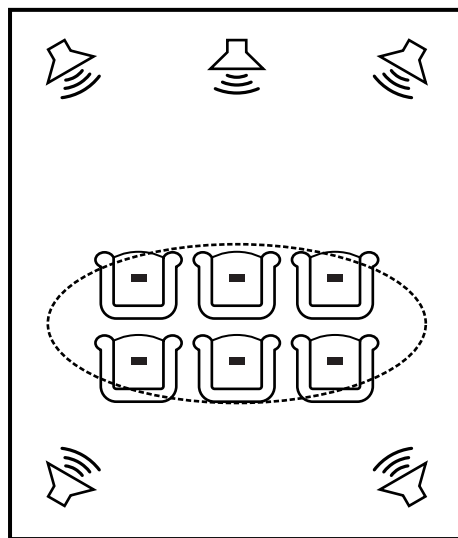
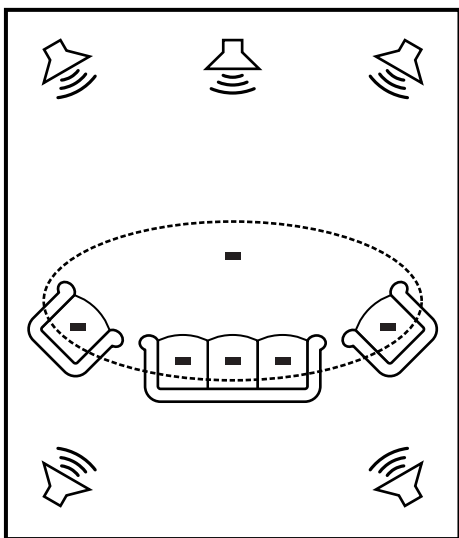
In a home theater the situation is further complicated because there are several listening locations. The effects of room acoustics on the sound arriving at each person's ears are very different and the result is a listening experience that is degraded in a different way for every person in the room. It is not uncommon to have variations in two adjacent seats that are as large as 10 dB, particularly in the frequency range below 250 Hz.

The solution to this problem is to apply room correction after precisely measuring how each loudspeaker interacts with the room. Because the room causes variations in the frequency response of the loudspeakers that are so large from seat to seat, it is important to measure each loudspeaker at several locations in the listening room. This should be done even if there is only one listener. Measurement at a single location is not representative of the acoustical problems in the room and will, in most cases, degrade overall performance.

Audyssey MultEQ XT is the only technology that can achieve room correction for multiple listeners in a large listening area. It does so by combining the data collected at several points in the room from each loudspeaker and then applying correction that minimizes the acoustical effects of the room and is matched to the frequency resolution of human perception (known as psychoacoustics). Furthermore, MultEQ XT correction is applied both in frequency and time domains and so there are no artifacts (such as smearing of sound or modal ringing) that are sometimes associated with traditional methods of room equalization.

In addition to correcting frequency response problems over a wide listening area, Audyssey MultEQ XT provides a completely automated sound system set-up process. It identifies how many loudspeakers are connected to the amplifiers and whether they are full-range, satellites, or subwoofers. If there is at least one subwoofer connected, Audyssey MultEQ XT determines the optimum crossover frequency between each satellite and the subwoofer(s). It automatically checks the polarity of each loudspeaker and alerts the user if there are any that may be wired out-of-phase relative to the others. It measures the distance to each loudspeaker from the main listening position and adjusts the delays so that sound from each loudspeaker arrives at the same time. Finally, Audyssey MultEQ XT determines the playback level of each loudspeaker and adjusts the volume trims so that all levels are equal.

The two diagrams below illustrate two examples of microphone placement for two types of seating arrangements. There are six measuring positions shown in each case. Increasing the number of measuring points will provide a better sampling of the listening area and produce better results. The dotted line represents the area in which the room correction provided by Audyssey MultEQ XT is optimal. The microphone must be placed at ear height at each location.



- Audyssey MultEQ XT is a trademark of Audyssey Laboratories. It is licensed under US and National Patent Applications 20030235318 and 10/700,220. Additional U.S. and Foreign Patents pending. MultEQ and the Audyssey MultEQ logo are trademarks of Audyssey Laboratories, Inc.. All rights reserved.

HDCD® (High Definition Compatible Digital®)

HDCD is an encoding/decoding technology that greatly reduces the distortion that occurs upon digital recording while maintaining compatibility with the conventional CD format, thus expanding the dynamic range and achieving a high resolution.

Conventional CDs and HDCD compatible CDs are identified automatically to select the optimum digital processing.



- HDCD®, HDCD®, High Definition Compatible Digital® and Microsoft® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. HDCD system manufactured under license from Microsoft Corporation, Inc. This product is covered by one or more of the following: In the USA: 5,479,168, 5,638,074, 5,640,161, 5,808,574, 5,838,274, 5,854,600, 5,864,311, 5,872,531, and in Australia: 669114. Other patents pending.

DENON LINK (DENON Digital Link)

High-grade LPCM 24-bit, 96-kHz, 6-channel or 24-bit, 192-kHz, 2-channel digital input is possible when the AVC-A1XVA is connected via a shielded twisted pair (STP) cable to a Denon DVD player that supports Denon Digital Link. Since Denon Digital Link uses low-voltage differential signaling (LVDS), transfer capabilities of greater than 1.2 Gbps at a differential voltage of approximately 0.3Vpp are possible.

About IEEE1394

IEEE1394 is an international standard established by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) of the United States.

The AVC-A1XVA can be connected to an IEEE1394 compatible device using an IEEE1394 cable to enable digital transfer of multi-channel audio sources (DVD Audio discs, Super Audio CDs, etc.) with a single cable.

- The AVC-A1XVA's transfer format is compatible with A&M protocol.
In addition to A&M protocol, IEEE1394 transfer formats also include MPEG-TS, DV, etc.
- The AVC-A1XVA is compatible with a data transfer speed of up to S400.
The IEEE1394 maximum data transfer speeds are defined as approximately 100, 200 or 400 Mbps, expressed respectively as S100, S200 and S400. When S100 or S200 devices are connected, the actual transfer rate may be slower than 400 Mbps, depending on the device's specifications. As far as possible, interconnect devices with the same maximum data transfer rate.
- The AVC-A1XVA is compatible with the DTCP (Digital Transmission Content Protection) system.

■ Copyright protection system

In order to play the sound of DVD Audio discs, Super Audio CDs or DVDs (aside from freely copiable discs) using IEEE1394 connections, both the player and receiver must be compatible with the DTCP (Digital Transmission Content Protection) system.

DTCP is a copy protection technology that involves data encryption and authentication of the other device. Refer to your player's operating instructions.

The AVC-A1XVA's IEEE1394 device interface is designed based on the standards below.

1) IEEE Std. 1394a-2000, Standard for High Performance Serial Bus

2) Audio and Music Data Transmission Protocol 2.0

It is compatible with IEC60958 bit stream, DVD-Audio and Super Audio CD within AM824 sequence adaptation layers within these

About HDMI

"HDMI" is the abbreviation of "High-Definition Multimedia Interface".

This is a digital interface standard for next generation TVs developed based on the DVI (Digital Visual Interface) used for computer displays, etc., and optimized for use in non-professional equipment. With it, non-compressed digital video and multi-channel audio signals can be transferred with a single connector, eliminating the need to use separate cables for the picture and sound and making it possible to make connectors smaller. HDMI is also compatible with HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Contents Protection), a technology for protecting copyrights that encrypts digital video signals in the same way as with DVI.



HDMI, the HDMI logo and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.

Advanced AL24 Processing

■ Equipped with "Advanced AL24 Processing" – time base area data quantity extension

In addition to "AL24 Processing Plus", the conventional bit extension technology, the PCM signal (CD/digital) playback system also includes the newly developed "Advanced AL24 Processing", a unique high speed signal detection and processing technology that greatly improves the amount of data in the time base area. In addition to extension of the original 16-bit data into 24 bits, "Advanced AL24 Processing" conducts data interpolation on the time axis, in other words up-convert sampling, to achieve natural interpolation processing without harming the original data. In addition, the digital filter offers expanded flexibility, including pulse response with no ringing. Optimum filtering processing is performed even for pulsive music data and attack sounds. All this makes it possible to recreate the delicate nuances of the music and such space information as the positions of the performers, the width, height and depth of the place of the performance (stage), and so on.

Windows Media Connect

This is a media server provided free of charge by Microsoft since October 2004.

It operates with all types of music jukebox programs, but is optimum with Windows Media Player Ver. 10.

Windows Media Connect can be used to play playlists created on jukebox software such as Windows Media Player Ver. 10, as well as WMA, DRM WMA, MP3 and WAV files.

■ Explanation for installing Windows Media Connect

1. If installation of Windows XP Service Pack 2 is not yet complete, either download free of charge from Microsoft or via the Windows Update installer.
2. Download the latest version of Windows Media Player Ver. 10 either directly from Microsoft or using the Windows Update installer.
3. Download Windows Media Connect (usable since October 12, 2004) either directly from Microsoft or using the Windows Update installer.

vTuner

This is an Internet radio free online contents server.

For inquiries about this service, visit the vTuner site below.

vTuner website: <http://www.radiodenon.com>

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Nothing Else Matters Software and BridgeCo. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Nothing Else Matters Software and BridgeCo or an authorized subsidiary.

Windows Media DRM

A copyright-protected technology developed by Microsoft.

- The PlaysForSure logo, Windows Media and the Windows logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Content providers are using the digital rights management technology for Windows Media contained in this device ("WM-DRM") to protect the integrity of their content ("Secure Content") so that their intellectual property, including copyright, in such content is not misappropriated. This device uses WM-DRM software to play Secure Content ("WM-DRM Software"). If the security of the WM-DRM Software in this device has been compromised, owners of Secure Content ("Secure Content Owners") may request that Microsoft revoke the WM-DRM Software's right to acquire new licenses to copy, display and/or play Secure Content. Revocation does not alter the WM-DRM Software's ability to play unprotected content. A list of revoked WM-DRM Software is sent to your device whenever you download a license for Secure Content from the Internet or from PC. Microsoft may, in conjunction with such license, also download revocation list onto your device on behalf of Secure Content Owners.

Surround modes and parameters

Surround Mode	Signals and adjustability in the different modes											
	Channel output					Parameter (default values are shown in parentheses)						
	FRONT L/R	CENTER	SURROUND L/R	SURROUND BACK L/R	SUB-WOOFER	D. COMP *1	LFE *2	AFDM *1	SB CH OUT (MODE)	TOPE CONTROL	CINEMA EQ.	MODE (DECODER)
PURE DIRECT, DIRECT	○	×	×	×	⊗	○ (OFF)	○ (0 dB)	×	×	×	×	×
DSD DIRECT	○	×	×	×	⊗	×	○ (0 dB)	×	×	×	×	×
DSD MULTI DIRECT	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	×	○ (0 dB)	×	○	×	×	×
MULTI CH DIRECT	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	×	○ (0 dB)	○ (ON)	○	×	×	×
STEREO	○	×	×	×	⊗	○ (OFF)	○ (0 dB)	×	×	○ (0 dB)	×	×
EXT.IN	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
MULTI CH IN	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	×	○ (0 dB)	○ (ON)	○	○ (0 dB)	×	×
WIDE SCREENHOME	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	○ (OFF)	○ (0 dB)	×	○	○ (0 dB)	○ (OFF)	×
HOME THX CINEMA (2ch)	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	×	×	×	○	×	×	○ (PLIIx C)
HOME THX CINEMA (5.1ch)	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	×	○ (0 dB)	○ (ON)	○	×	×	×
DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	○ (OFF)	×	×	○	○ (0 dB)	○ (NOTE3)	○ (CINEMA)
DOLBY PRO LOGIC II	○	⊗	⊗	×	⊗	○ (OFF)	×	×	○	○ (0 dB)	○ (NOTE4)	○ (CINEMA)
DTS NEO:6	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	○ (OFF)	×	×	○	○ (0 dB)	○ (NOTE3)	○ (CINEMA)
DOLBY DIGITAL	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	○ (OFF)	○ (0 dB)	○ (ON)	○	○ (0 dB)	○ (OFF)	×
DTS SURROUND	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	○ (OFF)	○ (0 dB)	○ (ON)	○	○ (0 dB)	○ (OFF)	×
7CH STEREO	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	○ (OFF)	○ (0 dB)	×	○	○ (0 dB)	×	×
SUPER STADIUM	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	○ (OFF)	○ (0 dB)	×	○	○ (NOTE1)	×	×
ROCK ARENA	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	○ (OFF)	○ (0 dB)	×	○	○ (NOTE2)	×	×
JAZZ CLUB	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	○ (OFF)	○ (0 dB)	×	○	○ (0 dB)	×	×
CLASSIC CONCERT	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	○ (OFF)	○ (0 dB)	×	○	○ (0 dB)	×	×
MONO MOVIE	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	○ (OFF)	○ (0 dB)	×	○	○ (0 dB)	×	×
VIDEO GAME	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	○ (OFF)	○ (0 dB)	×	○	○ (0 dB)	×	×
MATRIX	○	⊗	⊗	⊗	⊗	○ (OFF)	○ (0 dB)	×	○	○ (0 dB)	×	×
VIRTURL	○	×	×	×	⊗	○ (OFF)	○ (0 dB)	×	×	○ (0 dB)	×	×

Surround Mode	Signals and adjustability in the different modes									
	Parameter (default values are shown in parentheses)									
	ROOM SIZE	EFFECT LEVEL	Dolby Digital	DELAY TIME	SUBWOOFER ON/OFF	PRO LOGIC II/IIx MUSIC MODE only			NEO:6 MUSIC MODE only	EXT. IN only
			NIGHT mode			PANORAMA	DIMENSION	CENTER WIDTH	CENTER IMAGE	SW ATT
PURE DIRECT, DIRECT	×	×	○ (OFF)	×	○	×	×	×	×	×
DSD DIRECT	×	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	×	×
DSD MULTI DIRECT	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
MULTI CH DIRECT	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
STEREO	×	×	○ (OFF)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
EXT.IN	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○
MULTI CH IN	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
WIDE SCREEN	×	○ (ON, 10)	○ (OFF)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
HOME THX CINEMA (2ch)	×	×	○ (OFF)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
HOME THX CINEMA (5.1ch)	×	×	○ (OFF)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx	×	×	○ (OFF)	×	×	○ (OFF)	○ (3)	○ (3)	×	×
DOLBY PRO LOGIC II	×	×	○ (OFF)	×	×	○ (OFF)	○ (3)	○ (3)	×	×
DTS NEO:6	×	×	○ (OFF)	×	×	×	×	×	○ (0.3)	×
DOLBY DIGITAL	×	×	○ (OFF)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
DTS SURROUND	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
7CH STEREO	×	×	○ (OFF)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
SUPER STADIUM	○ (Medium)	○ (10)	○ (OFF)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
ROCK ARENA	○ (Medium)	○ (10)	○ (OFF)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
JAZZ CLUB	○ (Medium)	○ (10)	○ (OFF)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
CLASSIC CONCERT	○ (Medium)	○ (10)	○ (OFF)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
MONO MOVIE	○ (Medium)	○ (10)	○ (OFF)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
VIDEO GAME	○ (Medium)	○ (10)	○ (OFF)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
MATRIX	×	×	○ (OFF)	○ (30 msec)	×	×	×	×	×	×
VIRTURL	×	×	○ (OFF)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×

○ : Signal / Adjustable
 × : No signal / Not adjustable
 ⊗ : Turned on or off by speaker configuration setting

○ : Able
 × : Unable
 NOTE1 : BASS +6 dB, TREBLE 0 dB
 NOTE2 : BASS +6 dB, TREBLE +4 dB
 NOTE3 : This parameter is available when the "MODE" is set to "CINEMA".
 NOTE4 : This parameter is available when the "MODE" is set to "CINEMA" or "PL".
 *1: When playing Dolby Digital and DTS signals.
 *2: When playing Dolby Digital, DTS, DVD-Audio and Super Audio CD.

■ Differences in surround mode names depending on the input signals

Surround Mode	Input signals						
	ANALOG	LINEAR PCM	DTS			DOLBY DIGITAL	
			DTS (5.1 ch)	DTS 96/24 (5.1 ch)	DTS (6.1 ch)	D. D. (2 ch)	D. D. (5.1 ch)
PURE DIRECT, DIRECT STEREO	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
HOME THX CINEMA	PLIIx C+THX PLII C+THX DOLBY PL+THX NEO:6 C+THX THX GAMES MODE	PLIIx C+THX PLII C+THX DOLBY PL+THX NEO:6 C+THX THX GAMES MODE	*ES MTRX6.1+THX THX Ultra2 Cinema THX MUSIC MODE THX GAMES MODE PLIIx C+THX THX5.1	*ES MTRX6.1+THX THX Ultra2 Cinema THX MUSIC MODE THX GAMES MODE PLIIx C+THX THX5.1	© ES DSCRT6.1+THX *ES MTRX6.1+THX THX Ultra2 Cinema THX MUSIC MODE THX GAMES MODE PLIIx C+THX THX5.1	PLIIx C+THX PLII C+THX DOLBY PL+THX NEO:6 C+THX THX GAMES MODE	*THX SURROUND EX THX Ultra2 Cinema THX MUSIC MODE THX GAMES MODE PLIIx C+THX THX5.1
DTS SURROUND	×	×	*DTS+Neo:6 DTS SURROUND DTS+PLIIx	*DTS 96/24 DTS 96/24+Neo:6 DTS+PLIIx	© DTS ES DSCRT6.1 DTS MTRX6.1 *DTS+Neo:6 DTS SURROUND DTS+PLIIx	×	×
DTS NEO:6	DTS NEO:6	DTS NEO:6	×	×	×	DTS NEO:6	×
DOLBY DIGITAL	×	×	×	×	×	×	*DOLBY DIGITAL EX DOLBY DIGITAL DOLBY DIGITAL+PLIIx
DOLBY PRO LOGIC II DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx	*DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx PRO LOGIC II	*DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx PRO LOGIC II	×	×	×	*DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx PRO LOGIC II	×
DSP SIMULATION	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

○ : Selectable

* : The surround mode name differs depending on the "MODE/SB CH OUT" surround parameter setting.

© : The surround mode name differs depending on the input signal.

× : Not selectable

Relationship between the video input signal and monitor output according to the VIDEO CONVERT MODE settings of MAIN ZONE

Video convert	Input signals				MONITOR OUT			
	HDMI	COMPONENT	S-VIDEO	VIDEO	HDMI	COMPONENT	S-VIDEO	VIDEO
ON	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
	×	×	×	○	VIDEO	VIDEO	VIDEO	VIDEO
	×	×	○	×	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	×	×	○	○	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	×	○ (1080p)	×	×	×	COMPONENT	×	×
	×	○ (480p ~ 720p)	×	×	COMPONENT	COMPONENT	×	×
	×	○ (480i/576i)	×	×	COMPONENT	COMPONENT	COMPONENT	COMPONENT
	×	○ (1080p)	×	○	VIDEO	COMPONENT *1	VIDEO	VIDEO
	×	○ (480p ~ 720p)	×	○	COMPONENT *1	COMPONENT *1	VIDEO *3	VIDEO
	×	○ (480i/576i)	×	○	COMPONENT *1	COMPONENT *1	COMPONENT *1	VIDEO
	×	○ (1080p)	○	×	S-VIDEO	COMPONENT *2	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	×	○ (480p ~ 720p)	○	×	COMPONENT *2	COMPONENT *2	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	×	○ (480i/576i)	○	×	COMPONENT *2	COMPONENT *2	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	×	○ (1080p)	○	○	S-VIDEO	COMPONENT *2	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	×	○ (480p ~ 720p)	○	○	COMPONENT *2	COMPONENT *2	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	×	○ (480i/576i)	○	○	COMPONENT *2	COMPONENT *2	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	○	×	×	×	HDMI	×	×	×
	○	×	×	○	HDMI	VIDEO *2	VIDEO	VIDEO
	○	×	○	×	HDMI	S-VIDEO *2	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	○	×	○	○	HDMI	S-VIDEO *2	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	○	○ (1080p)	×	×	HDMI	COMPONENT	×	×
	○	○ (480p ~ 720p)	×	×	HDMI	COMPONENT	×	×
	○	○ (480i/576i)	×	×	HDMI	COMPONENT	COMPONENT	COMPONENT
	○	○ (1080p)	×	○	HDMI *1	COMPONENT *1	VIDEO	VIDEO
	○	○ (480p ~ 720p)	×	○	HDMI *1	COMPONENT *1	VIDEO *3	VIDEO
	○	○ (480i/576i)	×	○	HDMI *1	COMPONENT *1	COMPONENT *1	VIDEO
	○	○ (1080p)	○	×	HDMI *2	COMPONENT *2	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	○	○ (480p ~ 720p)	○	×	HDMI *2	COMPONENT *2	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	○	○ (480i/576i)	○	×	HDMI *2	COMPONENT *2	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	○	○ (1080p)	○	○	HDMI *2	COMPONENT *2	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	○	○ (480p ~ 720p)	○	○	HDMI *2	COMPONENT *2	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	○	○ (480i/576i)	○	○	HDMI *2	COMPONENT *2	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO

○ : Signal input

×

480p ~ 720p : 480p/576p/1080i/720p

NOTES:

- The MAIN ZONE video conversion function is compatible with the following format: NTSC, PAL, SECAM, NTSC4.43, PAL-N, PAL-M and PAL-60.
- When SECAM signals of video input are up-converted, the signals are output in PAL format from the S-Video connector.
- When the input signal is set to component video 1080p, the signals cannot be output to the HDMI monitor output terminal.

×

1.HDMI MONITOR OUT:

When there is no HDMI input signal and "HDMI" is selected for the "Scaler" setting, the signal is output as set with the "Resolution" setting. When "Component" is selected for the "Scaler" setting, the signal is output with the same resolution as the input signal.

2.COMPONENT MONITOR OUT

When "Component" is selected for the "Scaler" setting, the signal is output as set with the "Resolution" setting. However, the output resolution is limited to a maximum of 480p/576p if the input signal is copyright-protected.

*1 : On screen display superimposed on video signal and output.

*2 : On screen display superimposed on S-Video signal and output.

*3 : Video signals are not output when the analog to HDMI convert function is set to "ON".

■ : When "OFF" is selected for the "Analog to HDMI Convert" setting, no video signals other than the HDMI input signal are output.

■ : On screen display only displayed for **SYSTEM SETUP**, **SURROUND PARAMETER** and **OSD** buttons.

Video convert	S-VIDEO MONITOR OUT	Input signals				MONITOR OUT			
		HDMI	COMPONENT	S-VIDEO	VIDEO	HDMI	COMPONENT	S-VIDEO	VIDEO
OFF	–	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
	–	×	×	×	○	×	×	×	VIDEO
	–	×	×	○	×	×	×	S-VIDEO	×
	Used	×	×	○	○	×	×	S-VIDEO	VIDEO
	Not used	×	×	○	○	×	×	S-VIDEO	VIDEO
	–	×	○	×	×	×	COMPONENT	×	×
	–	×	○	×	○	×	COMPONENT	×	VIDEO
	–	×	○	○	×	×	COMPONENT	S-VIDEO	×
	Used	×	○	○	○	×	COMPONENT	S-VIDEO	VIDEO
	Not used	×	○	○	○	×	COMPONENT	S-VIDEO	VIDEO
	–	○	×	×	×	HDMI	×	×	×
	–	○	×	×	○	HDMI	×	×	VIDEO
	–	○	×	○	×	HDMI	×	S-VIDEO	×
	Used	○	×	○	○	HDMI	×	S-VIDEO	VIDEO
	Not used	○	×	○	○	HDMI	×	S-VIDEO	VIDEO
	–	○	○	×	×	HDMI	COMPONENT	×	×
	–	○	○	×	○	HDMI	COMPONENT	×	VIDEO
	–	○	○	○	×	HDMI	COMPONENT	S-VIDEO	×
	Used	○	○	○	○	HDMI	COMPONENT	S-VIDEO	VIDEO
	Not used	○	○	○	○	HDMI	COMPONENT	S-VIDEO	VIDEO

○ : Signal input
 × : No signal

*1 : On screen display superimposed on video signal and output.
 *2 : On screen display superimposed on S-Video signal and output.
 : When "Off" is selected for the "Analog to HDMI Convert" setting, no video signals other than the HDMI input signal are output.
 : On screen display only displayed for **SYSTEM SETUP**, **SURROUND PARAMETER** and **OSD** buttons.

Relationship between the video input signal and monitor output according to the VIDEO CONVERT MODE settings of ZONE2

VIDEO CONVERT Mode	Input signals			MONITOR OUT		
	COMPONENT	S-VIDEO	VIDEO	COMPONENT	S-VIDEO	VIDEO
ON	×	×	○	VIDEO	VIDEO	VIDEO
	×	○	×	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	×	○	○	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	○	×	×	COMPONENT	×	×
	○	×	○	COMPONENT *1	VIDEO	VIDEO
	○	○	×	COMPONENT *2	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO
	○	○	○	COMPONENT *2	S-VIDEO	S-VIDEO

VIDEO CONVERT Mode	S-VIDEO MONITOR OUT	Input signals			MONITOR OUT		
		COMPONENT	S-VIDEO	VIDEO	COMPONENT	S-VIDEO	VIDEO
OFF	–	×	×	○	×	×	VIDEO
	–	×	○	×	×	S-VIDEO	×
	Used	×	○	○	×	S-VIDEO	* VIDEO
	Not used	×	○	○	×	–	VIDEO
	–	○	×	×	COMPONENT	×	×
	–	○	×	○	COMPONENT *1	×	VIDEO
	–	○	○	×	COMPONENT *2	S-VIDEO	×
	Used	○	○	○	COMPONENT *2	S-VIDEO	* VIDEO
	Not used	○	○	○	COMPONENT *1	–	VIDEO

○ : Signal input
 × : No signal

×

* VIDEO : Not output
 : No OSD
 COMPONENT : On screen display only displayed for **SYSTEM SETUP**, **SURR.PARA** and **OSD** buttons
 COMPONENT *1 : On screen display superimposed on video signal and output
 COMPONENT *2 : On screen display superimposed on S-Video signal and output

- The ZONE2 video conversion function is compatible with the NTSC and PAL formats.

18 SPECIFICATIONS

■ Audio section

• Power amplifier

Rated output:

Front:

170 W + 170 W (8 Ω /ohms, 20 Hz ~ 20 kHz with 0.05% T.H.D.)

220 W + 220 W (6 Ω /ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7% T.H.D.)

Center:

170 W (8 Ω /ohms, 20 Hz ~ 20 kHz with 0.05% T.H.D.)

220 W (6 Ω /ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7% T.H.D.)

Surround (A, B):

170 W + 170 W (8 Ω /ohms, 20 Hz ~ 20 kHz with 0.05% T.H.D.)

220 W + 220 W (6 Ω /ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7% T.H.D.)

Surround Back:

170 W + 170 W (8 Ω /ohms, 20 Hz ~ 20 kHz with 0.05% T.H.D.)

220 W + 220 W (6 Ω /ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7% T.H.D.)

Dynamic power:

190 W x 2 ch (8 Ω /ohms)

310 W x 2 ch (4 Ω /ohms)

All channels: 6 ~ 16 Ω /ohms

Output terminals:

• Analog

Input sensitivity / input impedance:

200 mV / 47 k Ω /kohms

Frequency response:

10 Hz ~ 100 kHz: +0, -3 dB (DIRECT mode)

S/N:

105 dB (DIRECT mode)

Distortion:

0.005% (20 Hz ~ 20 kHz) (DIRECT mode)

Rated output:

1.2 V

• Digital

D/A output:

Rated output — 2 V (at 0 dB playback)

Total harmonic distortion — 0.003% (1 kHz, at 0 dB)

S/N ratio — 125 dB

Dynamic range — 117 dB

Format — Digital audio interface

Digital input:

• Phono equalizer (PHONO input — REC OUT)

Input sensitivity:

2.5 mV

RIAA deviation:

± 1 dB (20 Hz to 20 kHz)

S/N:

74 dB (A weighting, with 5 mV input)

Rated output / Maximum output:

150 mV / 8 V

Distortion factor:

0.03% (1 kHz, 3 V)

■ Video section

• Standard video jacks

Input / output level and impedance:

1 Vp-p, 75 Ω /ohms

Frequency response:

5 Hz ~ 10 MHz — +0, -3 dB

• S-Video jacks

Input / output level and impedance:

Y (brightness) signal — 1 Vp-p, 75 Ω /ohms

C (color) signal — 0.3 (PAL) / 0.286 (NTSC) Vp-p, 75 Ω /ohms

Frequency response:

5 Hz ~ 10 MHz — +0, -3 dB

• Color component video terminal

Input / output level and impedance:

Y (brightness) signal — 1 Vp-p, 75 Ω /ohms

PB/CB (blue) signal — 0.7 Vp-p, 75 Ω /ohms

PR/CR (red) signal — 0.7Vp-p, 75 Ω /ohms

Frequency response:

5 Hz ~ 100 MHz — +0, -3 dB

■ General

Power supply:

AC 230 V, 50 Hz

Power consumption:

850 W

1 W Max (Standby)

Maximum external dimensions:

434 (W) x 280 (H) x 505 (D) mm

Mass:

44.0 kg

■ Remote control unit (RC-1036)

Batteries:

LR6/AA Type (two batteries)

External dimensions:

63 (W) x 238 (H) x 31 (D) mm

Mass:

190 g (including batteries)

* For purposes of improvement, specifications and design are subject to change without notice.

LIST OF PRESET CODES

DVD

3D Lab	40539	Bush	40516, 40672, 40690, 40695, 40699, 40713, 40717, 40730, 40778, 40831, 40833, 40884, 41051, 41165
Acoustic Solutions	40713, 40730, 41242	C-Tech	40798
Advent	41016	Cambridge Soundworks	40690
AEG	40770, 40790	Cat	40699, 41087
AFK	41051	CAVS	41057
Afreey	40698	CCE	40730
Aim	40699, 40778, 40833, 41165	Celestial	41020
Airis	41250	Centrex	40672, 41004
Aiwa	40533, 40641	Centrum	40713
Akai	40690, 40705, 40770, 40790, 40884, 40899, 41089, 41115	CGV	41115
Akira	40699	Changhong	40627, 41061
Akura	41051	Cinea	40831
Alba	40539, 40672, 40695, 40699, 40713, 40717, 40730, 40783, 41051	Cineral	40730
Alco	40790	Cinetec	40713
Allegro	40869	cineULTRA	40699
Amitech	40770, 40784, 40850	CineVision	40833, 40869, 40876
Amphion Media Works	40872	Citizen	41277
Amstrad	40713	Classic	40730, 41730
AMW	40872	Clatronic	40672, 41165
Ansonic	40774, 40831	Clayton	40713
Apex	40672, 41061	Coby	40730, 40770, 40778, 40852, 41086, 41107, 41115, 41165, 41177, 41351
Apex Digital	40672, 40717, 40755, 40794, 40796, 40797, 40830, 41004, 41020, 41056, 41061, 41100	Compacts	40826, 41265
Arianet	40770	Conia	40516, 40672, 40798, 40852, 41004
Aspire Digital	41168, 41407	Continental Edison	40768, 40831
Audiosonic	40690, 41265	Craig	40831
Audiovox	40717, 40790, 41041, 41071, 41072, 41121, 41122	Crown	40690, 40769, 40770, 41115
Awa	40730, 40872	Curtis Mathes	41087
Axion	40730, 41071, 41072	Cybercom	40831
B & K	40655, 40662	CyberHome	40816, 40874, 41023, 41024, 41117, 41129
Basic Line	40713	Cydectin	41074
Baze	41165	Cytron	40651, 40774
Bellagio	41004	D-Vision	41115
Black Diamond	40698, 40713, 40833, 40884	Daenyx	40872
Blaupunkt	40717	Daewoo	40705, 40770, 40784, 40833, 40869, 40872, 41169, 41172, 41234, 41242
Blue Parade	40571	Daewoo International	40872
Blue Sky	40651, 40672, 40695, 40713, 40769, 40778, 40804	Dansai	40770, 40783, 41115
Boghe	41004	Dantax	40539, 40713, 40790, 41089
Boman	40783	Daytek	40872
Brainwave	40770, 41115	Dayton	40872
Brandt	40503, 40651	DCE	40831
Broksonic	40695, 40868	DEC	40774, 40778
		Decca	40770, 41115
		Denon	40490, 40634, *[41470], 41634

Denver	40699, 40778, 41107, 41165, 41353, 41359
Desav	40770
Desay	40800, 41407
Diamond	40651, 40768, 40790
Dick Smith Electronics	40833, 41730
Digihome	40713
digiRED	40717
Digitor	40651, 40690
Digitrex	40672, 41056, 41100
DIGIXmedia	40826
DiK	40774, 40831
Disney	40675, 41270
DiViDo	40705
DK Digital	40831
DMTech	40783
Dragon	40831
DSE	40833, 41730
Dual	40651, 40713, 40730, 40783, 40790, 40831, 41068, 41085
Durabrand	40713, 40831, 41003, 41127
DVD2000	40521
DVX	40768
ECC	40730
Electrohome	40770, 40784
Elfunk	40850
Elin	40770
Ellion	40850
Elta	40672, 40690, 40770, 40850, 41051, 41115
Emerson	40591, 40675, 40705, 40816, 40821, 41268
Encore	40698
Enterprise	40591
Enzer	40770, 40784
EuroLine	41115
Fenner	40651, 40769
Ferguson	40651
Finlux	40591, 40672, 40741, 40770, 40783, 41165
Fintec	40784, 41169
Firstline	40651, 40713, 40869
Fisher	40670
Funai	40675, 40695, 41334
Gateway	41073, 41077, 41158
GE	40522, 40717, 40815
General Electric	40717
Global Solutions	40768
Go Video	40715, 40741, 40744, 40783, 40833, 40869, 41044, 41075, 41099, 41144, 41158, 41304, 41730
Go Vision	41071, 41072
GoldStar	40591, 40741

Goodmans	40651, 40690, 40713, 40730, 40783, 40790, 40833, 41004, 41730
GPX	40699, 40769
Gradiente	40651
Gran Prix	40831
Grandin	40672, 40713
Greenhill	40717
Grundig	40539, 40651, 40670, 40695, 40705, 40713, 40790, 41004, 41730
Grunkel	40770
GVG	41169
H & B	40850
H&B	40713, 40850
Hanseatic	40741, 40783
Harman/Kardon	40582, 40702
HDT	40705
Hen	40713
Hher	40651, 40713, 40826, 40831
Hitachi	40573, 40664, 40695, 40713, 41247
Hiteker	40672, 40872
Home Electronics	40730
Home Tech	41107
Humax	40646
Hyundai	40768, 40783, 40850
I-Lo	41348
iLo	41348
Initial	40717, 40839
Integra	40571, 40627, 41634
IRT	40783
ISP	40695
Jaton	41078
JBL	40702
Jeken	40699
Jensen	41016
Jepssen	41250
JMB	40695
JNC	40672
JSI	41423
JVC	40503, 40539, 40558, 40623, 40867, 41164
jWin	41049, 41051
Karcher	40783
Kawasaki	40790
Kendo	40699, 40713, 40831
Kennex	40713, 40770
Kenwood	40490, 40534
Kiiro	40770
KLH	40717, 40790, 41020, 41149
KLH Digital	40717
Konka	40711, 40719, 40720, 40721
Koss	40651, 40896, 41423

Landel	40826
Lasonic	40798, 41173
Lawson	40768
Lenco	40651, 40699, 40713, 40770, 40774, 40778, 41165
Lenoxx	40690, 41127
Lexia	40699, 40768
LG	40591, 40741, 40790, 40801, 40869, 40036
Lifetec	40651, 40831
Limit	40768
LiteOn	41058, 41158, 41416, 41440
Loewe	40511, 40539, 40741
Logix	40705, 40783
Lumatron	40705, 40741, 40833, 41115
Lunatron	40741
Luxman	40573
Luxor	40713, 41004, 41730
Magnasonic	40651, 40769
Magnavox	40503, 40539, 40646, 40675, 40713, 40821
Magnex	41165
Malata	40782, 41159
Manhattan	40705, 40713
Marantz	40539
Mark	40713
Marquant	40770
Matsui	40651, 40672, 40695, 40713, 40884, 41004, 41730
Maxim	40713, 40872
MBO	40690, 40730, 41730
MDS	40778
Mecotek	40770
Medion	40630, 40651, 40770, 40774, 40783, 40820, 40831
MEI	40790
Memorex	40695, 40831, 41270
Metronic	40690
Metz	40525, 40571, 40713
Micromedia	40503, 40539
Micromega	40539
Microsoft	40522
Microstar	40831
Minato	40752
Minax	40713
Minerva	40705
Minoka	40770
Minowa	41165
Mintek	40717, 40839
Mirror	40752
Mitsubishi	40521, 40713, 41403, 41521
Mizuda	40770

Momitsu	41082
MTLogic	41265
Mustek	40730, 41730
Mx Onda	40651
NAD	40591, 40692, 40741
Naiko	40770, 41004
Narita	41115
NEC	40591, 40692, 40785, 40869, 41404
Nesa	40717
Nevir	40770, 40831
NextBase	40826
NexxTech	41402
Nintaus	41051
Norcent	40872, 41003, 41107, 41265
Nordmende	40774, 40831
Noriko	40752
Nu-Tec	40516
Okano	40752
Olidata	40672
Omni	40690, 40698, 40778, 40833
Onix	40672, 40852
Onkyo	40503, 40627, 40792
Oopla	41158
Optimus	40525
OptoMedia Electronics	40896
Orion	40695
Oritron	40651
Ormond	40713
Otic	40826
P&B	40770
Pacific	40695, 40713, 40768, 40774, 40790, 40804, 40831
Packard Bell	40770
Palladium	40695
Palsonic	40672, 40852
Panasonic	40490, 40503, 40703, 41362, 41462, 41490, 41762
Panda	40717
Philco	40690, 40790
Philips	40503, 40539, 40646, 40675, 40854, 41158, 41260, 41267, 41354
Phonotrend	40672, 40699, 41165
Pioneer	40490, 40525, 40571, 40631
Plu2	40850
Pointer	40784
Polaroid	41020, 41061, 41086
Polk Audio	40539
Portland	40770
Powerpoint	40872

Powtek	40852
Prima	41016
Prinz	40831
Prism	40705
Proline	40651, 40672, 40833, 41004
Proscan	40522
Proson	40713
Prosonic	40752
ProVision	40699, 40778
Qwestar	40651
Radionette	40741, 40869
RCA	40522, 40571, 40717, 40769, 40790, 40822, 41022, 41132
REC	40490
Recco	40698
Red Star	40770, 41003
Reoc	40752, 40768
Resonance	40651
Revoy	40699
Rio	40869
RJTech	41360
Roadstar	40690, 40699, 40713, 40730, 40833, 41051
Ronin	40872
Rotel	40558, 40623
Rowa	40516, 40717, 40823, 40872, 41004
Saba	40651, 40769
Sabaki	40798
Saivod	40831
Sakyno	40768
Salora	40741
Sampo	40698, 40752
Samsung	40490, 40573, 40744, 40820, 40899, 41044, 41075
Sansui	40695, 40768, 40784
Sanyo	40670, 40695, 40873
Scan	40705, 40850
ScanMagic	40730
Schaub Lorenz	40770, 41115
Schneider	40539, 40651, 40705, 40713, 40774, 40783, 40790, 40804, 40831
Schwaiger	40752
Scientific Labs	40768, 40798
Scott	40651, 40672, 40797
SEG	40713, 40768, 40798, 40872, 40884
Semp	40503
Sensory Science	41158
Shanghai	40672
Sharp	40630, 40675, 40713, 40752, 41256
Sharper Image	41117
Sherwood	40633, 40717, 40741, 40770, 41043, 41077

Shinco	40717
Shinsonic	40533, 40839
Silva	40831
Silva Schneider	40831
Singer	40690, 40768
Skantic	40539, 40713, 41003
Skymaster	40730, 40768
Slim Art	40784
Slim Devices	40533
SM Electronic	40690, 40730, 40768
Smart	40705, 40713
Sonai	40755
Sonashi	40831
Sonic Blue	40783, 40869, 41099
Sony	40533, 40573, 40864, 41033, 41431, 41533
Soundmaster	40768
Soundmax	40768
Soundwave	40783
Sova	41122
Spectra	40872
Standard	40651, 40768, 40831
Star Cluster	40768
Strong	40713
Sungale	41074
Sunkai	40770, 40850
Sunstech	40831
Superscan	40821
Supervision	40768
SVA	40672, 40717, 40860, 41105
Sylvania	40630, 40675, 40821, 41268
Symphonic	40675
Synn	40768
Tandberg	40713
Tatung	40770
Teac	40516, 40571, 40692, 40695, 40717, 40741, 40768, 40790, 40809, 40833, 41051
Technics	40490, 40703
Technika	40768, 40770, 40831, 41115, 41165
Technisson	41115
Technosonic	40730, 41051, 41115
Techwood	40692, 40713
Tedex	40690, 40768, 41004
Telefunken	40770, 40790, 40833
Teletech	40713, 40768
Tensai	40651, 40690, 40770
Terapin	41031
Tevion	40651, 40768, 40798, 40833
Theta Digital	40571
Thomson	40522
Tokai	40698, 40784, 40790

Tokaido	40698
Toshiba	40503, 40695, 41045, 41154
Trans Continens	40826
TRANS-continents	40826, 40831, 40872
Transonic	40672, 40730, 41165
Tredex	40800, 40803, 40804
Trio	40770, 40784
TYT	40705
Umax	40690
United	40672, 40695, 40768, 40826, 40852, 41115, 41165
Universal Multimedia	40768
Universeum	40591, 40713, 40741, 40869
Urban Concepts	40503
US Logic	40839
V	41064
Venturer	40790
Vestel	40713
Vieta	40705
VInc	41064, 41226
Vizio	41064, 41226
Vocopro	41027
Voxson	40690, 40730, 40774, 40831
Walkvision	40717
Welkin	40831
Wellington	40713
Wesder	40699
Wharfedale	40698, 40752, 40768, 40790
Wilson	40831
Windsor	40713
Windy Sam	40573
WIZE	41115
Xbox	40522
Xenius	40651, 40790
XLogic	40768, 40798
XMS	40770
Xoro	41173, 41250
Yakumo	41004, 41056
Yamada	40872, 41004, 41056, 41158
Yamaha	40490, 40539, 40545, 40646
Yamakawa	40872
Yukai	40730, 41730
Zenith	40503, 40591, 40741, 40869
Zeus	40784
Zoece	41265

DVDR

Apex Digital	41056
Aspire Digital	41168
Coby	41086

CyberHome	41129
Denon	40490
Dick Smith Electronics	41730
Digitrex	41056
DSE	41730
Funai	40675, 41334
Gateway	41073, 41158
Go Video	40741, 41158, 41304, 41730
iLo	41348
JVC	41164
LG	40741
LiteOn	41158, 41416, 41440
Loewe	40741
Magnavox	40646
Mitsubishi	41403
Mustek	41730
NEC	41404
Panasonic	40490
Philips	40646, 41158
Pioneer	40631
Polaroid	41086
RCA	40522
Samsung	40490
Sensory Science	41158
Sharp	40675
Sony	41033, 41431
Sylvania	40675
Zenith	40741

VCR

ABS	21972
Accent	20072
Admiral	20048, 20209, 20479
Adventura	20000
Adyson	20072
Aiko	20278
Aim	20209, 20278, 20642
Aiwa	20000, 20032, 20037, 20124, 20209, 20315, 20348, 20479
Akai	20037, 20041, 20081, 20175, 20240, 20315, 20348, 20642
Akashi	20072
Akiba	20072
Akura	20072
Alba	20000, 20072, 20081, 20209, 20278, 20315, 20348
Alienware	21972
Allstar	20081
America Action	20278

American High	20035
Amoisonic	20479
Amstrad	20000, 20072, 20278
Anam	20037, 20162, 20226, 20240, 20278
Anam National	20162, 20226, 21562
Anitech	20072
Ansonic	20000
Apelsound	20209
Aristona	20081
ASA	20037, 20081
Asha	20240
Asuka	20037, 20038
Audiosonic	20072, 20278
Audiovox	20037, 20278
Awa	20037, 20043, 20278, 20642
Baird	20000, 20041, 20104
Basic Line	20046, 20072, 20104, 20278
Beaumark	20240
Beko	20104
Bell & Howell	20104
Bestar	20278
Black Diamond	20081, 20642
Black Panther	20278
Blaupunkt	20081, 20162, 20226
Blue Sky	20037, 20072, 20209, 20278, 20348, 20642
Bondstec	20072
Brandt	20041, 20320
Brandt Electronic	20041
Brandt Electronique	20041
Brinkmann	20209, 20348
Broksonic	20002, 20121, 20184, 20209, 20348, 20479, 21479
Bush	20000, 20072, 20081, 20209, 20278, 20315, 20348, 20642
Calix	20037
Canon	20035
Carena	20209
Carrefour	20045
Carver	20081
Casio	20000
Cathay	20278
CCE	20072, 20278
CGE	20000
Changhong	20048, 20081
Cimline	20072
Cineral	20278
Citizen	20037, 20278, 21278
Clatronic	20000, 20072
Colt	20072
Condor	20278

Craig	20037, 20047, 20072, 20240
Crown	20037, 20072, 20278
Curtis Mathes	20035, 20041, 20060, 20162, 21035
Cybernex	20240
CyberPower	21972
Cyrus	20081
Daewoo	20045, 20046, 20104, 20209, 20278, 20642, 21278
Dansai	20072, 20278
Daytron	20278
De Graaf	20042, 20046, 20048, 20081, 20104
Decca	20000, 20067, 20081, 20209, 20348
Deitron	20278
Dell	21972
Denko	20072
Denon	20042
Diamant	20037
Diamond	20209, 20348
Dick Smith Electronics	20642
Digitor	20642
DirecTV	20739
Domland	20209
DSE	20642
Dual	20000, 20041, 20081, 20278, 20348
Dumont	20000, 20081, 20104
Durabrand	20038, 20039
Dynatech	20000
Elbe	20038, 20278
Elcotech	20072
Electrohome	20037
Electrophonic	20037
Elin	20240
Elsay	20072
Elta	20072, 20278
Emerex	20032
Emerson	20000, 20002, 20035, 20037, 20043, 20045, 20072, 20121, 20184, 20209, 20240, 20278, 20294, 20479, 21278, 21479
ESC	20240, 20278
Ferguson	20000, 20041, 20278, 20320
Fidelity	20000, 20072, 20240, 20278, 20432
Finlandia	20000, 20037, 20042, 20043, 20046, 20048, 20081, 20104, 20226
Finlux	20000, 20042, 20081, 20104, 20315
Firstline	20037, 20043, 20045, 20072, 20209, 20278, 20348
Fisher	20046, 20047, 20104
Flint	20209, 20348
Frontech	20072

Fuji	20033, 20035
Fujitsu	20000, 20045
Fujitsu General	20037
Funai	20000, 21333
Galaxis	20278
Garrard	20000
Gateway	21972
GE	20035, 20048, 20060, 20209, 20226, 20240, 20320, 20807, 21035, 21060
GEC	20081
General	20045
General Technic	20348
Genexxa	20104
Gessen	20278
Go Video	20432
GoldHand	20072
GoldStar	20037, 20038, 20209, 20225, 20226, 20348, 21237
Goodmans	20000, 20037, 20072, 20081, 20209, 20278, 20348, 20642
GPX	20037
Gradiente	20000
Graetz	20041, 20104, 20240
Granada	20000, 20037, 20042, 20046, 20048, 20081, 20104, 20226, 20240
Grandin	20000, 20037, 20072, 20209, 20278
Gronic	20104
Grundig	20072, 20081, 20226, 20320, 20347, 20348
Haaz	20348
Hanseatic	20037, 20038, 20081, 20209
Haojie	20240
Harley Davidson	20000
Harman/Kardon	20038, 20081
Harwood	20072
HCM	20072
Headquarter	20046
Hewlett Packard	21972
Hher	20278, 20642
HI-Q	20047
Hinari	20041, 20072, 20240, 20278
Hischito	20045
Hitachi	*[20000] , 20037, 20041, 20042, 20046, 20081, 20089, 20240, 20040
Hornyphon	20081
Howard Computers	21972
HP	21972
Hughes Network Systems	20042, 20739
Humax	20739
Hush	21972

Hypson	20000, 20037, 20072, 20209, 20278
iBUYPOWER	21972
Imperial	20000
Ingersoll	20209, 20240
Inno Hit	20072, 20432
inotech	20278
Interbuy	20072
Interfunk	20081, 20104
Internal	20278
International	20037, 20278, 20642
Intervision	20000, 20209, 20278
IR	20041, 20042, 20045, 20047, 20072, 20081, 20104, 20209, 20226, 20240, 20348
Irradio	20072, 20081
ITT	20041, 20046, 20104, 20240
ITV	20037, 20278
JBL	20278
Jensen	20041
JMB	20209, 20348
Joyce	20000
JVC	20041, 20045, 20067, 20081, 21008, 21283
Kaisui	20072
Kambrook	20037
Karcher	20081, 20278
KEC	20037, 20278
Kendo	20072, 20209, 20278, 20315, 20348, 20642
Kenwood	20038, 20041, 20067
KIC	20000
Kimari	20047
Kioto	20348
KLH	20072
Kneissel	20037, 20209, 20278, 20348
Kodak	20035, 20037
Kolin	20041, 20043
Kolster	20209
Korpel	20072
Kuba Electronic	20047
Kyoto	20072
Lenco	20278
Leyco	20072
LG	20037, 20038, 20042, 20045, 20209, 21237
Lifetec	20209, 20348
Linksys	21972
Lloyd's	20000
Loewe	20037, 20081, 20162, 21562
Logik	20072, 20209, 20240
Lux May	20072
Luxor	20043, 20046, 20047, 20048, 20104, 20315
LXI	20037
M Electronic	20000, 20038

Magnasonic	20278, 21278
Magnavox	20000, 20035, 20039, 20081, 20149, 20642, 21781
Magnin	20240
Magnum	20642
Manesth	20045, 20072, 20081, 20209
Marantz	20035, 20038, 20081, 20209
Mark	20000, 20278
Marta	20037
Mastec	20642
Master's	20278
Matsui	20209, 20240, 20278, 20348
Matsushita	20035, 20162, 20226
Media Center PC	21972
Medion	20209, 20348, 20642
MEI	20035
Meletronic	20000, 20037, 20038
Memorex	20000, 20035, 20037, 20039, 20046, 20047, 20048, 20104, 20162, 20209, 20240, 20348, 20479, 21237
Memphis	20072
Metronic	20081
Metz	20037, 20081, 20162, 20226, 20347, 21562
MGA	20043, 20240
MGN Technology	20240
Micormay	20348
Micromaxx	20209, 20348
Microsoft	21972
Mind	21972
Minolta	20042
Mitsubishi	20000, 20041, 20043, 20048, 20067, 20081, 20642, 20807
Motorola	20035, 20048
MTC	20000, 20240
Multitec	20037
Multitech	20000, 20072, 20278
Murphy	20000
Myryad	20081
NAD	20104
Naiko	20642
National	20162, 20226, 20240
Nebula Electronics	20033
NEC	20035, 20037, 20038, 20041, 20048, 20067, 20104, 20209, 20278
Neckermann	20081
Nesco	20072
Neufunk	20209
Newave	20037
Nikkai	20072, 20278
Nikko	20037

Niveus Media	21972
Noblex	20240
Nokia	20041, 20042, 20046, 20048, 20081, 20104, 20240, 20278, 20315
Nordmende	20041, 20067, 20320
Northgate	21972
Novatronic	20209
Nu-Tec	20209
Oceanic	20000, 20041, 20046, 20048, 20081, 20104
Okano	20072, 20209, 20278, 20315, 20348
Olympus	20035, 20226
Onida	20162
Onimax	20642
Onkyo	20222
Optimus	20037, 20048, 20104, 20162, 20432, 21062
Orbit	20072
Orion	20002, 20121, 20184, 20209, 20348, 20479, 21479
Osaki	20000, 20037, 20072
Osume	20072
Otake	20209
Otto Versand	20081
Pacific	20000, 20348, 20642
Packard Bell	21972
Palladium	20037, 20041, 20072, 20209, 20315, 20348
Palsonic	20000, 20037, 20072, 20642
Panasonic	20035, 20162, 20225, 20226, 20614, 20616, 21035, 21062, 21308, 21562
Pathe Cinema	20043
Pathe Marconi	20041
Penney	20035, 20037, 20038, 20042, 20240, 21035, 21237
Pentax	20042
Perdio	20000, 20209
Philco	20000, 20035, 20038, 20072, 20209, 20226, 20479
Philips	20000, 20035, 20081, 20226, 20616, 20618, 20739
Phoenix	20278
Phonola	20081
Pilot	20037
Pioneer	20042, 20067, 20081, 20162, 21562
Polk Audio	20081
Portland	20278
Prinz	20000
Profitronic	20081, 20240
Proline	20000, 20278, 20320, 20642
Proscan	20060, 21060
Prosonic	20278
Protec	20072

Protech	20081, 20278
ProVision	20278
Pulsar	20039
Pye	20000, 20081
Qisheng	20060
Quarter	20046
Quartz	20046
Quasar	20035, 20162, 20278, 21035
Quelle	20081
Radialva	20037, 20048
Radiola	20081
Radionette	20037
RadioShack	20000, 20037
Radix	20037
Randex	20037
Rank	20041
Rank Arena	20041
RCA	20000, 20035, 20042, 20048, 20060, 20149, 20226, 20240, 20320, 20432, 20807, 20880, 21035, 21060
Realistic	20000, 20035, 20037, 20046, 20047, 20048, 20104
Reoc	20348
ReplayTV	20614, 20616
Rex	20041
RFT	20072
Ricavision	21972
Roadstar	20037, 20072, 20081, 20240, 20278
Royal	20072
Runco	20039
Saba	20041, 20067, 20278, 20320
Saisho	20209, 20348
Salora	20043, 20046, 20104
Sampo	20037, 20048
Samsung	20045, 20240, 20432, 20739, 21014
Sanky	20039, 20048
Sansui	20000, 20041, 20067, 20072, 20209, 20348, 20479, 21479
Sanyo	20046, 20047, 20048, 20067, 20104, 20159, 20209, 20240, 20348, 21330
Saville	20240, 20278
SBR	20081
Schaub Lorenz	20000, 20041, 20104, 20315, 20348
Schneider	20000, 20037, 20042, 20072, 20081, 20240, 20278, 20348, 20642
Scott	20043, 20045, 20121, 20184
Sears	20000, 20035, 20037, 20042, 20046, 20047, 20104, 21237
Seaway	20278
SEG	20072, 20081, 20240, 20278, 20642

SEI	20081
Seleco	20037, 20041
Semp	20045
Sentra	20072
Serie Dorada	20037
Sharp	20037, 20048, 20209, 20807
Shinco	20000
Shintom	20072, 20104
Shivaki	20037
Shogun	20240
Siemens	20037, 20046, 20081, 20104, 20320, 20347
Siera	20081
Silva	20037
Silver	20278
Singer	20045, 20072, 20348
Sinudyne	20081, 20209
Smaragd	20348
Sonic Blue	20614, 20616
Soniko	20072
Sonitron	20104
Sonneclair	20072
Sonolor	20046
Sontec	20037
Sonwa	20642
Sony	20000, 20032, 20033, 20035, 20636, 21232, 21295, 21972
Soundwave	20037, 20209, 20348
Ssangyong	20072
Stack 9	21972
Starlite	20037
Stern	20278
STS	20042
Sunkai	20209, 20278, 20348
Sunstar	20000
Suntronic	20000
Sunwood	20072
Supra	20037, 20240, 20278, 20348
Sylvania	20000, 20035, 20043, 20081, 21781
Symphonic	20000
Systemax	21972
T+A	20162
Tagar Systems	21972
Taisho	20209
Tandberg	20278
Tandy	20000, 20104
Tashiko	20000, 20037, 20048, 20081, 20240
Tatung	20000, 20041, 20043, 20045, 20048, 20067, 20081, 20209, 20348
Tchibo	20348
TCM	20348

Teac	20000, 20037, 20041, 20072, 20278, 20642
Tec	20072
Tech Line	20072
Technics	20035, 20081, 20162, 20226
TechniSat	20209
Teco	20035, 20037, 20038, 20041, 20048
Tedelex	20037, 20209, 20348, 20642
Teknika	20000, 20035, 20037
Teleavia	20041
Telefunken	20041, 20067, 20209, 20240, 20278, 20320, 20642
Telestar	20037
Teletech	20000, 20072, 20278
Tenosal	20072
Tensai	20000, 20072, 20278
Tevion	20209, 20348, 20642
Texet	20278
Thomas	20000
Thomson	20041, 20060, 20067, 20278, 20320
Thorn	20037, 20041, 20104
Tivo	20618, 20636, 20739, 21503
TMK	20240
Tokai	20037, 20072
Topline	20348
Toshiba	20041, 20042, 20043, 20045, 20067, 20081, 20209, 20432, 20845, 21008, 21145, 21289, 21323, 21503, 21972
Totevision	20037, 20240
Touch	21972
Towada	20072
Tradex	20081
Triad	20278
Uher	20240
Ultravox	20278
Unitech	20240
United	20348
Universal	20209
Universum	20000, 20037, 20081, 20104, 20209, 20240, 20315, 20348
Vector	20045
Vector Research	20038
Victor	20041, 20067, 21283
Video Concepts	20045
Video Technic	20000
Videomagic	20037
Videosonic	20240
Viewsonic	21972
Villain	20000
Voodoo	21972

Wards	20000, 20033, 20035, 20038, 20039, 20042, 20045, 20046, 20047, 20048, 20060, 20072, 20081, 20149, 20240
Watson	20081, 20642
Wharfedale	20642
White Westinghouse	20072, 20209, 20278
World	20348
XR-1000	20000, 20035, 20072
Yamaha	20038, 20041
Yamishi	20072, 20278
Yokan	20072
Yoko	20037, 20240
Yoshita	20072
Zenith	20000, 20033, 20039, 20209, 20479, 21479
ZT Group	21972
ZX	20209, 20348

TV

888	10264, 10412
A-Mark	10003
A.R. Systems	10374, 10455
Abex	10032
Accent	10009
Acura	10009
Addison	10092, 10108, 10653
Admiral	10087, 10093, 10163, 10264, 10363, 10463
Advent	10761, 10783, 10815, 10817, 10842
Adventura	10046
Adyson	10032, 10216, 10217
AEA	10037
AEG	10606
Agashi	10216, 10217
AGB	10516
Agef	10087
Aiko	10009, 10037, 10092, 10216, 10217, 10264
Aim	10045, 10208, 10264, 10339, 10374, 10412, 10455, 10606, 10706, 10753, 10805
Aiwa	10163, 10701, 10705, 10848
Akai	10009, 10030, 10035, 10037, 10060, 10072, 10163, 10178, 10191, 10208, 10216, 10217, 10218, 10264, 10361, 10363, 10371, 10377, 10412, 10433, 10473, 10480, 10516, 10548, 10556, 10581, 10602, 10606, 10631, 10648, 10672, 10696, 10698, 10702, 10706, 10714, 10715, 10729, 10745, 10753, 10812, 11537
Akashi	10009
Akiba	10037, 10218, 10282, 10455
Akira	10037, 10418, 10556

Akito	10037
Akura	10009, 10037, 10218, 10264, 10282, 10359, 10412, 10668, 10714, 11037
Alaron	10179, 10216
Alba	10009, 10036, 10037, 10163, 10216, 10218, 10235, 10247, 10355, 10371, 10418, 10443, 10487, 10581, 10668, 10714, 11037
Albatron	10700, 10843
Albiral	10102
Alfide	10672
Alkos	10035
Allorgan	10206, 10217
Allstar	10037
Ambassador	10177
America Action	10180
Amplivision	10217, 10370
Ampro	10751
Amstrad	10009, 10037, 10171, 10177, 10218, 10264, 10362, 10371, 10412, 10433, 10516, 10581, 10648, 11037
Anam	10003, 10009, 10180, 10250, 10628, 10700, 10861
Anam National	10055, 10250, 10650
Andersson	11163
Anex	10037, 10421
Anglo	10009, 10264
Anhua	10051
Anitech	10009, 10037, 10282
Ansonic	10009, 10104, 10247, 10292, 10370, 10428, 10556, 10668, 11437
AOC	10003, 10009, 10018, 10019, 10030, 10052, 10060, 10092, 10093, 10108, 10178, 10179, 10180, 10185, 10451, 10628
Aolingpu	10858
Aolinpike	10264, 10412
Apex	10156, 10765
Apex Digital	10748, 10765, 10767, 10879
Arcam	10216, 10217
Archer	10003
Ardem	10037, 10486, 10556, 10633, 10714, 10715
Aristona	10037, 10556
ART	11037
ASA	10070, 10087, 10104
Asberg	10102
Asora	10009
Astra	10037, 10264
Asuka	10217, 10218, 10264
ATD	10698
Atlantic	10001, 10206, 10320
Audinac	10180

Audiosonic	10009, 10037, 10109, 10217, 10218, 10264, 10337, 10370, 10374, 10428, 10486, 10714, 10715
Audioton	10217, 10264, 10428, 10486
Audiovox	10003, 10092, 10180, 10451, 10623, 10802, 10875
Autovox	10087, 10206, 10217, 10247, 10544
Aventura	10171
Awa	10009, 10011, 10036, 10037, 10108, 10157, 10216, 10217, 10264, 10374, 10412, 10512, 10606, 10698, 10785
Axxent	10009
Axxon	10714
Baihe	10009, 10264, 10412
Baile	10001, 10009, 10374, 10661
Baird	10072, 10073, 10193, 10208, 10217
Bang & Olufsen	10087, 10565
Baohuashi	10264, 10412
Baosheng	10009, 10817
Barco	10380
Basic Line	10009, 10037, 10217, 10218, 10282, 10339, 10374, 10455, 10556, 10668, 11037, 11163
Bauer	10805
Baur	10009, 10037, 10146, 10361, 10455, 10512, 10535, 10544
Baysonic	10180
Bazin	10217
Beaumark	10178
Beijing	10001, 10009, 10208, 10226, 10264, 10374, 10412, 10482, 10661, 10812, 10817, 10821
Beko	10037, 10292, 10370, 10418, 10428, 10486, 10606, 10714, 10715, 11037
Belcor	10019
Bell & Howell	10016, 10154
BenQ	11032, 11756
Beon	10032, 10037, 10418
Berthen	10668
Best	10337, 10370, 10421
Bestar	10037, 10370, 10374
Bestar-Daewoo	10374
Binatone	10217
Black Diamond	10556, 10587, 10614, 11037
Black Panther	10102
Black Strip	10035
Blaupunkt	10036, 10170, 10191, 10195, 10200, 10455, 10535
Blue Sky	10037, 10218, 10282, 10455, 10487, 10499, 10556, 10606, 10668, 10714, 10715, 11037, 11254, 11437
Blue Star	10282

Bondstec	10247
Boots	10009, 10217
Bosch	10320
Boxlight	10752, 10893
BPL	10037, 10208, 10282
Bradford	10180
Brandt	10109, 10287, 10335, 10560, 10625, 10714
Brandt Electronique	10335
Brinkmann	10037, 10418, 10486, 10668
Brionvega	10087, 10362
Britannia	10216, 10217
Brockwood	10019
Broksonic	10003, 10180, 10236, 10463
Bruns	10087
BTC	10218
Bush	10009, 10036, 10037, 10163, 10208, 10217, 10218, 10235, 10264, 10282, 10355, 10361, 10363, 10371, 10374, 10486, 10487, 10556, 10581, 10614, 10617, 10661, 10668, 10698, 10714, 11037
Caihong	10009, 10817
Cailing	10748
Caishi	10891
Candle	10030, 10046, 10056, 10186
Canton	10218
Carad	10037, 10610, 10668, 11037
Carena	10037, 10455
Carnivale	10030
Carrefour	10036, 10070
Carver	10054, 10170
Cascade	10009, 10037
Casio	10037, 10163
Cathay	10037
CCE	10037, 10217
Celebrity	10000
Celera	10765
Celestial	10767, 10819, 10820, 10821
Centrex	10698, 10780, 10826
Centrum	11037
Centurion	10037
Century	10087, 10238, 10247
CGE	10247, 10370, 10418
CGM	11037
Changcheng	10001, 10009, 10051, 10264, 10374, 10412, 10661, 10817
Changfei	10009, 10374, 10817
Changfeng	10264, 10412, 10696, 10753, 10817
Changhai	10009, 10817
Changhong	10009, 10156, 10264, 10508, 10765, 10767, 10783, 10817, 10820, 10821, 10848, 11156

Chengdu	10009, 10817
Ching Tai	10003, 10009, 10092, 10179
Chun Yün	10000, 10003, 10009, 10092, 10179, 10180, 10700, 10843
Chunfeng	10009, 10264
Chung Hsin	10036, 10053, 10108, 10180
Chungfeng	10412
Chunsun	10009, 10817
Cimline	10009, 10218
Cinema	10672
Cineral	10092, 10451
Citizen	10030, 10039, 10046, 10056, 10060, 10092, 10186, 10280
City	10009
Clairtone	10185
Clarion	10180
Clarivox	10037, 10070, 10337
Clatronic	10009, 10037, 10102, 10217, 10218, 10247, 10264, 10320, 10370, 10371, 10556, 10579, 10606, 10648, 10714
Clayton	11037
CMS	10216
CMS Hightec	10217
Commercial Solutions	10047, 11447
Concerto	10056
Condor	10009, 10037, 10163, 10247, 10264, 10282, 10320, 10370, 10411, 10418
Conia	10754, 10821
Conic	10032
Conrac	10808
Conrowa	10009, 10145, 10156, 10264, 10412, 10696, 10698, 10753, 11156, 11170
Contec	10009, 10036, 10037, 10157, 10180, 10185, 10216, 10264, 10698
Continental Edison	10109, 10287, 10487
Cosmel	10037, 10337
Craig	10180
Crosley	10054, 10087, 10247
Crown	10009, 10037, 10039, 10053, 10180, 10208, 10339, 10359, 10370, 10412, 10418, 10421, 10486, 10487, 10579, 10606, 10672, 10712, 10714, 10715
Crown Mustang	10672
CS Electronics	10216, 10218, 10247
CTC	10247
Curtis Mathes	10016, 10030, 10039, 10047, 10051, 10054, 10056, 10060, 10093, 10145, 10154, 10166, 10451, 10466, 10702, 11147, 11347
CXC	10180
Cybertron	10218

D-Vision	10037, 10556
D.Boss	10037
Daewoo	10003, 10009, 10019, 10030, 10032, 10037, 10039, 10056, 10092, 10108, 10154, 10170, 10178, 10180, 10217, 10218, 10264, 10374, 10451, 10499, 10556, 10623, 10628, 10634, 10661, 10672, 10700, 10706, 10865, 10880, 11661
Dainichi	10216, 10218
Dansai	10009, 10032, 10035, 10036, 10037, 10208, 10216
Dansette	10412
Dantax	10606, 10714, 10715
Datsura	10208
Dawa	10009
Daytek	10037, 10706
Dayton	10009
Daytron	10019, 10374
Dayu	10374, 10661
De Graaf	10208, 10363, 10548
DEC	10418, 10556, 10698, 10785, 10795
Decca	10037, 10072, 10217, 10516, 10621
Deitron	10037, 10374
Dell	11080, 11178, 11264, 11454
Denko	10264
Denon	10145, 10511, 10576
Denstar	10628
Denver	10037, 10587, 10606
DER	10193
Desmet	10009, 10037, 10087, 10320
Diamant	10037
Diamond	10009, 10037, 10216, 10264, 10371, 10672, 10698, 10706, 10825
Dick Smith Electronics	10698
Digatron	10037
Digiline	10105, 10668
Digital Life	10780, 10872, 10891
Digitex	10820
Digitor	10037, 10499, 10698, 11724
Digix	10880
DiK	10037
Dixi	10009, 10037, 10087
DL	10037, 10780, 10848, 10872, 10891
Domeos	10037, 10668, 11037
Domland	10394
Dongda	10009
Donghai	10009
Dream Vision	11704
DSE	10698

Dual	10037, 10217, 10259, 10394, 10531, 10544, 11137
Dual Tec	10217
Dumont	10017, 10019, 10070, 10087, 10102
Dunai	10544
Durabrand	10003, 10171, 10178, 10180, 10463, 11034, 11463
DVX	10891
Dwin	10720, 10774
Dynatron	10012, 10037
E-Elite	10218
Ecco	10706, 10773
ECE	10037
Edison-Minerva	10487
Elbe	10217, 10238, 10259, 10292, 10361, 10362, 10411, 10435, 10516, 10610, 10630
Elbe-Sharp	10516
Electroband	10000, 10185
Electrograph	11755
Electrohome	10381
Elekta	10009, 10037, 10264, 10282
Elektra	10017, 11661
Elin	10009, 10037, 10104, 10163, 10361, 10548
Elite	10218, 10320
Elman	10102
Elta	10009, 10264
Emco	10247
Emerson	10019, 10037, 10038, 10039, 10070, 10087, 10154, 10163, 10171, 10177, 10178, 10179, 10180, 10185, 10236, 10247, 10280, 10282, 10320, 10361, 10370, 10371, 10463, 10486, 10623, 10714
Emperor	10282
Envision	10030, 10813
Enzer	10753
Epson	10833, 10840
Erres	10012, 10037
ESA	10171, 10812
ESC	10037, 10217
Ether	10003, 10009, 10030
Etron	10001, 10009
Eurofeel	10217, 10264
EuroLine	10556
Euroman	10037, 10216, 10217, 10264, 10421
Europa	10037
Europhon	10102, 10163, 10217, 10516
Evolution	11756
Expert	10206
Exquisit	10037, 10247
Fagor	10037

Feilang	10009
Feilu	10009, 10817
Feiyan	10264, 10412
Feiyue	10009, 10817
Fenner	10009, 10374
Ferguson	10037, 10053, 10073, 10109, 10193, 10238, 10287, 10335, 10443, 10548, 10560, 10625
Fidelity	10037, 10163, 10171, 10193, 10216, 10264, 10361, 10363, 10371, 10412, 10512, 10531, 10544
Filsai	10217
Finlandia	10045, 10072, 10163, 10208, 10287, 10346, 10359, 10363, 10548
Finlux	10037, 10070, 10072, 10087, 10102, 10104, 10105, 10179, 10217, 10346, 10411, 10473, 10480, 10492, 10516, 10556, 10606, 10621, 10629, 10631, 10714, 10715, 10808
Firstar	10009, 10236
Firstline	10009, 10037, 10072, 10163, 10208, 10216, 10217, 10235, 10238, 10247, 10321, 10361, 10374, 10411, 10531, 10544, 10556, 10587, 10668, 10714, 10808, 11037
Fisher	10036, 10045, 10047, 10072, 10087, 10104, 10154, 10157, 10159, 10208, 10217, 10370, 10544, 10555
Flint	10037, 10072, 10218, 10264, 10455, 10610
Forgestone	10193
Formenti	10037, 10087, 10216, 10320
Formenti-Phoenix	10216, 10320
Fortress	10093
Fraba	10037, 10370
Friac	10009, 10037, 10102, 10370, 10421, 10499, 10610
Frontech	10009, 10163, 10217, 10247, 10264, 10363
Fujitsu	10009, 10037, 10072, 10163, 10179, 10186, 10206, 10217, 10259, 10361, 10683, 10809, 10853
Fujitsu General	10009, 10163, 10206, 10217, 10683
Funai	10171, 10179, 10180, 10264, 10412, 10556, 10668, 11977
Furi	10145, 10264, 10412, 10817
Futronic	10264, 10795
Future	10037
Futuretech	10180
Galaxi	10037, 10361
Galaxis	10037, 10370
Ganxin	10817
Gateway	11755, 11756
GBC	10009, 10218, 10374

GE	10021, 10027, 10030, 10047, 10051, 10055, 10092, 10093, 10109, 10135, 10178, 10180, 10282, 10287, 10335, 10451, 10560, 10625, 11147, 11347, 11447, 11454
GEC	10037, 10072, 10163, 10217, 10361, 10516
Geloso	10009, 10363, 10374
General	10186, 10590
General Technic	10009
Genesis	10009, 10037
Genexxa	10009, 10163, 10218
Gericom	10808, 10865
Giant	10217
Gibraltar	10017, 10019, 10030
Gintai	10721
Go Video	10886
Goldfunk	10668
GoldHand	10216
GoldStar	10001, 10019, 10030, 10032, 10037, 10039, 10056, 10109, 10154, 10163, 10178, 10216, 10217, 10247, 10290, 10361, 10363, 10377, 10455, 10556, 10606, 10714, 10715
Gooding	10487
Goodmans	10009, 10032, 10035, 10036, 10037, 10072, 10179, 10217, 10218, 10235, 10264, 10335, 10360, 10371, 10374, 10451, 10480, 10487, 10499, 10516, 10556, 10560, 10579, 10630, 10634, 10661, 10668, 10714, 10808, 11037, 11163
Gorenje	10037, 10370, 10421
GPM	10218
Gradiente	10053, 10056, 10170
Graetz	10037, 10163, 10339, 10361, 10371, 10487, 10714
Gran Prix	10648
Granada	10037, 10045, 10072, 10108, 10146, 10163, 10208, 10217, 10226, 10339, 10356, 10359, 10363, 10473, 10516, 10548, 10560
Grandin	10009, 10037, 10163, 10282, 10320, 10374, 10455, 10579, 10610, 10668, 10714, 10715, 11037
Gronic	10163
Grundig	10036, 10037, 10070, 10191, 10195, 10370, 10443, 10487, 10535, 10556, 10587, 10630, 10672, 10706
Grunpy	10179, 10180
H&B	10808
Haaz	10706
Haier	10037, 10264, 10508, 10587, 10698, 10768, 10779, 10869, 10891, 11034
Haihong	10009

Haiyan	10264, 10412, 10817
Halifax	10217
Hallmark	10178
Hammerstein	10060, 10264
Hampton	10216, 10217
Hanimex	10218
Hankook	10019, 10030, 10056, 10178, 10180, 10628
Hanseatic	10009, 10037, 10087, 10195, 10217, 10282, 10320, 10361, 10377, 10394, 10428, 10499, 10544, 10556, 10634, 10661, 10714, 10808, 11137
Hantarex	10009, 10037, 10102, 10238, 10516, 10865
Hantor	10037
Harley Davidson	10179
Harman/Kardon	10054
Harsper	10865
Harvard	10180
Harwa	10773
Harwood	10009, 10032, 10037, 10412, 10487
Havermy	10093
HCM	10009, 10037, 10217, 10218, 10264, 10282, 10412, 10418, 10606
Helios	10865
Hello Kitty	10451
Hema	10009, 10217
Hemmermann	10544
Hher	10714
Higashi	10216
Hikona	10218
Himitsu	10180, 10628, 10779
Hinari	10009, 10036, 10037, 10179, 10218, 10235, 10264, 10355
Hisawa	10218, 10282, 10455, 10610, 10714
Hisense	10009, 10037, 10145, 10156, 10208, 10264, 10508, 10512, 10556, 10696, 10706, 10748, 10753, 10780, 10821, 10848, 11156, 11170
Hit	10087
Hitachi	10009, 10016, 10019, 10027, 10030, 10032, 10036, 10037, 10038, 10039, 10044, 10056, 10072, 10092, 10105, 10108, 10109, 10145, 10151, 10156, 10157, 10163, 10165, 10178, 10179, 10186, 10194, 10217, 10356, 10359, 10361, 10363, 10381, 10473, 10480, 10481, 10492, 10499, 10508, 10512, 10516, 10548, 10576, 10578, 10629, 10634, 10719, 10744, 10884, 11037, 11045, 11137, *[11145] , 11156, 11170, 11225, 11256, 11481, 11576
Hitachi Fujian	10037, 10108, 10145, 10150, 10499, 10828
Hitsu	10009, 10218, 10455, 10610
HMV	10087, 10193

Home Electronics	10606
Hongmei	10009, 10093, 10264, 10817, 10848
Hongyan	10264, 10412, 10817
Hornlyphon	10012, 10037
Hoshai	10282
Hua Tun	10009
Huafa	10009, 10145
Huanghaimei	10009
Huanghe	10009, 10817
Huanglong	10009
Huangshan	10009, 10264, 10412, 10817
Huanyu	10216, 10264, 10374, 10817, 10848
Huaqiang	10264, 10412
Huari	10145, 10264, 10412
Huodateji	10051
Hyper	10009, 10216, 10217, 10247
Hypson	10037, 10264, 10282, 10411, 10455, 10621, 10668, 10714, 10715, 11037
Hyundai	10037, 10698, 10706, 10753, 10849, 10865
Iberia	10037
ICE	10216, 10217, 10218, 10264, 10371, 10556
ICeS	10216, 10218
Imperial	10037, 10163, 10247, 10361, 10370, 10418, 10630
Imperial Crown	10001, 10009, 10264, 10374, 10412, 10661
Indiana	10037
Infinity	10054
InFocus	10752
Ingelen	10163, 10361, 10487, 10610, 10714
Ingersoll	10009
Inno Hit	10009, 10037, 10072, 10102, 10217, 10247, 10282, 10290, 10516
Innova	10037
Innowert	10865
Inteq	10017
Interbuy	10037, 10247, 10264, 10512
Interfunk	10012, 10037, 10087, 10163, 10200, 10247, 10275, 10361, 10512
Internal	10037
Intervision	10009, 10037, 10102, 10163, 10217, 10218, 10247, 10264, 10282, 10370, 10377, 10394, 10455, 10486, 10487
IR	10011, 10012, 10032, 10035, 10036, 10037, 10045, 10070, 10072, 10073, 10087, 10093, 10102, 10104, 10105, 10108, 10109, 10146, 10157, 10163, 10191, 10193, 10194, 10195, 10200, 10206, 10216, 10217, 10226, 10235, 10238, 10247, 10287, 10290, 10291, 10292, 10320, 10356, 10359, 10361, 10363, 10370, 10374, 10512, 10516, 10535, 10556

Irradio	10218, 10247, 10290, 10371
IRT	10451, 10628, 10698, 11661
Isukai	10037, 10218, 10282, 10455
ITC	10217, 10320
ITS	10216, 10264, 10371
ITT	10163, 10179, 10193, 10208, 10339, 10346, 10361, 10473, 10480, 10544, 10548, 10610
ITT Nokia	10163, 10179, 10208, 10339, 10346, 10361, 10363, 10473, 10480, 10548, 10606, 10610
ITV	10037, 10264, 10374
Janeil	10046
JBL	10054
JCB	10000
Jean	10003, 10009, 10036, 10051, 10092, 10156, 10179, 10236, 10721
Jensen	10698, 10706, 10761, 10815, 10817
Jiahua	10051
JiaLiCai	10009, 10264, 10412
Jinfeng	10051, 10208, 10226, 10817
Jinhai	10848
Jinque	10009, 10264, 10412, 10817
Jinta	10009, 10264, 10412, 10848
Jinxing	10009, 10037, 10054, 10145, 10156, 10264, 10556, 10698, 10817, 10821
JMB	10443, 10499, 10556, 10634
JNL	10698
Jocel	10712
Jubilee	10556
Juhua	10264, 10412, 10817
JVC	10036, 10053, 10093, 10193, 10218, 10371, 10418, 10463, 10508, 10576, 10606, 10653, 10683, 10731, 11253
Kaige	10009, 10264, 10412, 10817
Kaisui	10009, 10037, 10216, 10217, 10218, 10282, 10455
Kambrook	10217, 10264, 10556
Kamp	10216
Kangchong	10848
Kangli	10001, 10009, 10264, 10374, 10661, 10817
Kangyi	10009, 10264, 10412
Kapsch	10104, 10163, 10206, 10361
Karcher	10037, 10163, 10264, 10282, 10421, 10606, 10610, 10714
Kathrein	10556
Kawa	10371
Kawasho	10216
Kaypani	10052
KB Aristocrat	10163
KEC	10180

Kendo	10037, 10102, 10235, 10247, 10362, 10411, 10428, 10512, 10610, 11437
Kennedy	10206, 10435
Kennex	11037
Kenwood	10019, 10030
KIC	10217
Kingsley	10216
Kiota	10001, 10371, 10455
Kioto	10054, 10556, 10706, 10785
Kiton	10037, 10668
KLH	10765, 10767
KLL	10037
Kloss	10024, 10046
Kneissel	10037, 10238, 10259, 10292, 10362, 10374, 10411, 10435, 10499, 10556, 10610
Kolin	10036, 10053, 10108, 10150, 10180
Kolster	10102, 10247
Kongque	10009, 10264, 10817
Konichi	10009
Konka	10037, 10218, 10282, 10371, 10418, 10587, 10628, 10632, 10638, 10641, 10703, 10707, 10714, 10725, 10726, 10754, 10779, 10795, 10816, 10817
Kontakt	10487
Korpel	10037
Korting	10087, 10320, 10421
Kotron	10264
Koyoda	10009
Kraking	10238
Kriesler	10012
KTV	10030, 10039, 10180, 10185, 10217, 10280
Kuaile	10009, 10264, 10412
Kulun	10009
Kunlun	10051, 10208, 10226, 10264, 10374, 10661, 10817
Kyoshu	10032, 10264, 10412, 10418
Kyoto	10032, 10163, 10216, 10217
L&S Electronic	10714, 10808
LaSAT	10486
Leader	10009
Lecson	10037
Legend	10009
Lemair	10032, 10411
Lenco	10037, 10163, 10374, 10721, 11037
Levis Austria	10037
Leyco	10037, 10072, 10264, 10579

LG	10001, 10003, 10019, 10030, 10032, 10037, 10038, 10039, 10056, 10060, 10108, 10178, 10442, 10556, 10606, 10644, 10698, 10700, 10714, 10715, 10856, 11148, 11178, 11265, 11637, 10033
Liesen & Tter	10037
Liesenkotter	10012, 10037
Lifetec	10037, 10218, 10264, 10374, 10668, 10714, 11037, 11137, 11437
Lihua	10817
Lloyd's	10001, 10009, 10264
Lloytron	10032
Loewe	10037, 10087, 10136, 10292, 10362, 10512, 10516, 10633, 10655
Logik	10001, 10009, 10011, 10016, 10060, 10193, 10264, 10418, 10698, 10706, 10773, 10880
Logix	10668
Longjiang	10264, 10412, 10817
Luma	10206, 10259, 10362, 10363, 11037
Lumatron	10217, 10361
Lux May	10009, 10037, 10556, 10581
Luxman	10056, 10412, 10579
Luxor	10163, 10179, 10194, 10208, 10217, 10290, 10356, 10361, 10363, 10473, 10480, 10548, 10631, 11037, 11163
LXI	10047, 10054, 10154, 10156, 10178
M & S	10054
M Electronic	10009, 10037, 10104, 10105, 10109, 10163, 10217, 10287, 10346, 10374, 10480
Madison	10037
Magnadyne	10087, 10102, 10247, 10516, 10544
Magnafon	10102, 10216, 10516
Magnavox	10020, 10024, 10030, 10036, 10037, 10054, 10096, 10179, 10186, 10187, 10386, 10706, 10729, 10780, 10802, 11254, 11454
Magnum	10037, 10606, 10648, 10714, 10715
Majestic	10016
Manesth	10035, 10037, 10163, 10217, 10235, 10264, 10320, 10361
Manhattan	10037, 10163, 10668, 11037
Marantz	10030, 10037, 10054, 10412, 10556, 10704, 10854, 10855, 11154
Marelli	10087
Mark	10037, 10217, 10486, 10714, 10715
Master's	10499
Masuda	10009, 10037, 10217, 10218, 10264, 10371
Materin	10208, 10858

Matsui	10009, 10011, 10035, 10036, 10037, 10072, 10163, 10177, 10191, 10195, 10208, 10217, 10235, 10335, 10355, 10363, 10371, 10433, 10443, 10455, 10487, 10516, 10544, 10556, 10579, 10629, 10714, 11037
Matsushita	10051, 10250, 10650
Matsuviana	10587
Maxam	10264
Maxdorf	10773
Maxent	11755
MCE	10009
Mediator	10012, 10037
Medion	10037, 10512, 10556, 10668, 10698, 10714, 10808, 10880, 11037, 11137, 11437
Megapower	10700
Megas	10610
Megatron	10003, 10145, 10178
MEI	10185, 11037
Meile	10264, 10412, 10817, 10848
Meletronic	10009, 10037, 10104, 10105, 10163, 10191, 10195, 10216, 10217, 10247, 10346, 10361, 10374, 10411, 10480, 10492, 10512, 10634, 10661, 10714
Memorex	10009, 10016, 10056, 10060, 10150, 10154, 10178, 10179, 10250, 10463, 11037
Memphis	10337
Mercury	10001, 10009, 10060, 10264, 10473, 10556, 10706
Mermaid	10037
Merritt	10163
Metronic	10625
Metz	10037, 10070, 10087, 10275, 10367, 10388, 10447, 10535, 10587, 10668, 10746
MGA	10019, 10030, 10037, 10150, 10178, 10218, 10374
Micromaxx	10037, 10630, 10668, 10808, 11037
Microstar	10808
MicroTEK	10706
Midland	10017, 10032, 10039, 10047, 10051, 10135
Minato	10037
Minerva	10070, 10108, 10487, 10516, 10535
Minoka	10359, 10412
Minutz	10021
Mistral Electronics	10193
Mitsubishi	10019, 10030, 10036, 10037, 10056, 10087, 10093, 10108, 10150, 10154, 10178, 10179, 10180, 10208, 10236, 10250, 10381, 10512, 10535, 10556, 10817, 10836, 10868, 11037, 11250
Mitsuri General	10163

Mivar	10216, 10217, 10290, 10291, 10292, 10370, 10516, 10609
Monaco	10009
Monivision	10700, 10843
Morgan's	10037
Motorola	10055, 10093
MTC	10019, 10030, 10056, 10060, 10163, 10185, 10216, 10361, 10370, 10512
MTEC	10032
MTlogic	10714
Mudan	10009, 10051, 10208, 10226, 10264, 10412, 10817
Multibroadcast	10193
Multitec	10037, 10486, 10668, 11037
Multitech	10009, 10037, 10102, 10180, 10216, 10217, 10247, 10264, 10363, 10486, 10556
Murphy	10039, 10163, 10216
Musikland	10037, 10218, 10247
Myryad	10556
NAD	10156, 10178, 10361, 10866
Naiko	10037, 10606
Nanbao	10009, 10264, 10412, 10848
Nansheng	10264, 10412, 10817
Naonis	10363
NAT	10226
National	10051, 10055, 10208, 10226, 10508
NEC	10009, 10011, 10019, 10030, 10036, 10046, 10051, 10053, 10056, 10154, 10156, 10165, 10170, 10178, 10186, 10217, 10264, 10320, 10374, 10381, 10412, 10455, 10497, 10499, 10508, 10603, 10661, 10704, 10705, 10817, 10882, 11170, 11270, 11704
Neckermann	10037, 10087, 10163, 10191, 10200, 10247, 10320, 10363, 10370, 10411, 10418, 10512, 10556
NEI	10037, 10163, 10287, 10337, 10371
Neovia	10865
Nesco	10179, 10247
Netsat	10037
NetTV	11755
Network	10032, 10337
Neufunk	10037, 10218, 10556, 10610, 10714
New Tech	10217
Newave	10009, 10092, 10093, 10178, 10721
Nicam	10544
Nicamagic	10216
Nikkai	10009, 10032, 10035, 10036, 10037, 10072, 10216, 10217, 10218, 10264, 10337
Nikko	10030, 10092, 10178
Nikon	10848

Noblex	10154, 10180
Nobliko	10070, 10102, 10216
Nokia	10109, 10163, 10179, 10208, 10320, 10339, 10346, 10359, 10361, 10374, 10473, 10480, 10548, 10606, 10610, 10631
Norcent	10748, 10824
Nordic	10217
Nordmende	10037, 10109, 10163, 10195, 10287, 10335, 10560, 10714
Norfolk	10163
Normerel	10037
Noshi	10018
Novak	10012, 10037
Novatronic	10037, 10105, 10374, 10531
NTC	10092
Nu-Tec	10037, 10455, 10698, 10706, 10820
Oceanic	10163, 10208, 10361, 10473, 10548
Okano	10009, 10037, 10370
Omega	10264
Omni	10264, 10698, 10706, 10780, 10826, 10872, 10891
On Command	10531
Onimax	10714
Onking	10280
Onwa	10102, 10180, 10218, 10371, 10433, 10581, 10602
Optimus	10154, 10166, 10250, 10650
Optoma	10887
Optonica	10093, 10165
Orion	10011, 10037, 10177, 10179, 10235, 10236, 10264, 10320, 10321, 10355, 10412, 10443, 10463, 10516, 10531, 10544, 10556, 10606, 10655, 10714, 10880, 11463
Online	10037, 10218
Ormond	10668, 11037
Orsowe	10516
Osaki	10032, 10037, 10072, 10217, 10218, 10264, 10355, 10374, 10412, 10556
Osio	10290
Oso	10218
Osume	10032, 10036, 10037, 10072, 10157, 10218
Otto Versand	10036, 10037, 10093, 10109, 10191, 10217, 10226, 10235, 10247, 10320, 10361, 10512, 10535, 10544, 10556
Pacific	10037, 10556, 10714, 11037, 11137
Pael	10216
Palladium	10037, 10247, 10363, 10370, 10411, 10418, 10630, 10655, 10714, 11137
Palsonic	10001, 10037, 10217, 10218, 10264, 10377, 10412, 10418, 10698, 10773, 10779

Panama	10037, 10217, 10247, 10264
Panashiba	10001
Panasonic	10037, 10051, 10054, 10055, 10108, 10163, 10208, 10226, 10250, 10361, 10367, 10508, 10516, 10548, 10650, 10853, 11310, 11410, 11650
Panavision	10037, 10411
Panda	10009, 10051, 10208, 10226, 10264, 10412, 10508, 10698, 10706, 10780, 10817, 10821, 10826, 10848, 10891
Pathe Cinema	10163, 10216, 10238, 10320, 10370
Pausa	10009
Peng Sheng	10891
Penney	10003, 10018, 10019, 10021, 10027, 10030, 10032, 10039, 10047, 10051, 10056, 10060, 10135, 10156, 10178, 11347
Perdio	10037, 10072, 10163, 10216, 10282, 10320
Phase	10032
Philco	10019, 10020, 10030, 10032, 10037, 10054, 10056, 10087, 10092, 10096, 10145, 10178, 10180, 10186, 10247, 10370, 10418, 10451, 10463, 10628, 10774, 11661
Philex	10193, 10548
Philips	10000, 10009, 10012, 10017, 10019, 10020, 10024, 10027, 10030, 10032, 10037, 10051, 10054, 10056, 10080, 10087, 10092, 10108, 10178, 10186, 10187, 10191, 10193, 10200, 10238, 10361, 10374, 10423, 10556, 10690, 10721, 10772, 10774, 11154, 11454, 11756
Phoenix	10037, 10087, 10216, 10320, 10486
Phonola	10012, 10037, 10080, 10087, 10193, 10216
Pilot	10019, 10030, 10037, 10039, 10706, 10712
Pioneer	10011, 10037, 10038, 10109, 10163, 10166, 10170, 10287, 10361, 10423, 10428, 10486, 10512, 10679, 10760, 10866
Pionier	10486
Plantron	10009
Playsonic	10037, 10217, 10339, 10714, 10715
Polaroid	10765, 10865
Polytron	10282, 10697
Polyvision	10697
Portland	10019, 10039, 10092, 10374
Powerpoint	10037, 10487
Prandoni-Prince	10361, 10363, 10516
Premier	10037, 10264
Prima	10009, 10264, 10412, 10761, 10783, 10815, 10817
Princess	10698
Princeton	10700, 10717
Prinston	11037

Prinz	10194, 10361, 10544
Prism	10051
Profex	10009, 10163, 10361, 10363, 10370
Profex Fidelity	10102
Profi	10009
Profitronic	10037, 10102
Proline	10037, 10072, 10321, 10411, 10556, 10621, 10625, 10630, 10634
Proscan	10047, 11347, 11447
Prosonic	10037, 10217, 10451, 10579, 10668, 10714
Protech	10009, 10037, 10102, 10163, 10180, 10217, 10247, 10264, 10337, 10418, 10486, 10668, 11037
Proton	10001, 10003, 10009, 10030, 10039, 10052, 10056, 10178, 10466, 10644
ProVision	10037, 10556, 10714
Pulsar	10017, 10019
Pye	10012, 10037, 10087, 10193, 10374, 10412, 10556
Qingdao	10051, 10208, 10226, 10264, 10412, 10817
Quadral	10218, 10418
Qualcraft	10039
Quasar	10009, 10051, 10055, 10165, 10247, 10250, 10650, 10865
Quelle	10011, 10037, 10070, 10104, 10200, 10361, 10512, 10535, 10544, 10668, 11037
Questa	10032, 10036
R-Line	10037, 10163
Radialva	10218, 10337
Radiola	10012, 10037, 10217, 10556
Radiomarelli	10037, 10087, 10516
RadioShack	10019, 10030, 10032, 10037, 10039, 10047, 10056, 10154, 10165, 10178, 10180
Radiotone	10009, 10037, 10264, 10412, 10428, 10579, 10648, 10668, 11037
Rank Arena	10036, 10157, 10602, 10753
RBM	10070
RCA	10000, 10018, 10019, 10030, 10038, 10047, 10051, 10060, 10090, 10092, 10093, 10135, 10178, 10560, 10618, 10625, 10679, 10753, 11047, 11147, 11247, 11347, 11447, 11454, 11547
Realistic	10019, 10030, 10032, 10039, 10056, 10154, 10165, 10178, 10180
Recor	10037, 10264, 10418
Rediffusion	10036, 10346, 10361, 10548
Reflex	10037, 10668, 11037
Relisys	10865
Reoc	10714
Revox	10037

Rex	10163, 10206, 10259, 10264, 10363, 10411
RFT	10037, 10072, 10087, 10264, 10370, 10428
Rhapsody	10185, 10216
Ricoh	10037
Rinex	10264, 10418, 10698, 10773
Roadstar	10009, 10037, 10218, 10264, 10282, 10418, 10668, 10714, 11037
Robotron	10087
Rover	10036
Rowa	10009, 10037, 10216, 10217, 10264, 10556, 10587, 10698, 10712, 10748, 10817
Rownsonic	10163
Royal	10418, 10825
Royal Lux	10335, 10412
Runco	10017, 10030, 10497, 10603
Ruyi	10817
Saba	10087, 10109, 10163, 10250, 10287, 10335, 10361, 10498, 10516, 10548, 10560, 10625, 10714
Saccs	10238
Sagem	10455, 10610
Saige	10009, 10817
Saisho	10009, 10011, 10177, 10217, 10235, 10264, 10374, 10516, 10544, 10556
Saivod	10037, 10668, 10712, 11037
Saka	10163
Sakyno	10455
Salora	10163, 10194, 10208, 10290, 10356, 10359, 10361, 10363, 10473, 10480, 10516, 10548, 10606, 10621, 10631
Salsa	10335
Sambers	10102, 10516
Sampo	10009, 10030, 10032, 10036, 10039, 10052, 10092, 10093, 10154, 10171, 10178, 10650, 10700, 10721, 11755
Samsung	10009, 10019, 10030, 10032, 10037, 10039, 10056, 10060, 10072, 10090, 10092, 10093, 10154, 10156, 10163, 10178, 10179, 10195, 10208, 10216, 10217, 10226, 10264, 10290, 10370, 10482, 10556, 10587, 10618, 10644, 10682, 10702, 10718, 10766, 10774, 10812, 10814, 10817, 10821, 11060
Samsux	10039
Sandra	10216, 10217
Sanjian	10264, 10412
Sansei	10451
Sansui	10037, 10264, 10371, 10412, 10455, 10463, 10587, 10602, 10655, 10698, 10706, 10714, 10727, 10729, 10861, 11537
Santon	10009

Sanyo	10011, 10036, 10045, 10072, 10088, 10104, 10108, 10145, 10146, 10154, 10156, 10157, 10159, 10180, 10208, 10216, 10217, 10264, 10280, 10339, 10370, 10381, 10412, 10486, 10508, 10544, 10555, 10556, 10721, 10799, 10893, 11154
Sanyuan	10009, 10093, 10817
SBR	10012, 10037, 10193, 10556
Schaub Lorenz	10037, 10361, 10374, 10486, 10548, 10606, 10714
Schneider	10012, 10037, 10070, 10163, 10217, 10218, 10247, 10259, 10361, 10371, 10394, 10544, 10556, 10648, 10668, 10714, 11037, 11137
Scimitsu	10019
Scotch	10178
Scotland	10163
Scott	10019, 10178, 10179, 10180, 10236
Sears	10047, 10054, 10056, 10146, 10154, 10156, 10159, 10171, 10178, 10179
Seaway	10556, 10634
Seelver	11037
SEG	10009, 10036, 10037, 10102, 10163, 10216, 10217, 10218, 10264, 10362, 10487, 10634, 10668, 11037, 11163, 11437
SEI	10087, 10102, 10177, 10206, 10516, 10544
Sei-Sinudyne	10037, 10087, 10102, 10206, 10516, 10544
Seleco	10163, 10206, 10259, 10264, 10346, 10362, 10363, 10371, 10411, 10435
Semivox	10180
Semp	10156, 11356
Sencora	10009
Sentra	10035
Serino	10093, 10455, 10610
Shancha	10264, 10412, 10817
Shanghai	10009, 10208, 10226, 10264, 10412, 10817, 10848
Shaofeng	10145, 10817
Sharp	10009, 10030, 10032, 10036, 10039, 10053, 10093, 10157, 10165, 10193, 10200, 10256, 10386, 10491, 10516, 10650, 10688, 10689, 10720, 10818, 10851, 11193
Shen Ying	10003, 10009, 10092, 10179
Shencai	10009, 10145, 10264, 10412
Sheng Chia	10009, 10093, 10179, 10236
Shenyang	10009, 10264, 10696, 10753, 10817
Sherwood	10009
Shintoshi	10037
Shivaki	10037, 10178, 10374, 10443, 10451
Shogun	10019
Shorai	10179

Show	10009, 10072, 10418, 10706
Siarem	10087, 10102, 10516
Siemens	10032, 10037, 10146, 10157, 10191, 10195, 10200, 10361, 10535
Siera	10012
Siesta	10370
Signature	10016
Silva	10037, 10216, 10361, 10648
Silva Schneider	10037
Silver	10036, 10037, 10179, 10361, 10455, 10715
SilverCrest	11037
Simpson	10186, 10187
Singer	10009, 10087, 10102, 10163, 10335, 10362, 10371, 10433, 10435, 10548, 10698, 10706, 11537
Sinotec	10264, 10418, 10706, 10773
Sinudyne	10087, 10102, 10177, 10206, 10235, 10516, 10544
Skantic	10356
SKY	10037, 10282
Skygiant	10180
Skysonic	10696, 10753
Skyworth	10009, 10037, 10264, 10696, 10698, 10727, 10748, 10753, 10805, 10817, 10825
Sliding	10865
SLX	10512, 10668
Smaragd	10487
Soemtron	10865
Solavox	10032, 10037, 10072, 10163, 10361, 10548
Sole	10813
Sonawa	10218
Songba	10009
Soniko	10037
Sonitron	10208, 10217, 10339, 10370
Sonoko	10009, 10037, 10282
Sonolor	10163, 10208, 10282, 10361, 10548
Sontec	10009, 10037, 10370
Sony	10000, 10011, 10036, 10037, 10053, 10080, 10093, 10102, 10111, 10145, 10150, 10156, 10157, 10170, 10250, 10353, 10650, 10834, 11100, 11505, 11651
Sound & Vision	10102, 10374
Soundesign	10178, 10179, 10180, 10186
Soundwave	10032, 10037, 10320, 10418, 10715
Sowa	10036, 10051, 10060, 10092, 10156, 10178, 10226
Spectra	10009
Spectricon	10003
Squareview	10171
Ssangyong	10009, 10032

SSS	10019, 10180
Stag	10032
Staksonic	10009
Standard	10009, 10037, 10217, 10218, 10320, 10374, 11037
Starlite	10009, 10037, 10180, 10264
Stenway	10218, 10282
Stern	10163, 10206, 10259, 10363, 10411
Strato	10009, 10037, 10264
Studio Experience	10843
Sunic Line	10037
Sunkai	10037, 10321, 10355, 10455, 10487, 10531, 10610
Sunstar	10009, 10037, 10264, 10371, 10579
Sunwood	10037
Superla	10516
Superscan	10864
Supersonic	10009, 10037, 10208, 10264, 10455, 10698, 10805
SuperTech	10009, 10037, 10216, 10218
Supervision	10264
Supra	10009, 10039, 10056, 10178
Supre-Macy	10046
Supreme	10000
Susumu	10218, 10287, 10335
SVA	10587, 10698, 10748, 10768, 10865, 10870, 10871, 10872
Svasa	10455
Swissline	10247
Sylvania	10020, 10030, 10054, 10096, 10171, 10381
Symphonic	10171, 10180
Synco	10000, 10036, 10060, 10092, 10093, 10178, 10451
Sysline	10037
Sytong	10216
T+A	10447
Tacico	10009, 10092, 10178, 10179
Tai Yi	10009
Taishan	10009, 10374, 10817
Tandberg	10362, 10367, 10411
Tandy	10039, 10072, 10093, 10163, 10217, 10218
Targa	10702
Tashiko	10032, 10036, 10092, 10146, 10163, 10216, 10217, 10359, 10363, 10650, 10721
Tatung	10003, 10009, 10011, 10036, 10037, 10051, 10054, 10055, 10060, 10072, 10154, 10156, 10217, 10516, 10556, 10621, 10629, 11156, 11254, 11756
TCL	10412, 10698, 10706, 10727, 10826, 11537
TCM	10714, 10808

Teac	10009, 10037, 10170, 10171, 10178, 10217, 10247, 10264, 10282, 10412, 10418, 10455, 10512, 10544, 10556, 10668, 10698, 10706, 10712, 10714, 10721, 10755, 11037, 11437, 11724, 11755
Tec	10009, 10037, 10163, 10217, 10247, 10259, 10337, 10361
Tech Line	10037, 10668, 11437
Techica	10218
Technema	10320
Technics	10051, 10250, 10556, 10650
TechniSat	10037, 10163, 10556, 10655
Technisson	10714
Technol Ace	10179, 10264, 10374, 10412
Technosonic	10556
Techview	10847
Techwood	10003, 10051, 10056, 11163
Tecnimagen	10556
Teco	10009, 10036, 10051, 10092, 10093, 10178, 10218, 10264, 10280, 10653
Tedexlex	10009, 10037, 10208, 10217, 10264, 10418, 10556, 10606, 10706, 10726, 10891, 11537
Tek	10009, 10264, 10706, 10795
Teknika	10016, 10019, 10039, 10054, 10056, 10060, 10092, 10150, 10179, 10180, 10186
Telecor	10037, 10394
Telefunken	10037, 10056, 10073, 10109, 10287, 10335, 10346, 10421, 10486, 10498, 10560, 10587, 10625, 10698, 10702, 10706, 10712, 10714, 10753, 10819, 10820, 10821
Telefusion	10037
Telegazi	10037, 10556
Telemeister	10320
Telesonic	10037
Telestar	10009, 10037, 10412, 10556, 10579
Teletech	10009, 10037, 10337, 10668, 11037
Teleton	10036, 10163, 10186, 10206, 10217, 10259, 10363
Televideon	10216, 10320
Televiue	10037
Tempest	10009, 10037, 10264, 10455, 10556
Tennessee	10037
Tensai	10009, 10037, 10104, 10105, 10163, 10217, 10218, 10247, 10320, 10371, 10374, 10377, 10556, 10715, 11037
Tenson	10009, 10320
Tera	10030, 10092, 10466
Tesla	10037
Tevion	10556, 10648, 10668, 10714, 10767, 11037, 11137

Texet	10009, 10216, 10217, 10218, 10374
ThemeScene	10887
Thomson	10037, 10109, 10287, 10335, 10560, 10625, 11447
Thorn	10035, 10036, 10037, 10072, 10073, 10104, 10109, 10163, 10193, 10238, 10335, 10359, 10361, 10499, 10512, 10535
Thorn-Ferguson	10073, 10193, 10238, 10499
Tiane	10093, 10817
TMK	10056, 10177, 10178
TML	11756
TNCi	10017
Tobishi	10218
Tobo	10009, 10264, 10412, 10748
Tokai	10009, 10037, 10163, 10337, 10374, 10668, 11037
Tokaido	11037
Tokyo	10035
Tomashi	10218, 10282
Tongguang	10264, 10412
Tongtel	10587, 10780
Tophouse	10180
Toshiba	10009, 10035, 10036, 10060, 10070, 10093, 10102, 10109, 10145, 10154, 10156, 10191, 10195, 10217, 10264, 10381, 10412, 10508, 10556, 10618, 10644, 10650, 10714, 10718, 10821, 10832, 10845, 11156, 11256, 11265, 11356, 11508, 11656, 11704
Tosonic	10185
Totevision	10039
Towada	10102, 10217, 10264
Toyoda	10009, 10037, 10264, 10412
Trakton	10009, 10217, 10264
Trans Continens	10037, 10217, 10668, 11037
TRANS-continents	10621
Transonic	10009, 10037, 10264, 10418, 10455, 10512, 10587, 10698, 10712, 10780, 10858
Triad	10037, 10218, 10556
Trical	10157
Trident	10516
Tristar	10193, 10218
Triumph	10177, 10346, 10516, 10556
Tsoschi	10282
Tuntex	10009, 10030, 10092
TVS	10463
TVTEXT 95	10556
Uher	10037, 10206, 10320, 10374, 10418, 10480, 10486
Ultravox	10037, 10087, 10102, 10216, 10247
Unic	10163

Unic Line	10037, 10455
United	10037, 10606, 10714, 10715, 11037
Universal	10027, 10037
Universum	10009, 10011, 10032, 10036, 10037, 10070, 10104, 10105, 10146, 10157, 10163, 10170, 10177, 10191, 10200, 10217, 10247, 10264, 10290, 10346, 10361, 10362, 10370, 10411, 10418, 10421, 10473, 10480, 10492, 10512, 10535, 10544, 10556, 10618, 10631, 10668, 11037, 11437
Univox	10037, 10087, 10163, 10337
Utax	10163
V2max	10865
V7 Videoseven	11755
V7Videoseven	10880
Vector Research	10030
Vestel	10037, 10163, 10217, 10556, 10668, 11037, 11163
Victor	10036, 10053, 10250, 10650, 10653
Videocon	10508
Videologic	10216, 10218
Videologique	10218
Videomac	10009, 10264
Videosat	10247
Videotechnic	10217, 10320
Videoton	10356
Vidikron	10054
Vidtech	10019, 10036, 10178
Viewsonic	10724, 10857, 10864, 10885, 11755
Viking	10046
VInc	11756
Vision	10032, 10037, 10217, 10264, 10320
Vistar	10206, 10361, 10548
Vizio	10864, 10885, 11756
Voxson	10087, 10163, 10178, 10363, 10418
Waltham	10037, 10109, 10163, 10217, 10356, 10418, 10443, 10668, 11037
Wards	10000, 10016, 10017, 10018, 10019, 10020, 10021, 10024, 10027, 10030, 10047, 10051, 10054, 10055, 10056, 10060, 10080, 10096, 10111, 10135, 10154, 10156, 10165, 10166, 10178, 10179, 10180, 10186, 10187, 10866, 11147, 11156, 11347
Warumaia	10374, 10661
Watson	10009, 10037, 10218, 10320, 10394, 10579, 10668, 11037, 11437
Watt Radio	10102, 10216, 10544
Waycon	10156
Wega	10036, 10037, 10087
Wegavox	10037

Weipai	10009
Welltech	10714
Weltblick	10217, 10320
Westinghouse	10003, 10889
Weston	10037
Wharfedale	10037, 10264, 10556, 10706, 10861
White Westinghouse	10037, 10186, 10216, 10320, 10337, 10463, 10623
Windsor	11037
Windstar	10282, 10337
Windy Sam	10556
Wintel	10714
World-of-Vision	10880
Worldview	10455
Xenius	10634, 10661
Xiahua	10009, 10264, 10412, 10698, 10773, 10779, 10817
Xianghai	10009
Xiangyang	10264, 10412
Xiangyu	10009
Xihu	10264, 10412, 10817
Xinanghai	10412
Xingfu	10009
Xinghai	10264
Xinrisong	10848
XLogic	10698
XMS	10698
Xoceco	10779, 10785
Xrypton	10037
Xuelian	10848
Yamaha	10019, 10030, 10650, 10769, 10833, 10839
Yamishi	10217, 10282, 10455
Yapshe	10250
Yingge	10009
Yokan	10037, 10109
Yoko	10009, 10037, 10216, 10217, 10218, 10247, 10264, 10339, 10421
Yongbao	10848
Yonggu	10009
Yoshita	10706
Youlanasi	10817
Yousida	10009, 10848
Yuhang	10009
Zanela	10238
Zanussi	10206, 10264, 10363
Zenith	10016, 10017, 10092, 10178, 10463
Zenor	10208, 10339
ZhuHai	10009, 10374
Zonda	10003, 10698, 10779
ZX	10418

CABLE

ABC	00003, 00007, 00008, 00011, 00013, 00014, 00017, 00237
ADB	01063, 01269
Aichi Denshi	01512
Alcatel	00896
Allegro	00153, 00315
Americast	00899
Amstrad	01222
Antronix	00022
Archer	00022, 00153, 00797
Auna	00277, 01269
Austar	00012, 00276
Bell & Howell	00014
Bell South	00899
Birmingham Cable Communications	00276
British Telecom	00003
Cable & Wireless	01068
Cabletenna	00022
Cabletime	00448, 00665
Cableview	00022
Canal Plus	00443
Century	00153
Citizen	00153, 00315
Clearmaster	00883
ClearMax	00883
Comcrypt	00443
Comtronics	00040
Contec	00019
Coolmax	00883
Cryptovision	00600
Daeryung	00008, 00277, 00477, 00877, 01877
Digeo	01187
Digi	00637
Director	00476
Dumont	00637
DX Antenna	01500
Eastern	00002
Emerson	00797
Everquest	00015, 00040
Filmnet	00443, 00619
Focus	00400
Foxtel	01222
France Telecom	00451, 00817, 00896
Freebox	01482
Fujitsu	01497
Funai	00019
Galaxi	00008
Garrard	00153

GE	00237
Gehua	00476
Gemini	00015, 00797
General Instrument	00003, 00011, 00014, 00015, 00276, 00476, 00810
GMI	00015, 00797
Golden Channel	01063, 01110
GoldStar	00040, 00144
Goodmind	00797
Hamlin	00009, 00020, 00034, 00259, 00273
Hitachi	00011, 00014
HyperVision	00619
Hytex	00007
i3 Micro	01602
Jasco	00015, 00153, 00315
Jebsee	00400
Jerrold	00003, 00011, 00012, 00014, 00015, 00276, 00476, 00810
KNC	00008
Leon	00015
LG	00040, 00144
Macab	00817
Magnavox	00014
Maspro	01510
Memorex	00000
MNET	00019, 00443
Moser	00451
Motorola	00276, 00476, 00810, 01106, 01187, 01254, 01376, 01483
Movie Time	00063
Mr Zap	01112
Mr. Zap	01112
MS	00015
Multichoice	00019, 00443
Multitech	00883
MultiVision	00012
Myrio	01602
NEC	01496
Nokia	01569
Noos	00817
NSC	00063
NTL	00003, 00250, 00277, 01060, 01068
Oak	00007, 00019
Ono	01068
Optimus	00021
Optus	00276, 01060
Pace	00008, 00237, 01060, 01068, 01368, 01877
Panasonic	00000, 00008, 00021, 00040, 00107, 00443, 01488
Panther	00637

Paragon	00000
Philips	00013, 00153, 00317, 00619, 00817, 01305
Pioneer	00144, 00533, 00877, 01500, 01877
Popular Mechanics	00400
Pulsar	00000
PVP Stereo Visual Matrix	00003
Quasar	00000
Quiero	00817
RadioShack	00015, 00315, 00797, 00883
RCA	00021, 01256
Recoton	00400
Regal	00020, 00259, 00273, 00279
Regency	00002
Rembrandt	00011
Runco	00000
Sagem	00817, 01089, 01112
Salora	00000
Samsung	00000, 00040, 00144, 01060
Scientific Atlanta	00008, 00017, 00237, 00277, 00477, 00877, 01510, 01877
Sejin	01602
Signal	00015, 00040
Signature	00011
SL Marx	00040
Sony	01006, 01460
Sprucer	00021
Starcom	00003, 00014, 00015
Stargate	00015, 00040, 00797
Starquest	00015
Sumitomo	01500, 01504
Supercable	00276
Supermax	00883
Tadiran	00040
Tandy	00258
Tele Danmark	01016
Tele+1	00443
Telepiu	00443
Television	00040
Telewest	01068, 01368
Thomson	01110, 01256
Time Warner cable	01877
Timeless	00040
Tocom	00012, 00013
Torx	00003
Toshiba	00000, 01509
Trans PX	00153, 00276, 00315
TransACT	01106
Tri-Vision	01257
Tristar	00883

TS	00003
Tusa	00015
TV86	00063
Unika	00022, 00153
United Artists	00007
United Cable	00003
Universal	00022, 00153, 00191
US Electronics	00276
V2	00883
Videotron	00250
Videoway	00250
Viewmaster	00883
Viewstar	00063, 00258
Vision	00883
Visionetics	01064
Visiopass	00451
Vortex View	00883
Zenith	00000, 00008, 00525, 00899
Zentek	00400

SATELLITE

@sat	01300
@Sky	01334
ABsat	00123, 00668, 00713, 00832
ADB	00642, 00887, 01259, 01367, 01473, 01491, 01492, 01493, 01494, 01495
Aegir	00520
AGS	00668, 00710
Aiwa	01514
Akai	00200, 00515
Akena	00668
Alba	00421, 00455, 00515, 00613, 00713
Aldes	00520
Allsat	00200, 01017, 01043
Allsonic	00369
Alltech	00713
Allvision	01232, 01334, 01412
Alpha	00668
AlphaStar	00772
Amitronica	00713
Ampere	00132, 00396, 00829
Amstrad	00132, 00243, 00345, 00396, 00501, 00675, 00689, 00713, 00742, 00795, 00847, 00863, 00882, 00885, 01113, 01175
Anglo	00713
Ankaro	00369, 00692, 00713, 01279
AntSat	01017, 01083
Anttron	00421, 00613
Apollo	00421, 00455
Arcon	00692, 00834, 01043, 01075, 01205, 01279

Arcus	01143
Arion	01205
Armstrong	00243
Arnion	01300
ASA	00397
Asat	00200
ASCI	00114, 01334
ASLF	00713
AssCom	00853
AST	00321, 00351
Astacom	00668, 00710
Aston	00142, 01261
Astra	00243, 00607, 00713
Astrastar	00548
Astro	00133, 00173, 00358, 00369, 00501, 00520, 00548, 00607, 00613, 00658, 01099, 01100, 01113
Athena	00668
Atsat	01300
AtSky	01334
Audioline	01429
Audioton	00613
Aurora	00642, 00879
Austar	00497, 00642, 00863, 00879, 01173, 01259
Avalon	00396
Axiel	00668, 00710
Axis	00369, 00834, 00880, 01111
Beko	00455
Bentley Walker	01017
Best	00369
Bestar	00243
Black Diamond	01284
Blaupunkt	00173
Blue Sky	00713, 00885
Boca	00132, 00243, 00713, 00794, 00829, 01232
Boston	00132, 00668, 00710
Brainwave	00692, 01294
British Sky Broadcasting	00847, 01175, 01847
Broco	00713
BskyB	00847, 01175
BT	00515, 00668, 00710
Bubu Sat	00713
Bush	01284, 01471
BVV	00692
Cambridge	00501, 00515
Canal Digital	00853
Canal Satellite	00853, 01339
Canal+	00853
CanalSatellite	00853, 01339

CCE	00345
Century	00856
Channel Master	00212
Chaparral	00053, 00209, 00216
Cherokee	00123, 00710, 01480
Chess	00114, 00713, 01085, 01334
CityCom	00115, 00299, 00607, 00818, 01075, 01176, 01232
Claasen Nachrichten	00520
Clark	00613
Clemens Kamphus	00396, 00834
CNS	01367
CNT	00520
Cobra	00396
Colombia	00132, 00668
Columbia	00132
Columbus	00668
Comag	00132, 01232, 01412
Condor	00369, 00607
Connexions	00396
Conrad	00115, 00132, 00369, 00501, 00607
Conrad Electronic	00607
Cosat	00592
Crossdigital	01109
Crown	00243
Cryptovision	00455
Cyfra+	01076
Cyrus	00200
D-box	00723, 00873
Daeryung	00396
Daewoo	00421, 00713, 01111, 01296
Daumling	00794
Delfa	00863
Deltasat	01075
Dgtec	01242, 01542
Digatron	01294
Digena	01100
Digenius	00299, 01161
Digiality	00607
Digipro	01105
DigiQuest	00863
DigitAll World	01227
Digiturk	01076
DirecTV	00099, 00247, 00392, 00566, 00639, 00724, 00749, 00819, 01076, 01108, 01109, 01142, 01377, 01392, 01414, 01442, 01443, 01444, 01609, 01639, 01640, 01749, 01856
Discoverer	00605
Discovery	00668, 00710, 01480
Dish Network	00775

Dish Network System	00775, 01005, 01170, 01505, 01775
Dishpro	00775, 01005, 01505, 01775
Distratel	00084, 00885, 01205, 01283
Distrisat	00200
DMT	01075
DNR	00692
DNT	00200, 00396
Dream Multimedia	01237, 01437, 01537, 01637
DST	00421
Dune	00369
DX Antenna	01530
Echostar	00159, 00167, 00269, 00280, 00396, 00454, 00610, 00668, 00713, 00775, 00853, 00871, 01005, 01086, 01170, 01200, 01323, 01409, 01467, 01477, 01505, 01775
EIF	00417
Einhell	00132, 00243, 00421, 00501, 00692, 00713, 00794
Elap	00587, 00668, 00710, 00713
Elsat	00713
Elta	00200, 00369, 00421
Emanon	00421
Emme Esse	00369, 00871
eMTech	01214
Engel	00713, 01017
Eurieult	00084, 00136, 00417, 00882, 00885
Euro1	01278
Eurocrypt	00455
EuroLine	01251
Europa	00501, 00607, 00863
European	00794
Europhon	00132, 00299, 00607
Eurosat	00243
Eurosky	00114, 00115, 00132, 00243, 00299, 00369, 00501, 00607
Eurostar	00115, 00607, 00818, 00880, 00898
Eutelsat	00713
Exator	00421, 00515, 00613
Expressvu	00775, 01775
Fagor	00592
Fenner	00157, 00369, 00605, 00668, 00713
Ferguson	00455, 00711, 01291
Fidelity	00501, 00675
Finlandia	00455
Finlux	00397, 00455, 00573
Flair Mate	00713
Force	01101, 01194
Fortec Star	01017, 01083, 01293

Foxtel	00455, 00497, 00720, 00879, 01162, 01173, 01176, 01356
Fracarro	00421, 00668, 00871
Freecom	00173, 00421, 00501
Freesat	00882
Fresat	00885
FTEmaximal	00331, 00369, 00713, 00794, 00863, 01209, 01449
Fuba	00115, 00173, 00299, 00369, 00396, 00417, 00421, 00573, 01161, 01214
Fugionkyo	01105
Galaxis	00115, 00369, 00592, 00692, 00834, 00853, 00863, 00879, 01101, 01111, 01557
Galaxisat	00321
Gardiner	00818
Garnet	01075
GbSAT	01214
GE	00566
Gecco	01273, 01412
General Instrument	00869
GF	00834, 01043
GF Star	01043
Globo	01087, 01251
GOD Digital	00200
GOI	00775, 01775
Gold Box	00853
Goldbox	00292, 00853
Golden Interstar	01283
Goldvision	01017
Gooding	00571
Goodmans	00455, 01246, 01284
Gradiente	00099, 00856, 00887
Granada	00455
Grandin	00084, 00136, 00417, 00885
Grocos	00243
Grundig	00173, 00345, 00455, 00501, 00571, 00750, 00805, 00847, 00853, 00879, 01150, 01291, 01330, 01335, 01435
Hanseatic	00605, 01099, 01100
Hantor	00421
Hanuri	00520
Hauppauge	01294, 01298
HB	01214
HDT	01011, 01159
Helium	00607
Hinari	00421
Hirschmann	00173, 00299, 00369, 00396, 00397, 00501, 00573, 00607, 00668, 00710, 00882, 01012, 01085, 01111, 01113
Hisense	01535

Hitachi	00455, 00489, 00819, 01250, 01284, 01518, 01523, 01525, 00035
Hnsel & Gretel	00132
Homecable	00238
Homecast	01214
Houston	00396, 00592, 00668
HTS	00775, 01775
Hughes	00749
Hughes Network Syst	00749
Hughes Network Systems	00749, 01142, 01442, 01443, 01444, 01749
Humax	00863, 01176, 01225, 01427, 01568
Huth	00132, 00243, 00607, 00692, 00794, 00829, 01017, 01075
Hwalin	00885
Hypson	00136, 00417
Hyundai	01011, 01075, 01159
iCan	01367
ID Digital	01176
IEEC	00605
ILLUSION sat	01557
iLo	01535
Imex	00084, 00136, 00520
Imperial	01429
Indovision	00887
Ingelen	00114, 00396, 00882
Innova	00099
International	00132, 00243
Interstar	01017, 01105, 01214
Intertronic	00243
Intervision	00592, 00607, 00628
InVideo	00871
IQ	00210
IQ Prism	00210
IR	00173, 00282, 00331, 00358, 00455
Irdeto Technology	00879
ISkyB	00887
Italtel	00871
Jadeworld	00642
Jaeger	01334
Janeil	00152
JOK	00690, 00710
Jolly	00592
JVC	00492, 00515, 00571, 00775, 01170, 01507, 01531, 01775
K-SAT	00713
Kamm	00713, 00880
Kaon	01300
KaTelco	01111

Kathrein	00114, 00115, 00123, 00173, 00200, 00249, 00331, 00358, 00442, 00480, 00553, 00613, 00658, 00713, 00742, 00818, 00898, 01057, 01221, 01561, 01567
Kathrein Eurostar	00115
Kenwood	00853
Key West	00132, 00794
Kiton	00114
Klap	00668, 00710
Kolon	00421
Konig	00607
Koscom	00834, 01043, 01334, 01409
Kosmos	00331, 00442
KR	00592, 00613
Kreiling	00114, 00249, 00658, 01461, 01480
Kreismeyer	00173
Kyostar	00421, 00613
L&S Electronic	00132, 00369, 01043, 01334
Labgear	01296
LaSAT	00115, 00132, 00157, 00173, 00243, 00299, 00369, 00520, 00607
Legend	00269
Lemon	00692, 01461
Lenco	00115, 00369, 00421, 00607, 00628, 00692, 00713
Lennox	00592
Lenson	00501
Leyco	00515
LG	01075, 01226, 01414
Lifesat	00132, 00157, 00299, 00369, 00605, 00713, 01043, 01122
Lifetec	00587
Lodos	01284
Loewe	00243
Logix	01017, 01075
Lorenzen	00132, 00299, 00607, 00692, 00742, 00794, 00867, 01161, 01294
Lupus	00369
Luxor	00345, 00501, 00573
M vision	01557
Magnavox	00722, 00724
Manata	00132, 00136, 00417, 00668, 00710, 00713
Manhattan	00455, 00520, 00592, 00834, 01017, 01083
Marantz	00200
Marave	00417
Mascom	00520
Maspro	00173, 00571, 00692, 00713, 00750, 01530
Mastec	01334
Matsui	00173, 00571, 00710, 01284
Matsushita	00500

Max	00607
Maximum	01075, 01334
MB	00605
MDS	01225
Mediacom	01206
Mediamarkt	00243
MediaSat	00292, 00501, 00853
Medion	00132, 00299, 00369, 00713, 01043, 01075, 01161, 01232, 01334, 01412
Medison	00713
Mega	00200
Meletronic	00818
Memorex	00269, 00724
Metronic	00084, 00132, 00136, 00243, 00421, 00520, 00613, 00713, 00818, 00885, 01205, 01215, 01279, 01282, 01283, 01334
Metz	00173
Micro	00501, 00607, 00613, 00713, 01294
Micro electronic	00713
Micromaxx	00299, 00369
Microstar	01075
Microtec	00713
Minerva	00571
Mitsubishi	00455, 00749
Morgan's	00132, 00200, 00243, 00713, 00794, 00829, 01232
Motorola	00856, 00869
Multichoice	00642, 00879
Multistar	00331
Myryad	00200
Mysat	00713
NEC	00496, 01270, 01519
NEOTION	01334
Netgem	01322
Netsat	00099, 00887
Neuhaus	00501, 00592, 00607, 00692, 00713, 00834
Neuling	00132, 01232
Neusat	00587, 00692, 00713, 00834, 01279, 01334, 01409
Neveling	01161
Newton	00396
Next Level	00869
NextWave	01017, 01143
Nikko	00200, 00243, 00713
Nokia	00397, 00455, 00573, 00723, 00751, 00853, 00873, 01023, 01223, 01310, 01311, 01312, 01723
Nordmende	00421, 00455, 00520
Octagon	00421, 00613
OctalTV	01294, 01505

Okano	00243, 00331, 00442, 00668
Opentel	01232, 01412
Optex	00114, 00136, 00417, 00592, 00834, 01043, 01283
Optus	00879, 01143
Orbis	01334
Orbit	00351
Orbitech	00114, 00157, 00421, 00501, 00548, 00834, 01099, 01100
Origo	00497
OSAT	00345
Ouralis	01205
Oxford	00515, 00668
Pace	00200, 00241, 00329, 00455, 00497, 00720, 00791, 00795, 00847, 00853, 00867, 00879, 00887, 01175, 01323, 01356, 01423, 01623
Pacific Satellite	00834
Packard Bell	01111
Packsat	00710
Palcom	00299, 00587, 01161
Palladium	00243, 00396, 00421, 00501, 00571
Palsat	00157, 00501
Panarex	01159
Panasat	00615, 00879
Panasonic	00152, 00247, 00455, 00500, 00701, 00847, 01304, 01320, 01404, 01508, 01526
Panda	00173, 00455, 00607, 00834
Pansat	01011, 01159
Patriot	00132, 00515, 00668, 00710
Paysat	00724
Philips	00099, 00133, 00173, 00200, 00292, 00455, 00571, 00613, 00668, 00710, 00722, 00724, 00749, 00750, 00805, 00818, 00853, 00856, 00887, 00898, 01076, 01114, 01118, 01142, 01442, 01749
Phoenix	01273
Phonotrend	00592, 00863, 01017, 01200
Pilotime	01339
Pino	01334
Pioneer	00292, 00329, 00352, 00853, 01308
Planet	00396, 00871
Plasmatic	00442
Polytron	00396
Praxis	01123
Predki	00421
Preisner	00132, 00396, 00794, 01101, 01113
Premier	00292, 00592
Premiere	00292, 00723, 00873, 01429
Prima	00795
Primacom	01111

Pro Visat	00520
Prod	00573, 00639, 00723, 00873
Profile	00710
Promax	00455
Prosat	00628, 01173
Proscan	00392, 00566
Protek	01567
Proton	01535
ProVision	00520
Pye	00571
Pyxis	00834
QNS	01367, 01404
Quadral	00369, 00628, 00668, 00710, 01012
Quelle	00115, 00299, 00607, 00742
Radiola	00200
RadioShack	00869
Radix	00285, 00396, 00882, 01113
Rainbow	00613
RCA	00143, *[00392], 00566, 00855, 01291, 01392
Realistic	00052
Rebox	01214
Red Star	00369
Regal	01251
RFT	00200
Roadstar	00713, 00853
Roch	00136
Romsat	00421
Rover	00369, 00628, 00713
S-ZWO	01207
SAB	01251
Saba	00115, 00520, 00607, 00690, 00692, 00710, 00885, 01012
Sabre	00455
Sagem	00820, 01114, 01253, 01307
Samsung	00853, 00863, 01017, 01108, 01109, 01206, 01243, 01244, 01276, 01292, 01293, 01343, 01377, 01442, 01458, 01570, 01609
Sanyo	00493, 01219
SAT	00321, 00351, 00501, 00675
Sat Control	01300
Sat Cruiser	01143
Sat Partner	00421, 00501, 00520, 00613, 00692
Sat Team	00713
Satcom	00605, 00607
Satec	00713, 00834
Satelco	00369, 01232
Satline	00628
Satplus	00157, 01100
Satstation	01083

Schaub Lorenz	01214
Schcke	00613
Schneider	00157, 00668, 00710, 00805, 00898, 01206, 01251
Schwaiger	00132, 00157, 00587, 00605, 00607, 00692, 00863, 00885, 01075, 01083, 01111, 01334, 01474
SCS	00115, 00299
Sedea Electronique	00132, 00421, 01105, 01206, 01283
Seemann	00243, 00396, 00515
SEG	00114, 00369, 00421, 00605, 00742, 01075, 01087, 01191, 01251
Seleco	00592, 00871
Septimo	00885, 01205
Serino	00610
Servi Sat	00136, 00592, 00713
ServiSat	01251
Sharp	00494, 01517
Siemens	00173
Silva	00299
Skantin	00713
Skardin	00587
SKR	00713
SKT	01449
SKY	00099, 00711, 00847, 00856, 00887, 01014, 01175, 01847, 01848, 01856
SKY Italia	01847, 01848
Sky Television	01014
Sky XL	01251, 01412
Sky+	01175
Skymaster	00157, 00587, 00605, 00628, 00713, 00880, 01075, 01085, 01200, 01409
Skymax	00200
Skyplus	01232, 01334, 01409, 01412
SkySat	00114, 00157, 00501, 00605, 00607, 00713
Skyvision	01334
SL	00132, 00243, 00299, 00692, 00742, 01294
SL Marx	00692
SM Electroni	00157, 00587, 00713, 01200, 01409
Smart	00115, 00132, 00299, 00396, 00713, 00794, 00829, 00882, 01101, 01113, 01232, 01273
Sony	00275, 00282, 00292, 00294, 00486, 00489, 00492, 00493, 00494, 00496, 00500, 00639, 00847, 00853, 01524, 01558, 01639, 01640
SR	00132, 00243
Star	00887
Star Choice	00869
Star Trak	00180, 00421
Starland	01122
Starlite	00200

Stream	01847, 01848
Strong	00132, 00369, 00421, 00520, 00613, 00853, 00879, 01105, 01147, 01158, 01159, 01300, 01409
STS	00210
STVI	00136, 00417
Sunkai	00123
Sunny	01300
Sunny Sound	00369
Sunsat	00713
Sunstar	00132, 00243, 00369, 00642, 00794, 00829
Supermax	01143, 01283
Supernova	00887
Tantec	00455
Tarbs	01225
Tatung	00455
TCL	01143
Teac	01225, 01227, 01251, 01322
Techniland	00592
TechniSat	00114, 00157, 00200, 00396, 00455, 00501, 00548, 00863, 01099, 01100, 01195, 01322
Technomate	01283
Technosat	01143, 01206
Technotrend	01429
Technowelt	00132, 00607
Techsan	01017
Techwood	00114, 01284
Teco	00243
tekComm	01017
Telasat	00115, 00605, 00607
Teleciel	00613, 01043
Telefunken	00421
Teleka	00243, 00396, 00501, 00607, 00613, 00692, 00750, 00834
Telemaster	00520
Telesat	00605
Telestarr	00114, 00157, 00501, 01099, 01100, 01251, 01334
Telesystem	00396, 01251
Teletech	00114, 00880
Televs	00132, 00455, 00501, 01214, 01300
Televisa	00887
Telewire	00592
Tempo	01143
Tevion	00713, 01334, 01409
Thomson	00115, 00292, 00392, 00455, 00607, 00668, 00710, 00711, 00713, 00820, 00847, 00853, 01012, 01046, 01175, 01291, 01498, 01900
Thorn	00455
Tioko	00132, 00243

Tivo	01142, 01442, 01443, 01444
Tokai	00200
Tonna	00455, 00501, 00587, 00592, 00668, 00713, 00834
Topfield	01206, 01207, 01545
Toshiba	00082, 00455, 00486, 00749, 00790, 01285, 01446, 01501, 01516, 01530, 01749
TPS	00820, 01253, 01307
Triad	00321, 00351, 00372
Triasat	00501
Triax	00114, 00115, 00132, 00200, 00396, 00501, 00713, 00853, 01099, 01113, 01227, 01251, 01291, 01296
Trio	01075
TT-micro	01429
Turnsat	00713
Twiner	00136, 00713
UEC	00879, 01162
Uher	00157
UltimateTV	01392, 01640
Uniden	00052, 00074, 00076, 00238, 00722, 00724, 00834
Unisat	00132, 00200, 00243
United	01251
Universum	00114, 00115, 00173, 00299, 00397, 00571, 00607, 00675, 00742, 01087, 01099, 01251
US Digital	01535
USDTV	01535
Van Hunen	01161
Variosat	00173
Vega	00369
Ventana	00200
Vestel	00114, 00742, 01251
Victor	00492
Visionic	01105, 01206, 01279, 01283
Visiosat	00114, 00142, 00690, 00710, 00713
Vivid	01162
Voom	00869
Vortec	00421
VTech	00321, 00351, 00690, 00818
Welltech	00157
Wetekom	00157, 00501, 00605, 00829
Wewa	00455
Wibo	00243
Wintel	00299, 01161
Wisi	00173, 00299, 00321, 00351, 00372, 00396, 00455, 00501, 00607, 00638, 00690
Woorisat	00520
Worldsat	00114, 00123, 00668, 00710, 01012, 01251, 01323, 01480

Xcom	00123, 00668, 00832
Xcom Multimedia	00668
XMS	01075
Xrypton	00369
Xsat	00123, 00668, 00713, 00847, 01214, 01323
Xtreme	01300
Yes	00887
Zaunkonig	00692
Zehnder	00114, 00115, 00321, 00331, 00369, 00520, 00742, 00818, 01075, 01191, 01232, 01251, 01334, 01412
Zenith	00856, 01856
Zinwell	01173
Zodiac	00396, 00613
Zwergnase	00243, 00794

CD

Acoustic Research	30420
ADC	30018
Adcom	30155, 30234
Advantage	30032
Aiwa	30012, 30124, 30157, 31690
Akai	30156, 30766, 31688
Arcam	30157
Audio Alchemy	30194
Audio Dynamics	30018
Audio Pro	30437
Audio Research	30157
Audio-Technica	30170
Audiolab	30157
Audiomeca	30157
Audioton	30157
Bestar	30164
BSR	30194, 30245
Burmester	30420
Bush	30245
Cairn	30157
California Audio Labs	30029, 30303
Cambridge	30157
Carrera	30194
Carver	30157, 30179, 30437
CCE	30157
CDC	30420
CEC	30174, 30420
Classic	31297
Condor	30164, 30194
Copland	30393
Crown	30122
Cyrus	30157
DAK	30245

DBX	30018, 30254
Denon	30003, 30626, 30766, 30873, 31234, *[31867] , 31868
DKK	30000
DMX Electronics	30157
Dual	30003, 30194, 30196
Dynamic Bass	30179
EEC	30194
Elektra	30437
Emerson	30155, 30164, 30305, 30469
Fisher	30088, 30174, 30179, 30342, 31325
Garrard	30245, 30280, 30393, 30420, 30425
GE	30009
Genexxa	30032, 30164, 30305, 30426
Goldmund	30157
GoldStar	30417, 31208
Goodmans	30245, 30280, 30305
GPX	31296
Grundig	30157
Harman/Kardon	30157, 30173, 30426, 31202
Hitachi	30032, 30155, 30038
Inkel	30180, 30196, 30437
Integra	30101
Intersound	30245
IR	30000
JVC	30072, 30655, 31294, 31697
Kenwood	30028, 30036, 30037, 30157, 30190, 30626, 30681, 30826
KLH	31318, 31711
Kodak	30287
Korsun	31484
Koss	31317
Krell	30157
Kyocera	30018
LG	31208
Linn	30157
Loewe	30157
Luxman	30093, 30393
LXI	30305
Magnavox	30157, 30305
Marantz	30029, 30157, 30180, 30626
Mark	30194
Mark Levinson	31484
Matsui	30157
McIntosh	30287
MCS	30029, 30043
Memorex	30032, 30155, 30164, 30175, 30180, 30305
Meridian	30157
Micromega	30157
Miro	30000

Mission	30157
Mitsubishi	30156
MTC	30420
Musical Fidelity	30393, 30437
Myryad	30157
NAD	30000, 31208
Nagaoka	30018
Naim	30157
Nakamichi	30147
NEC	30043, 30234
Nikko	30164, 30170, 30174
NSM	30157
Oak	30145
Onkyo	30101, 30868, 31685
Optimus	30000, 30032, 30037, 30087, 30145, 30175, 30179, 30194, 30196, 30280, 30305, 30342, 30420, 30426, 30437, 30468, 31063, 31075
Orion	30393
Panasonic	30029, 30207, 30303, 30752, 31682
Parasound	30194, 30420
Penney	30043
Perform Hifi	30420
Philips	30157, 30287, 30626
Pioneer	30032, 30101, 30305, 30468, 31062, 31063, 31087
PMG	30164
Polk Audio	30157
Poppy	30164
Proceed	30420
Proton	30157
QED	30157
Quad	30157
Quasar	30029
Radiola	30157
RadioShack	31075
RCA	30009, 30032, 30053, 30155, 30179, 30305, 30420, 30468, 30764, 31062
Realistic	30155, 30164, 30175, 30179, 30180, 30420
Restek	30157
Revox	30157
Roadstar	30461
Roksan	30420
Rotel	30157, 30420
Royal	30164, 30420
SAE	30157
Sansui	30157, 30202, 30305
Sanyo	30087, 30179, 30342
SAST	30157
Scott	30155, 30164, 30305
Sears	30305

Sharp	30037, 30180, 30861, 31658, 31684
Sherwood	30180, 30196, 30426, 31067
Shure	30043
Siemens	30157, 30180
Silsonic	30036, 30888
Simaudio	30157
Sonic Frontiers	30157
Sony	30000, 30100, 30185, 30490, 30604, 30605, 31364
Soundesign	30145, 30425
STS	30018
Sugden	30157
Symphonic	30305
TAG McLaren	30157
Tandy	30032
Tascam	30420
TDK	31208
Teac	30174, 30180, 30393, 30420
Tec	30245
Technics	30029, 30207, 30303
Thomson	30053
Thorens	30157
Thule Audio	30157
Tivoli Audio	31553
Tokai	30164, 30420
Toshiba	31693
Traxdata	30626
Universum	30053, 30157, 30437
Vector Research	30194, 30417
Victor	30072
Wards	30000, 30032, 30053, 30087, 30157, 30179
Yamaha	30000, 30032, 30036, 30037, 30170, 30187, 30888, 31292
Yoko	30194
Yorx	30461
Zonda	30157

CDR

Classic	31297
Denon	30626, 30766, 31868
Fisher	31325
GPX	31296
Harman/Kardon	31202
JVC	30072, 31294
Kenwood	30626
LG	31208
Marantz	30626
NAD	31208
Philips	30626
Pioneer	31062, 31087

RCA	30053, 30420
Sony	30000, 30100, 31364
TDK	31208
Teac	30420
Yamaha	30888, 31292

TAPE

Aiwa	20029, 20197, 20200, 21315
Akai	20283, 20439
Arcam	20076
Carver	20029
Denon	20076, 20371, 21311, 21471
Fisher	20074
Garrard	20308, 20309, 20375, 20439
Genexxa	20439
GoldStar	20353, 20375
Grundig	20029, 20229, 20375
Harman/Kardon	20029, 20182, 21314
Inkel	20070, 20071, 20337
JVC	20244, 20273, 20274, 20303, 20304, 20310, 21309
Kenwood	20070, 20071, 20092, 20233, 20234, 21364
LG	20375
Luxman	20308, 20309
Magnavox	20029
Marantz	20009, 20029
Memorex	20099
Mitsubishi	20283, 20439
Myryad	20029
Onkyo	20135, 20136, 20282
Optimus	20027, 20220, 20337, 20439
Orion	20308, 20309, 20353
Panasonic	20229
Philips	20029, 20229
Phonotrend	20337
Pioneer	20027, 20099, 20220, 21306, 21312
Polk Audio	20029
Radiola	20029
RCA	20027, 20220
Revox	20029, 20190
Sansui	20009, 20029
Sanyo	20074
Sharp	20231, 20371
Sherwood	20337
Siemens	20029
Sonic	20375
Sony	20170, 20234, 20243, 20291, 21313
TaeKwang	20439
Tandberg	20109
Teac	20280, 20283, 20289, 20308, 20309

Technics	20229, 20353
Thorens	20029
Universum	20375, 20439
Victor	20244, 20273, 20274
Wards	20027, 20029
Wharfedale	20439
Yamaha	20094, 20097

PVR ※1

ABS	21972
Alienware	21972
CyberPower	21972
Dell	21972
DirecTV	20739
Gateway	21972
Hewlett Packard	21972
Howard Computers	21972
HP	21972
Hughes Network Systems	20739
Humax	20739
Hush	21972
iBUYPower	21972
Linksys	21972
Media Center PC	21972
Microsoft	21972
Mind	21972
Niveus Media	21972
Northgate	21972
Panasonic	20616
Philips	20618, 20739
RCA	20880
ReplayTV	20614, 20616
Sonic Blue	20614, 20616
Sony	20636, 21972
Stack 9	21972
Systemax	21972
Tagar Systems	21972
Tivo	20618, 20636, 20739
Toshiba	21008, 21972
Touch	21972
Viewsonic	21972
Voodoo	21972
ZT Group	21972

TV/DVD Combination ※2, ※3

Advent	41016
Apex Digital	40830
Audiovox	41071, 41121, 41122
Axion	41071

Broksonic	40695
Bush	40516, 40713, 40884
Denver	41353, 41359
Emerson	41268
Go Vision	41071
Grundig	40695
Hitachi	41247
Jensen	41016
Konka	40719, 40720
Panasonic	41490
Philips	40854, 41260
Prima	41016
RCA	41022
Samsung	40899
Sansui	40695
Sova	41122
Sylvania	40675, 41268
Toshiba	40695
Bush ※3	10698, 11037
Denver ※3	10587
Sylvania ※3	10171

TV/VCR Combination ※3, ※4

America Action ※3	10180
Audiovox ※3	10180
Emerson ※3	10236
Funai ※3	11977

※4

Aiwa	20000, 20479
America Action	20278
Audiovox	20278
Broksonic	20002, 20479, 21479
Citizen	21278
Colt	20072
Curtis Mathes	21035
Daewoo	21278
Emerson	20002, 20294, 20479, 21278, 21479
Funai	20000, 21333
GE	20240, 20807, 21035, 21060
GoldStar	21237
Harley Davidson	20000
Hitachi	20000
Lloyd's	20000
Magnasonic	21278
Magnavox	20000, 21781
Magnin	20240
Memorex	20162, 21237
MGA	20240
Mitsubishi	20043, 20807

Optimus	20162
Orion	20002, 20479, 21479
Panasonic	20162, 21035, 21308
Penney	20240, 21035, 21237
Philco	20479
Quasar	20162, 21035
RadioShack	20000
RCA	20240, 20807, 21035, 21060
Samsung	20432, 21014
Sansui	20000, 20479, 21479
Sanyo	20240, 21330
Sears	20000, 21237
Sharp	20807
Sony	20000, 21232, 21295
Sylvania	21781
Symphonic	20000
Teac	20000
Thomas	20000
Toshiba	20845, 21145, 21323
Zenith	20000, 20479, 21479

TV/VCR/DVD Combination ※2, ※4

Akai	40899
Broksonic	40868
Emerson	40821
Funai	41334
Magnavox	40821
Panasonic	41362, 41462
RCA	41132
Sharp	40630
Superscan	40821
Sylvania	40821
Toshiba	41045
Sharp ※4	20807

CABLE/PVR Combination ※1

Americast	00899
Digeo	01187
Freebox	01482
General Instrument	00476, 00810
Jerrold	00476, 00810
Motorola	00476, 00810, 01106, 01187, 01376
Nokia	01569
Pace	00237, 01877
Pioneer	00877, 01877
RCA	01256
Scientific Atlanta	00877, 01877
Sony	01006
Supercable	00276
Thomson	01256

Zenith	00899
DBS/PVR Combination ※1	
@sat	01300
Atsat	01300
British Sky Broadcasting	
	01175
Canal Satellite	01339
Comag	01412
Digiturk	01076
DirecTV	00099, 00392, 00639, 01076, 01142, 01377, 01392, 01442, 01443, 01444, 01640
Dish Network System	
	00775, 01505
Dishpro	00775, 01505
Dream Multimedia	01237
Echostar	00610, 00775, 01170, 01505
Euro1	01278
Expressvu	00775
Force	01194
Foxtel	01356
GbSAT	01214
Grundig	01150
Hughes Network Systems	
	01142, 01442, 01443, 01444
Humax	01176, 01427, 01568
Hyundai	01159
JVC	01170
Kathrein	01221, 01561
Maximum	01334
Motorola	00869
Nokia	01310, 01311
Opentel	01412
Pace	01423, 01623
Panasonic	01320
Philips	00099, 01142, 01442
Proscan	00392
RCA	01392
Rebox	01214
Sagem	01253, 01307
Samsung	01442
SKY	01175, 01848
Skyplus	01412
Sony	00639, 01640
Star Choice	00869
Strong	01158, 01300
Thomson	01900
Topfield	01206, 01545
TPS	01253, 01307
Zehnder	01075, 01412

※1 : These preset codes can be recorded in the SAT/CBL mode.

※2 : These preset codes can be recorded in the DVD mode.

※3 : These preset codes can be recorded in the TV mode.

※4 : This preset code can be recorded in the VCR mode.

[] : Preset codes set upon shipment from the factory.

DVD preset codes	41470	40490
DENON Model No.	DVD-550 DVD-700 DVD-900 DVD-1000 DVD-1400 DVD-1500 DVD-1710 DVD-1910 DVD-2200 DVD-2800 DVD-2800II DVD-2900 DVD-2910 DVD-3800 DVD-3910 DVD-A11 DVD-A1 DVD-A1XV	DVD-800 DVD-1600 DVD-2000 DVD-2500 DVD-3000 DVD-3300

DENON

TOKYO, JAPAN
www.denon.com

Denon Brand Company, D&M Holdings Inc.